

# **Microsoft Official Academic Course**

# **MICROSOFT POWERPOINT 2016**

**Includes coverage of the following  
Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) exam:**

MOS EXAM 77-729: POWERPOINT 2016

**WILEY**

This courseware is licensed, not sold. You may not copy, adapt, modify, prepare derivative works of, distribute, public display, sell or use this courseware for commercial purposes without the express prior written consent of Microsoft Corporation.

This courseware is provided to you "as-is." Microsoft makes no warranties, express or implied. Information and views expressed in this courseware, including URL and other Internet Web site references, may change without notice.

Some examples depicted herein are provided for illustration only and are fictitious. No real association or connection is intended or should be inferred.

You may use this courseware for your personal use. This courseware does not provide you with any legal rights to any intellectual property in any Microsoft product.

© 2018 Microsoft. All rights reserved.

Microsoft and the trademarks listed at <http://www.microsoft.com/enus/legal/intellectualproperty/trademarks/en-us.aspx> are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies. All other marks are property of their respective owners.

ISBN: 978-1-11-927303-5

## Preface

Welcome to the Microsoft Official Academic Course (MOAC) program for Microsoft Office 2016. MOAC represents the collaboration between Microsoft Learning and John Wiley & Sons, Inc. publishing company. Microsoft and Wiley teamed up to produce a series of textbooks that deliver compelling and innovative teaching solutions to instructors and superior learning experiences for students. Infused and informed by in-depth knowledge from the creators of Microsoft Office and Windows, and crafted by a publisher known worldwide for the pedagogical quality of its products, these textbooks maximize skills transfer in minimum time. Students are challenged to reach their potential by using their new technical skills as highly productive members of the workforce.

Because this knowledgebase comes directly from Microsoft, architect of the Office 2016 system and creator of the Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) exams, you are sure to receive the topical coverage that is most relevant to students' personal and professional success. Microsoft's direct participation not only assures you that MOAC textbook content is accurate and current; it also means that students will receive the best instruction possible to enable their success on certification exams and in the workplace.

### **THE MICROSOFT OFFICIAL ACADEMIC COURSE PROGRAM**

The Microsoft Official Academic Course series is a complete program for instructors and institutions to prepare and deliver great courses on Microsoft software technologies. With MOAC, we recognize that, because of the rapid pace of change in the technology and curriculum developed by Microsoft, there is an ongoing set of needs beyond classroom instruction tools for an instructor to be ready to teach the course. The MOAC program endeavors to provide solutions for all these needs in a systematic manner in order to ensure a successful and rewarding course experience for both instructor and student—technical and curriculum training for instructor readiness with new software releases; the software itself for student use at home for building hands-on skills, assessment, and validation of skill development; and a great set of tools for delivering instruction in the classroom and lab. All are important to the smooth delivery of an interesting course on Microsoft software, and all are provided with the MOAC program.

## Book Tour

### PEDAGOGICAL FEATURES

The MOAC courseware for the *Microsoft Office 2016 suite* is designed to cover all the learning objectives for that MOS exam; these objectives are referred to as “objective domains.” Many pedagogical features have been developed specifically for *Microsoft Official Academic Course* programs.

Presenting the extensive procedural information and technical concepts woven throughout the textbook raises challenges for the student and instructor alike. Following is a list of key features in each lesson designed to prepare students for success on the certification exams and in the workplace:

- Each lesson includes a **Lesson Skill Matrix**. More than a standard list of learning objectives, the skill matrix correlates each software skill covered in the lesson to the specific MOS exam objective domain.
- Every lesson includes a **Software Orientation**. This feature provides an overview of the software features students will be working with in the lesson. The orientation will detail the general properties of the software or specific features, such as a Ribbon or dialog box; and it includes a large, labeled screen image.
- Concise and frequent **Step-by-Step** instructions teach students new features and provide an opportunity for hands-on practice. Numbered steps give detailed, step-by-step instructions to help students learn software skills. The steps also show results and screen images to match what students should see on their computer screens.
- **Illustrations** provide visual feedback as students work through the exercises. The images reinforce key concepts, provide visual clues about the steps, and allow students to check their progress.
- **Knowledge Assessments** provide a mix of True/False, Fill-in-the-Blank, and Multiple Choice questions, testing students on concepts learned in the lesson.
- **Projects provide** progressively more challenging lesson-ending activities.

## Instructor Support Program

The *Microsoft Official Academic Course* programs are accompanied by a rich array of resources that incorporate the extensive textbook visuals to form a pedagogically cohesive package. These resources provide all the materials instructors need to deploy and deliver their courses. Resources available online for download include:

- The **Instructor's Guides** contain solutions to all the textbook exercises as well as chapter summaries and lecture notes. The Instructor's Guides are available from the Instructor's Book Companion site.
- The **Solution Files** for all the projects in the book are available online from our Instructor's Book Companion site.
- A complete set of **PowerPoint presentations** is available on the Instructor's Book Companion site to enhance classroom presentations. Tailored to the text's topical coverage and Lesson Skills Matrix, these presentations are designed to convey key concepts addressed in the text.
- The **Student Data Files** are available online on the Instructor's Book Companion site.

## Author Credits

### JOYCE J. NIELSEN

Joyce J. Nielsen has worked in the publishing industry for more than 25 years as an author, development editor, technical editor, and project manager, specializing in Microsoft Office, Windows, Internet, and technology titles for leading educational and retail publishers. She is the author or co-author of over 40 computer books and has edited several hundred IT publications and more than two thousand online articles. Joyce also worked as a research analyst for a major shopping mall developer, where she developed and documented spreadsheet and database applications used nationwide. She holds a Bachelor of Science degree in Quantitative Business Analysis from Indiana University's Kelley School of Business in Bloomington. Joyce currently resides in Arizona.

## Microsoft Office 2016 Software

This content was created using Office 365 (version 1804). If you are using the Office 2016 Professional desktop version, some newer Office 365 features reflected in this text may not be available and the user interface may differ slightly.

**Brief Contents**

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>LESSON 1: POWERPOINT ESSENTIALS</b>                | <b>1</b>   |
| <b>LESSON 2: PRESENTATION BASICS</b>                  | <b>19</b>  |
| <b>LESSON 3: WORKING WITH TEXT</b>                    | <b>41</b>  |
| <b>LESSON 4: DESIGNING A PRESENTATION</b>             | <b>68</b>  |
| <b>LESSON 5: ADDING TABLES TO SLIDES</b>              | <b>93</b>  |
| <b>LESSON 6: USING CHARTS IN A PRESENTATION</b>       | <b>111</b> |
| <b>LESSON 7: CREATING SMARTART GRAPHICS</b>           | <b>124</b> |
| <b>LESSON 8: ADDING GRAPHICS TO A PRESENTATION</b>    | <b>140</b> |
| <b>LESSON 9: USING ANIMATION AND MULTIMEDIA</b>       | <b>168</b> |
| <b>LESSON 10: SECURING AND SHARING A PRESENTATION</b> | <b>187</b> |
| <b>LESSON 11: DELIVERING A PRESENTATION</b>           | <b>204</b> |
| <b>APPENDIX A</b>                                     | <b>225</b> |
| <b>INDEX</b>  | <b>229</b> |



# PowerPoint Essentials 1

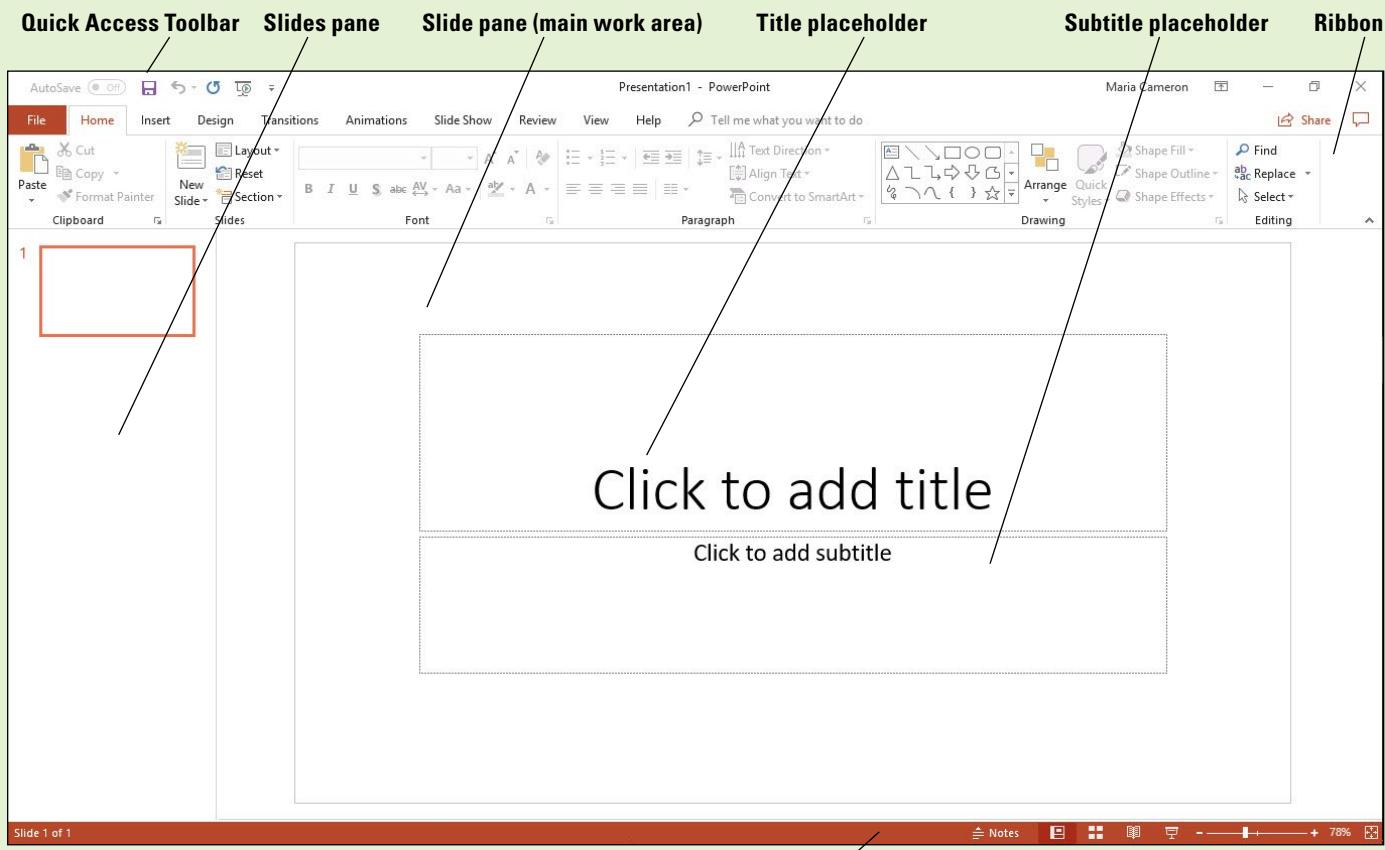
## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill                                 | Exam Objective   | Objective Number |
|---------------------------------------|--|------------------|
| Working with an Existing Presentation | Change views of a presentation<br>Insert text on a slide | 1.5.2<br>2.1.1   |
|                                       |  |                  |

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### Microsoft PowerPoint's Normal View

Before you begin working in Microsoft PowerPoint 2016, you should become familiar with the primary user interface. When you first start PowerPoint, the opening screen displays. If you then press Esc or select Blank Presentation, a screen similar to the one shown in Figure 1-1 displays. This is Normal view, where you will do most of your work. However, if your copy of PowerPoint has been customized, your screen may be slightly different than what is shown. You can use this figure as a reference throughout this lesson and the rest of this book.



The Ribbon across the top of the window contains a set of tabs; each tab has a different collection of groups, with command buttons in each group. Additional contextual tabs appear when you select certain types of content, such as graphics or tables.

## WORKING IN THE POWERPOINT WINDOW

To use PowerPoint 2016 efficiently, you need to learn how to navigate in the PowerPoint application window.

### Starting PowerPoint

Before you can use PowerPoint, you need to start the program. When you first launch PowerPoint, the opening screen provides options for starting a blank presentation or creating a presentation based on an existing template. In this exercise, you will learn to start PowerPoint and view a blank presentation.

#### STEP BY STEP

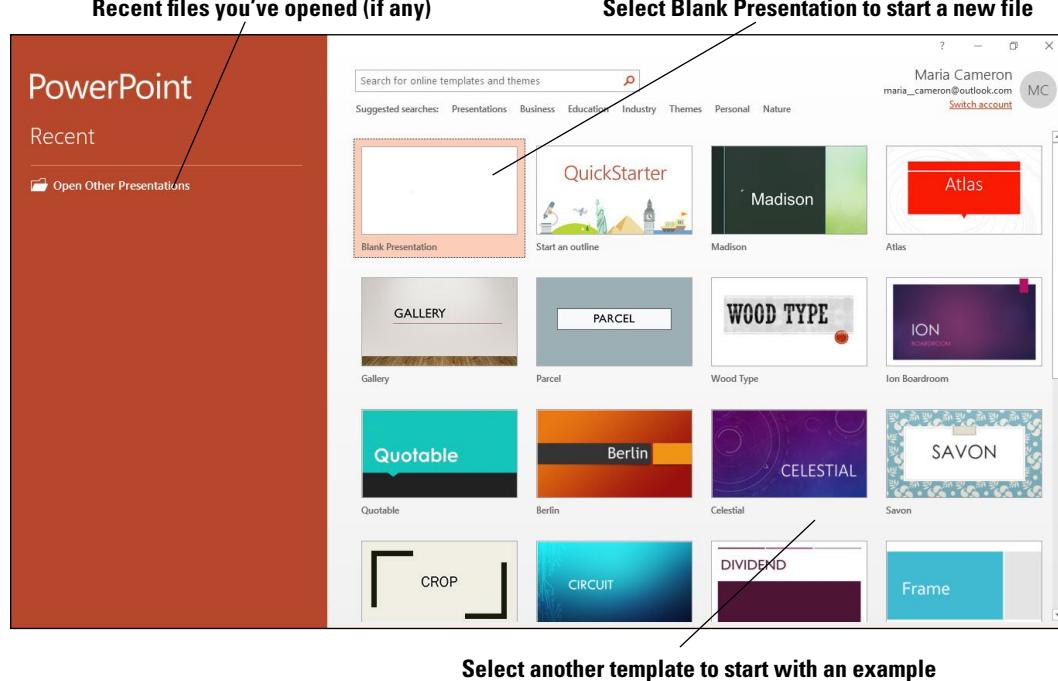
#### Start PowerPoint

**GET READY.** Before you begin these steps, make sure that your computer is on. Sign in to Windows, if necessary.

1. With the Windows 10 desktop displayed, select the **Start** button in the lower-left corner of the screen (or press the **Windows** key on the keyboard). The Start menu displays.
2. In the list of applications on the left, scroll down and select PowerPoint. The PowerPoint window opens to display recent PowerPoint files you've opened and examples of templates you can use (Figure 1-2).

Figure 1-2

PowerPoint's opening screen



3. Select **Blank Presentation** or press **Esc**. A new blank presentation appears in the PowerPoint window (refer to Figure 1-1).

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the blank presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## SELECTING TOOLS AND COMMANDS

Most of the tools and commands for working with PowerPoint are accessible through the PowerPoint Ribbon. Each Ribbon tab provides commands that are relevant to the kind of task you are performing—whether you are formatting a slide, adding animations to a presentation, or setting up a slide show for display. A **command** is a tool (such as an icon, a button, or a list) that tells PowerPoint to perform a specific task. In addition to the Ribbon, PowerPoint also offers tools and commands on the File menu (also known as Backstage view), a Quick Access Toolbar, a floating Mini Toolbar, and a status bar.

### Using the Ribbon

In this exercise, you will learn how to select commands from the **Ribbon**, which is the tabbed toolbar at the top of the PowerPoint window. The Ribbon is divided into **tabs**, and each tab contains several **groups** of related commands.

On the Ribbon, some command groups feature a tool called a **dialog box launcher**—a small arrow in the group's lower-right corner. You can select the arrow to open a **dialog box** or task pane, which provides additional tools and options related to a specific task. To close a dialog box without accepting any changes you may have made to it, select the Cancel button. To close a task pane, select the Close button (X) in the top-right corner of the pane.

Some of the Ribbon's tools have small, downward-pointing arrows next to them. These arrows are called **drop-down arrows**; when you select one, a **drop-down list** opens, displaying available options (such as a list of fonts). You can choose the option you want by selecting it.

If you need more space on your screen, you can minimize (hide) the Ribbon by double-clicking the active tab. To restore the Ribbon, double-click the active tab again.

### STEP BY STEP

### Use the Ribbon

**GET READY. USE** the blank presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the Ribbon, which appears in Figure 1-3, each tab contains several groups of related commands. By default, the Home tab is active.



Figure 1-3

The Ribbon

2. Select the **Design** tab to make it active. The groups of commands change.
3. Select the **Home** tab.
4. On the slide, select anywhere in the text **Click to add title**. The text disappears and a blinking insertion point appears.
5. In the lower-right corner of the Font group, select the **dialog box launcher** (the small button with a diagonal, downward-pointing arrow, as shown in Figure 1-3). Selecting this button opens the Font dialog box. Select **Cancel** to close the dialog box.
6. In the Font group, select the **Font drop-down arrow**. A drop-down list appears. This list shows all the fonts that are currently available for use. The default font for headings is Calibri Light.
7. Select the **drop-down arrow** again to close the list.

8. Double-click the **Home** tab. This action collapses the Ribbon, hiding the groups of commands but leaving the tabs' names visible on the screen.
9. Double-click the **Home** tab again to redisplay the Ribbon.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the blank presentation open to use in the next exercise.

#### Take Note

If you aren't sure what a command does, just point to it. When the mouse pointer rests on a tool, a ScreenTip appears. A basic **ScreenTip** displays the tool's name and shortcut key (if a shortcut exists for that tool). Some of the Ribbon's tools have enhanced ScreenTips that also provide a brief description of the tool or have a *Tell me more* link you can select for more information.

## Using Backstage View

The **File tab** is not a regular tab; instead of displaying Ribbon commands, it displays a full-screen menu called **Backstage view**. Backstage view displays commands for managing files. When you select a command in the left panel of Backstage view, the screen displays a different page of options and commands in the right panel.

Commands on the menu in Backstage view include the following:

- **Info:** Shows information about the active presentation and provides commands that control permissions, sharing, and version management.
- **New:** Lists available templates from which you can create a new presentation.
- **Open:** Opens an existing presentation from your computer, OneDrive, a network drive, or an external drive.
- **Save:** Saves the current presentation in your choice of locations.
- **Save As:** Lets you re-save a previously saved presentation with a different name, type, or location than before.
- **Print:** Provides settings and options for printing a presentation in a variety of formats.
- **Share:** Provides options for sharing a copy of your presentation via OneDrive or by sending the presentation as an email attachment.
- **Export:** Offers a variety of options for saving a presentation in different formats, as well as creating a video, packaging a presentation for CD, creating handouts, and changing the file type.
- **Close:** Closes the currently open presentation.
- **Account:** Enables you to choose which account you are signed into Office with, manage connected services like OneDrive and YouTube, and get activation information.
- **Feedback:** Opens the Feedback page, which allows you to provide feedback to Microsoft and suggest product improvements.
- **Options:** Opens the PowerPoint Options dialog box, from which you can configure many aspects of program operation.

#### STEP BY STEP

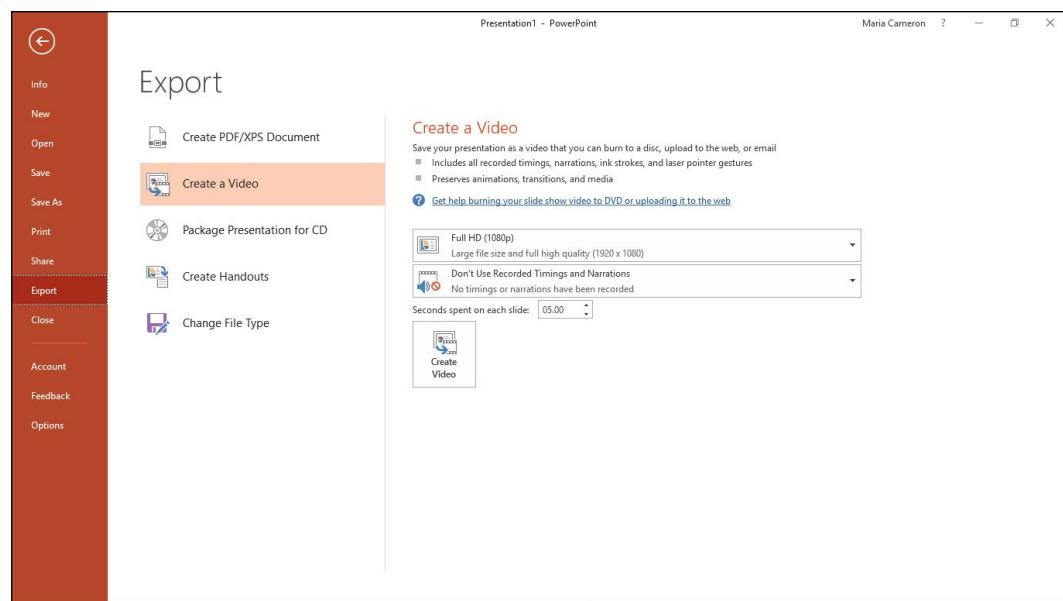
#### Use Backstage View

**GET READY. USE** the blank presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab on the Ribbon to display Backstage view.
2. Select **Export** in the left pane. Several options may appear, including: Create PDF/XPS Document, Create a Video, Package Presentation for CD, Create Handouts, and Change File Type.
3. Select **Create a Video**. Options and commands for completing that activity appear at the right (Figure 1-4).

**Figure 1-4**

The Export page in Backstage view



4. Select **Account** in the left pane. PowerPoint displays user information in the center pane and product information in the right pane.
5. Select **Open** in the left pane. A list of activities related to opening files appears. Recent is selected in the center pane, and a list of recently opened files or folders appears in the right pane.
6. Select **New** in the left pane. A list of templates appears.
7. Select the **Return to Document** icon (the left-pointing arrow) in the upper-left corner to leave Backstage view.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the blank presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Closing a Presentation

When you close a presentation, PowerPoint removes it from the screen. PowerPoint remains open so you can work with other files. You should always save and close any open presentations before you exit PowerPoint or shut down your computer. In this exercise, you will practice closing an open presentation.

### STEP BY STEP

### Close a Presentation

**GET READY. USE** the blank presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab to display Backstage view.
2. Select **Close** in the left pane. PowerPoint clears the presentation from the screen.

**PAUSE. CLOSE** PowerPoint by selecting the Close button in the upper-right corner of the window.

## WORKING WITH AN EXISTING PRESENTATION

If you want to work with an existing presentation, you need to open it. After opening a presentation, you can use commands on the View tab of PowerPoint's Ribbon to change the way the presentation is displayed onscreen. Different views are suitable for different types of presentation editing and management tasks. You can also use PowerPoint's Zoom tools to make slides appear larger or smaller onscreen. The following exercises show you how to display your slides in different ways, and how to add, edit, and delete text on your slides. You will then learn how to print and save a presentation.

### Opening an Existing Presentation

PowerPoint makes it easy to work on a presentation over time. If you can't finish a slide show, you can reopen it later and resume working on it. The Open page in Backstage view and the Open dialog box let you open a presentation that has already been saved. Presentations can be stored on your computer or network or on removable media (such as a flash drive). You can also store presentations on your OneDrive account, which is a free, online cloud storage location provided by Microsoft. You can use the Browse option and Open dialog box to navigate to the file's location and then choose the file to select it. This exercise shows you how to use the Open command to open an existing presentation—one that has already been created and saved as a file on a disk.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Open an Existing Presentation

**GET READY.** Connect your flash drive to one of the USB ports on your computer. **LAUNCH** PowerPoint 2016.

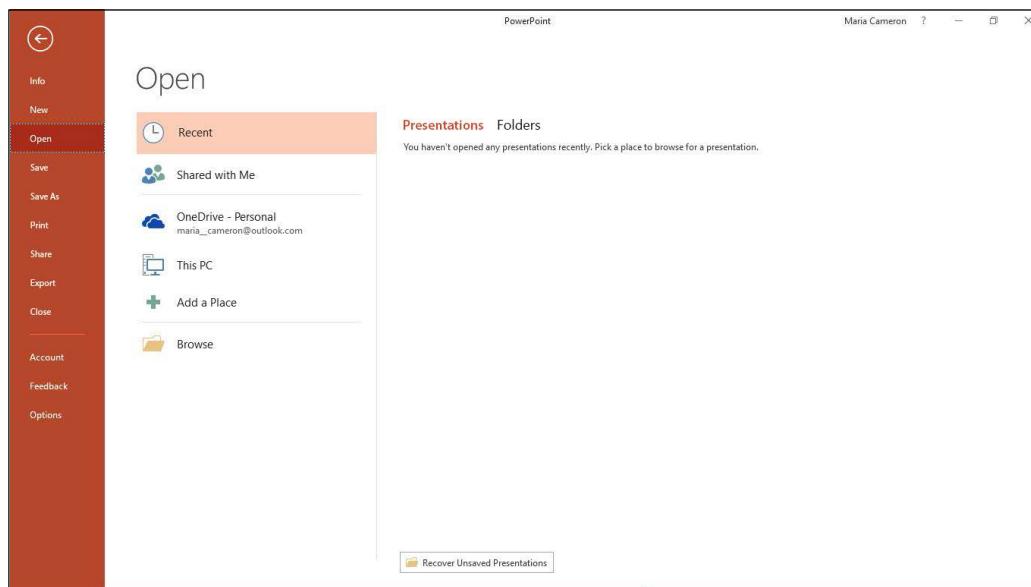
1. On the PowerPoint opening screen, select **Open Other Presentations** in the left pane. The Open page displays in Backstage view, as shown in Figure 1-5.

#### Take Note

When PowerPoint is already open and a blank or existing presentation is displayed, you can select the File tab and then select Open to access the Open page in Backstage view.

**Figure 1-5**

The Open page in Backstage view

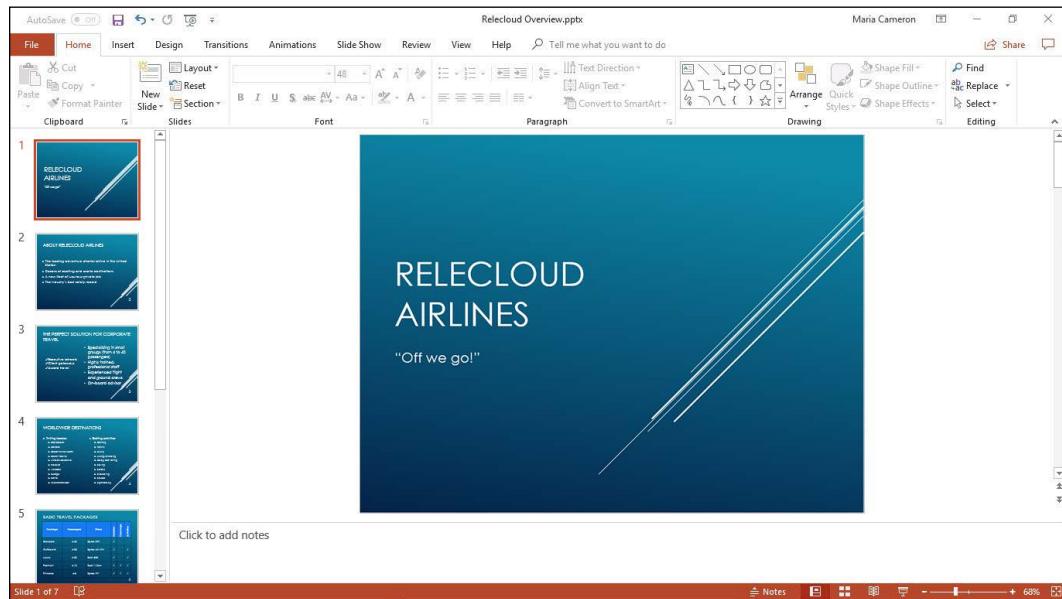


2. Select **Browse**. The Open dialog box appears.
3. In the Open dialog box, use the vertical scroll bar to locate and select your flash drive in the left pane. Then, in the right pane, navigate to and then open the folder containing the data files for this lesson.

4. Select the file named **Relecloud Overview** and then select **Open**. The presentation appears on your screen (Figure 1-6).

**Figure 1-6**

The Relecloud Overview presentation



**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

From the Open page in Backstage view, you can choose whether to browse your OneDrive or your computer (using This PC or Browse). OneDrive is a cloud-based private storage system that Microsoft provides at no charge. Storing your files there makes them available to you no matter which computer you are using. However, accessing your OneDrive requires Internet access, so if you do not always have Internet access available, storing files on your flash drive or a local hard drive may be a better option. If you decide to store the data files for this book locally, you might want to put them in your Documents library for easy access.

## Viewing a Presentation in Different Ways

PowerPoint's various **views** enable you to review your presentation in a variety of ways. For example, in Normal view, you can work with just one slide at a time, which is helpful when you are adding text or graphics to a slide. In Slide Sorter view, you can display all the slides in a presentation at the same time, which makes it easy to rearrange the slides. The following exercise shows you how to change PowerPoint views.

PowerPoint provides these views:

- **Normal view** is the default view that lets you focus on an individual slide. The slide you are currently editing is called the **current slide**. The current slide appears in the Slide pane, which is the largest of the view's three panes. Below the Slide pane is the Notes pane, where you can add and edit notes you want to associate with the current slide. You can toggle the Notes pane on and off with the Notes button on the View tab. In the left pane—called the Slides pane—you can select the thumbnail images of the slides to jump from one slide to another. Use the scroll bar to access slides that aren't visible in the Slides pane.
- **Outline view** is the same as Normal view except instead of thumbnail images of the slides, a text outline of the presentation appears in the left pane. Only text from placeholders appears in the outline; any text from manually created text boxes does not. Text from graphical objects such as SmartArt also does not appear in the outline.

- **Slide Sorter view** displays all the slides in a presentation on a single screen. (If there are more slides than can fit in one screen, use scroll bars to move slides in and out of view.) In Slide Sorter view, you can reorganize a slide show by dragging slides to different positions. You can also duplicate and delete slides in this view.
- **Notes Page view** shows one slide at a time, along with any notes that are associated with the slide. This view lets you create and edit notes. You may find it easier to work with notes in this view than in Normal view. You can also print notes pages for your presentation; they are printed as they appear in Notes Page view.
- **Reading view** is like Slide Show view except it is in a window rather than filling the entire screen. Displaying the presentation in a window enables you to also work in other windows at the same time.
- **Slide Show view** lets you preview your presentation on the screen, so you can display it the way it will be shown to your audience.

**Take Note**

The Slide Show view doesn't appear on the View tab. It has its own dedicated Slide Show tab on the Ribbon. You can also access Slide Show view by selecting the Slide Show button in the status bar at the bottom of the PowerPoint window.

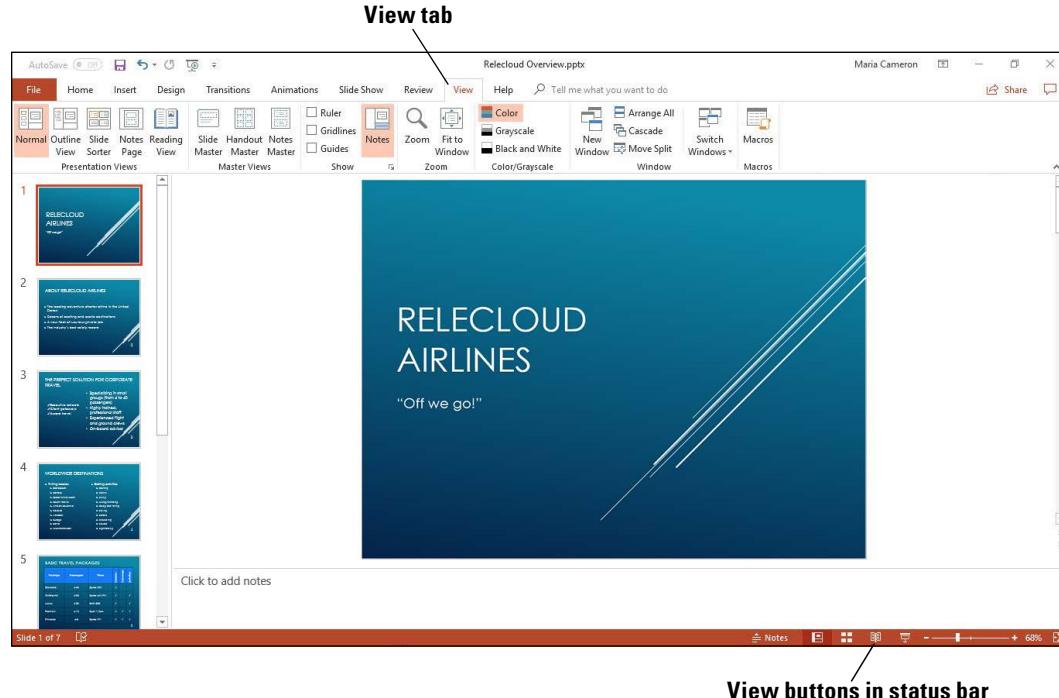
**STEP BY STEP****Change PowerPoint Views**

**GET READY. USE** the *Relecloud Overview* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **View** tab (Figure 1-7). Notice that the Normal button is highlighted in the Ribbon and in the status bar at the bottom of the PowerPoint window.

**Figure 1-7**

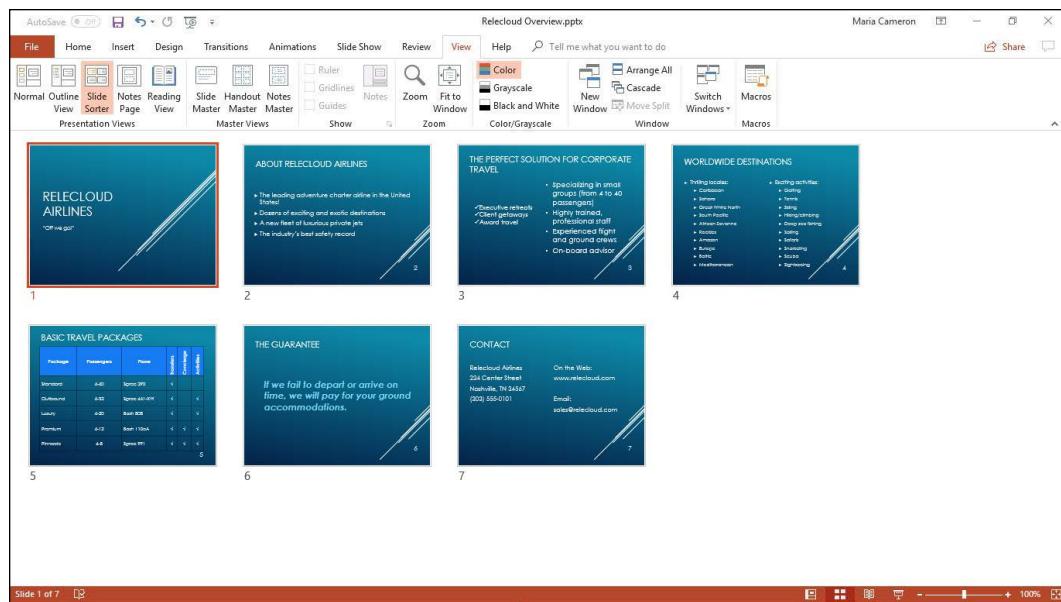
Normal view, with the View tab selected



2. Select the **Outline View** button to change to Outline view.
3. Select the **Slide Sorter** button to change to Slide Sorter view (Figure 1-8).

**Figure 1-8**

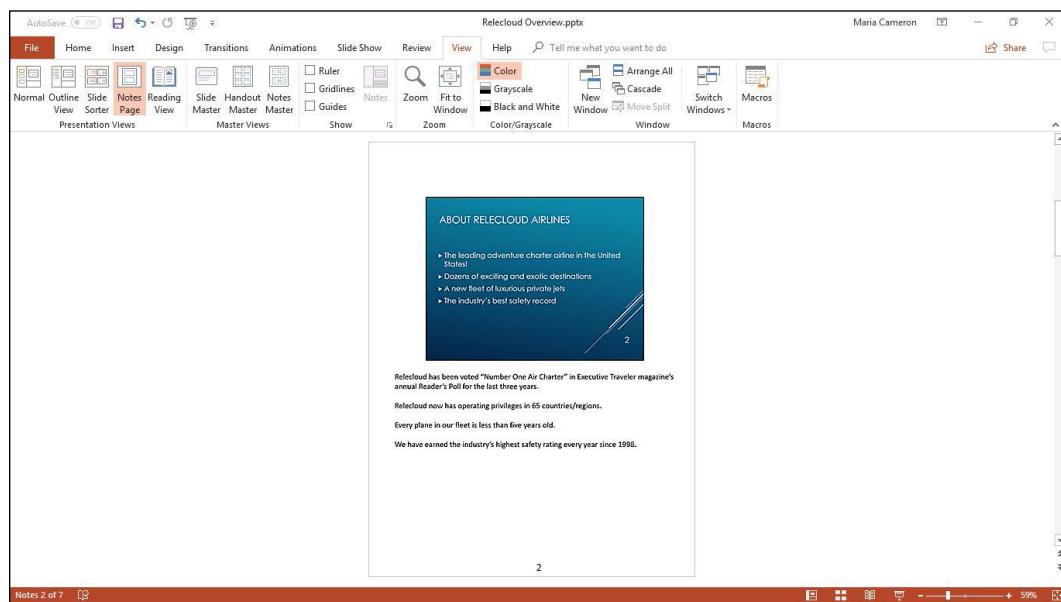
Slide Sorter view



- 4.** Select **slide 2** and then select the **Notes Page** button. PowerPoint switches to Notes Page view (Figure 1-9).

**Figure 1-9**

Notes Page view



**Take Note** There is no button for Notes Page view in the status bar at the bottom of the PowerPoint window; you must access it via the Ribbon.

**Take Note** If you stored the data files on your OneDrive, a message may display at step 4 warning you that edits made in this view will be lost when saved to the server. That is not a concern at this point, so select View to continue.

- 5.** Select the **Slide Show** tab and then select **From Beginning**. The first slide of the presentation fills the screen.

**Take Note**

If you have a widescreen monitor (16:9 height/width ratio), black panels appear to the left and right of the slide because this particular presentation is set up for 4:3 monitors.

6. Press **Esc** to exit Slide Show view and return to Notes Page view.
7. Select the **View** tab and then select the **Reading View** button. The first slide appears in a reading window.
8. Press **Esc** to close the reading window.
9. On the **View** tab, select the **Normal** button. PowerPoint switches back to Normal view.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Viewing in Color or Grayscale

**Grayscale** is a viewing mode in which there are no colors, only shades of gray. When you distribute a presentation using some low-tech methods, such as printing slides on a black-and-white printer, your slides might look different than they do in full color on your screen. Therefore, it is sometimes useful to display your slides in Grayscale mode on the screen so you can identify any potential problems that might occur when slides are printed without color. There is also a Black and White viewing mode that can check how slides will display with only black and white (no gray shades). Some fax machines transmit only in black and white, for example; therefore, if you faxed your slides, you might need to know how they will appear for the recipient.

#### STEP BY STEP

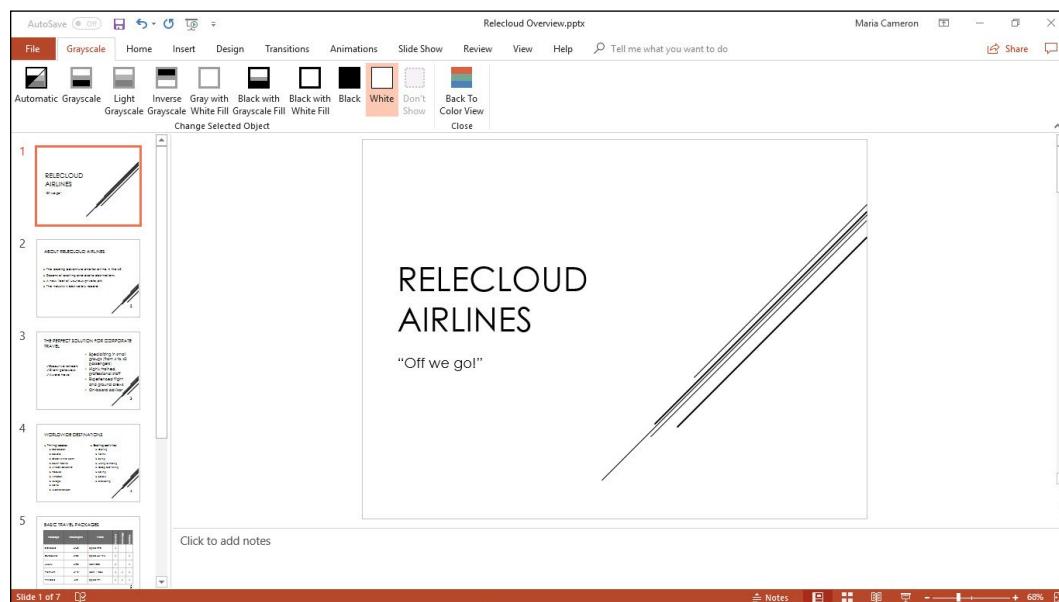
#### Switch Between Color and Grayscale Modes

**GET READY. USE** the *Relecloud Overview* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the **View** tab, in the **Color/Grayscale** group, select **Grayscale**. The presentation slides appear in grayscale mode, and a Grayscale tab appears on the Ribbon (Figure 1-10).

**Figure 1-10**

The Grayscale tab, with slides displayed in grayscale



2. Select several of the buttons on the Grayscale tab and observe the difference in the slide appearance.
3. Select **Back To Color View**. The presentation returns to color mode.

4. On the View tab, select **Black and White**. The presentation appears in Black and White mode, and a Black And White tab appears on the Ribbon.
5. Select **Back To Color View**. The presentation returns to color mode.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Viewing Multiple Presentations at Once

You can have multiple presentations open at the same time in PowerPoint, and you can arrange their windows so that they are all visible at once. This makes it easy to drag-and-drop content between windows, and also to compare different versions of a presentation. In the following exercise, you will open two presentations and arrange them.

### STEP BY STEP

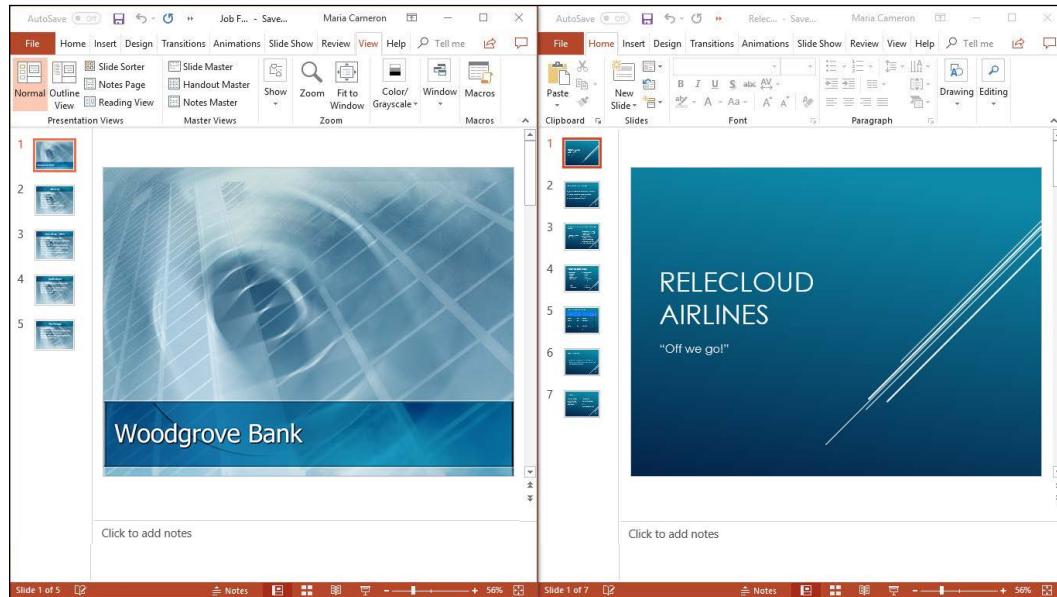
### Arrange Multiple Presentation Windows

**GET READY. USE** the **Relecloud Overview** presentation that is open from the previous exercise. You will also open a second presentation in this exercise so that multiple presentation windows are available to arrange.

1. Select the **File** tab.
2. Select **Open**. The Open page displays in Backstage view.
3. Navigate to the location containing the data files for this lesson.
4. Locate and open **Job Fair**. The presentation appears on your screen.
5. Select the **View** tab.
6. In the Window group, select **Arrange All**. The presentations appear side-by-side (Figure 1-11).

**Figure 1-11**

Two presentations open side-by-side



7. Select the **Close** button in the upper-right corner of the Job Fair window to close the **Job Fair** presentation.
8. In the Relecloud Overview window, select the **Maximize** button near the upper-right corner of the window (next to the Close button). The PowerPoint window fills the screen.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Working with Text

Text is not typed directly onto a slide in PowerPoint, but instead is placed in text boxes. A **text box** is, as the name implies, a box that holds text that you type into it. Most of the available slide layouts have one or more placeholders (also called text containers) that become text boxes when you type text into them, and you can also add more text boxes manually to slides. Text can be placed on a slide either by typing it directly into a text box or placeholder, or by typing in the Outline pane in Normal view. In the following exercises, you will practice adding text to a placeholder; adding text to the Outline pane in Outline view; selecting, replacing, and deleting text on a slide; and copying and moving text from one slide to another.

### Adding Text to a Placeholder

In this exercise, you will practice entering text in a **placeholder**, which is a box that can hold either text or a graphic object. The placeholders available depend on the slide layout. In the Relecloud presentation, slide 1 is an example of a Title Slide layout; it contains two placeholders: one for the title and one for the subtitle. Placeholders make it easy to add text—just select in the placeholder and then type the text.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Add Text to a Placeholder

**GET READY. USE** the *Relecloud Overview* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **Home** tab. On slide 1, select at the beginning of the slide's title (*Relecloud Airlines*). The borders of the title's placeholder appear (Figure 1-12), and a blinking insertion point appears before the word *Relecloud*.

**Figure 1-12**

The title placeholder



2. Select the slide's **subtitle**, which is the last line of text. The subtitle's placeholder appears, as does the insertion point.
3. Display **slide 4** by selecting the slide in the Slides pane, or by pressing **Page Down** until it appears.
4. Select after the word *Snorkeling* in the second column. The insertion point appears.
5. Press **Enter** to start a new line and then type **Scuba**.

6. Press **Enter** and then type **Sightseeing**. Your slide should resemble the one shown in Figure 1-13.

**Figure 1-13**

Slide 4 with added text



**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Adding Text in Outline View

Working in Outline view is like working in a word processor. PowerPoint displays the text from each slide in the Outline pane, without any backgrounds, placeholders, or anything else that might distract you from your writing. You can navigate a presentation in the Outline pane the same way you use the Slides pane—scroll to the desired slide's outline and then select it. Here, you practice adding text in the Outline pane.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Add Text in Outline View

**GET READY. USE** the **Relecloud Overview** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 7**. This slide contains contact information, but the mailing address and telephone number are missing.
2. Select the **View** tab and then select **Outline View**. Because slide 7 is the current slide, its text is highlighted in the Outline pane.

#### Take Note

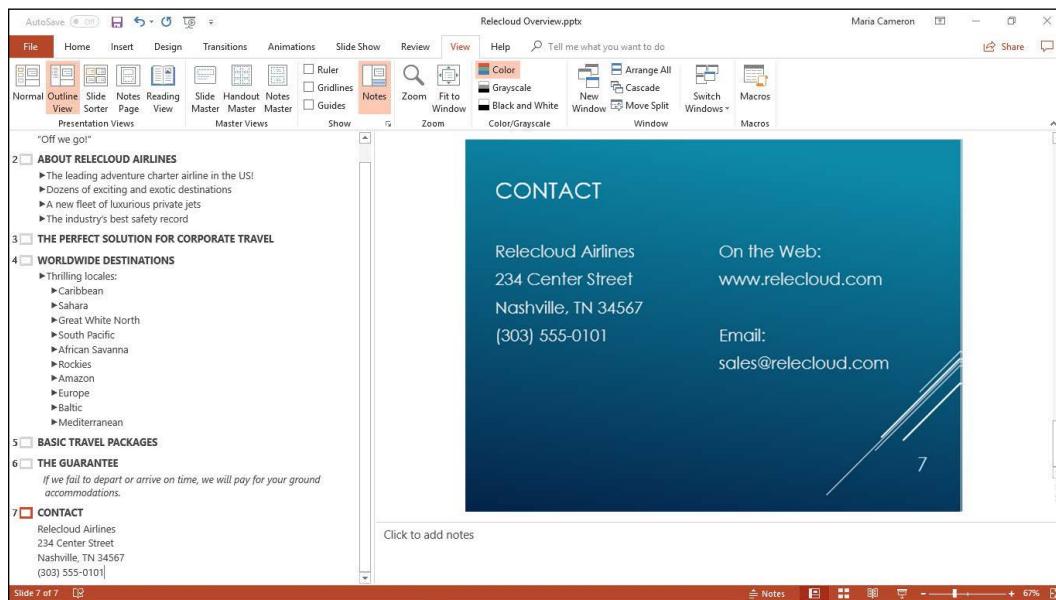
You can adjust the Zoom level for the Outline pane, or any other pane, as needed if the content is not shown at a convenient size for working with it. Select in the Outline pane and then on the View tab, select Zoom to open the Zoom dialog box. Then select a lower percentage, such as 50% or 33%, to shrink the text to a readable size and select OK.

3. In the Outline pane, select after the word *Airlines* on slide 7 to place the insertion point there.
4. Press **Enter** to start a new line.
5. On the new line, type **234 Center Street** and then press **Enter**. As you type the new text in the Outline pane, notice that it appears on the slide.

6. Type **Nashville, TN 34567** and then press **Enter**.
7. Type **(303) 555-0101**. Your slide should resemble the one shown in Figure 1-14.

**Figure 1-14**

Text added to the Outline pane appears on the slide



8. Switch to **Normal** view.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Saving an Edited Presentation

When you work on a presentation, you should save it often—especially if you have made changes that you want to keep. In this exercise, you will practice saving a presentation with a different filename in PowerPoint 2016 format.

### STEP BY STEP

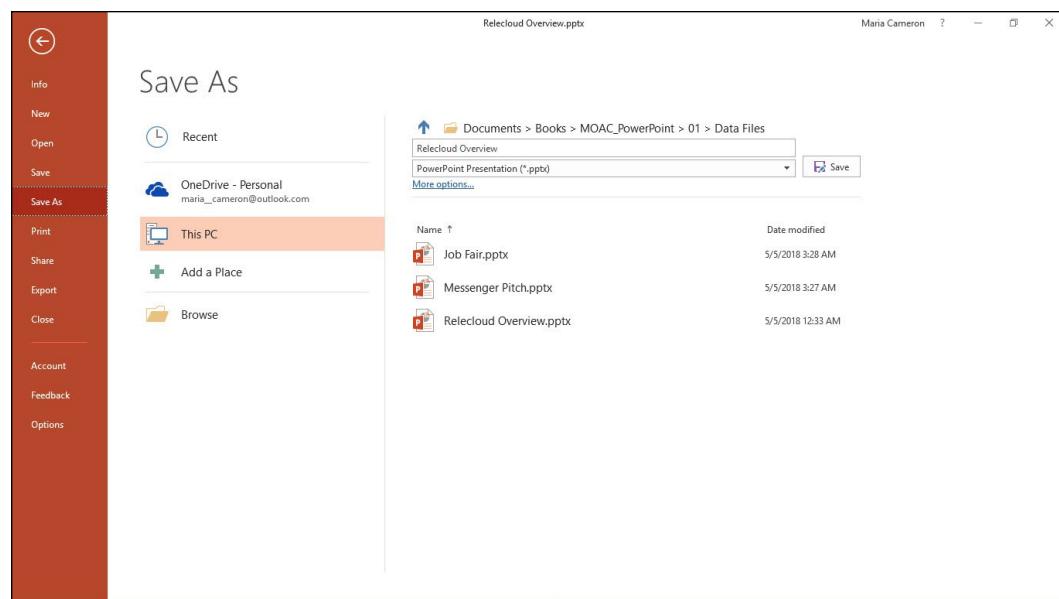
### Save an Edited Presentation

**GET READY. USE** the **Relecloud Overview** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab to display Backstage view.
2. Select **Save As**. The Save As page displays in Backstage view (Figure 1-15).
3. Double-click **This PC** (or select **Browse**) to open the Save As dialog box. The Documents Library is the default location for saving new files. You want to change the location from the default to your flash drive.
4. Using the vertical scroll bar in the left pane, scroll down until **This PC** displays. Expand the **This PC** container, if necessary, and then scroll down and select your **flash drive**.
5. In the Save As dialog box, select **New folder**. A folder icon appears with the words **New folder** selected.
6. Type **PowerPoint Lesson 1** and then press **Enter**.
7. Select the **Open** button.
8. In the File name box, type **Relecloud Overview Solution**.

**Figure 1-15**

The Save As page in Backstage view



9. Select the **Save** button.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Exiting PowerPoint

When you exit PowerPoint, the program closes. In this exercise, you will practice exiting PowerPoint.

### STEP BY STEP

### Exit PowerPoint

**GET READY. USE** the ***Relecloud Overview Solution*** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **Close** button in the upper-right corner of the PowerPoint window.  
The PowerPoint window closes.

**STOP.**

## Knowledge Assessment

### Matching

Match the term in Column 1 to its description in Column 2.

#### Column 1

1. Ribbon
2. Normal view
3. Current slide
4. Backstage view
5. Dialog box launcher

#### Column 2

- a. Includes the Slide, Notes, and Slides panes
- b. Displays commands for managing files
- c. The slide you are editing
- d. A Ribbon tool that opens a dialog box
- e. A large toolbar that presents tools in related groups

### True/False

Circle T if the statement is true or F if the statement is false.

- T F 1. If you need more room on the screen, you can hide the Ribbon.  
T F 2. When you start PowerPoint, the last presentation you worked on automatically opens.  
T F 3. To close a dialog box without accepting any changes you may have made to it, select the Cancel button.  
T F 4. Backstage view gives you access to all of the PowerPoint design tools.  
T F 5. In Normal view, PowerPoint displays five different panes for viewing different aspects of your slides.

## Projects

### Project 1-1: Adding and Editing Text in a Presentation

As personnel manager for Woodgrove Bank, you have accepted an invitation to give a presentation at a local job fair. Your goal is to recruit applicants for positions as bank tellers. You have created the presentation but need to finish it.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. Select the **File** tab and open the presentation named **Job Fair** from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Job Fair Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2**. In the slide title, select the words **Woodgrove Bank** by dragging the mouse pointer over them and then replace the selected text by typing **Us**.
4. In the bulleted list, select after the word **assets** to place the insertion point there.
5. Press **Enter** to move the insertion point down to a new, blank line.
6. Type **Voted “Best Local Bank” by City Magazine**. The new text will wrap to fit in the box.
7. Select **slide 3** and switch to **Outline** view.
8. In the Outline pane, select the words **Help Wanted** (do not select the colon) and then press **Delete** to delete the text.
9. Type **Now Hiring**.

10. Select at the end of the first item in the bulleted list and then press **Enter** to create a new line in the list.
11. Type **Responsible for cash drawer and station bookkeeping**.
12. Switch to **Normal** view and then press **Page Down** to display slide 4.
13. Select the last item in the bulleted list by dragging the mouse pointer across it.
14. On the Ribbon, select the **Home** tab and then select the **Cut** button. In the Slides pane, select **slide 5**.
15. Select at the end of the last item in the bulleted list to place the insertion point there and then press **Enter**.
16. On the Ribbon, select the **Paste** button. The item you cut from slide 4 is pasted into slide 5.
17. **SAVE** the **Job Fair Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

---

### Project 1-2: Editing and Printing a Presentation

Consolidated Messenger is a new company offering in-town courier service to corporate and private customers. As the company's owner, you want to tell as many people as possible about your new service, and a presentation can help you do it. You need to review your presentation, make some minor changes, and print it.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **Messenger Pitch** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Messenger Pitch Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Read slide 1. In the Slides pane, select **slide 2** and read it.
4. Select the **scroll down** button to display slide 3 and then read it.
5. Select the **Next Slide** button below the vertical scroll bar to display slide 4 and then read it.
6. Press **Page Down** on your keyboard to display slide 5 and then read it.
7. Press **Home** to return to the beginning of the presentation.
8. On slide 1, select the words **and Delivery** by dragging the mouse pointer over them.
9. Press **Delete** to delete the selected text from the subtitle.
10. Select **slide 2**, select the word **delayed**, and then type **scheduled** in its place.
11. Select the third item in the bulleted list (**24-hour emergency service**) by dragging the mouse pointer over it.
12. On the Home tab of the Ribbon, select the **Copy** button.
13. Select **slide 4**, and then select at the end of the last item in the bulleted list to place the insertion point there.
14. Press **Enter** to move the insertion point down to a new, blank line. On the Ribbon, select the **Paste** button.
15. Select at the end of the newly pasted line to move the insertion point there. Type a colon, press the **spacebar**, and then type **\$250**.
16. Select **slide 5**, select at the end of the last line of text in the left column, and then press **Enter**.
17. Type **555-0187 (daytime)** and then press **Enter**.
18. Type **555-0188 (emergency)** and then press **Enter**.
19. Type **555-0189 (fax)**.

20. Select **slide 1**. Select the **File** tab. (Before printing the presentation in the next step, check with your instructor.)
  21. In Backstage view, select **Print**. Then select the **Print** button to print the presentation using the default settings.
  22. **SAVE** the **Messenger Pitch Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.
- STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.
-

# Presentation Basics 2

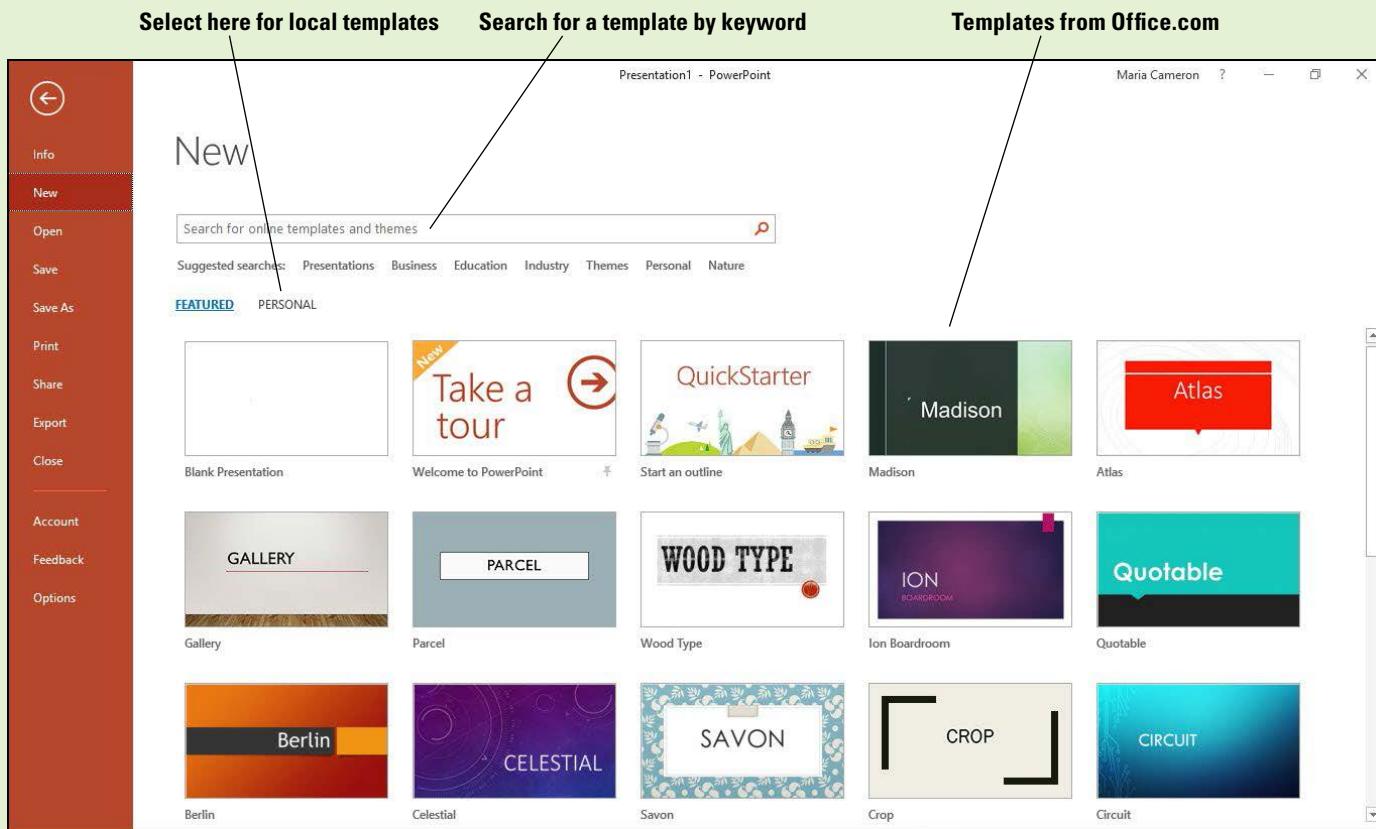
## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill   | Exam Objective  | Objective Number                 |
|---|---|----------------------------------|
| Creating a New Blank Presentation             | Create a new presentation<br>Apply a different slide layout   | 1.1.1<br>1.2.5                   |
| Saving a Presentation                         | Preserve presentation content   | 5.2.4                            |
| Creating a Presentation from a Template       | Create a presentation based on a template   | 1.1.2                            |
| Adding, Deleting, and Organizing Slides       | Insert specific slide layouts<br>Duplicate existing slides<br>Modify slide order<br>Delete slides         | 1.2.1<br>1.2.2<br>1.4.2<br>1.2.4 |
| Creating a Presentation from Existing Content | Import Word document outlines<br>Insert slides from another presentation                                  | 1.1.3<br>5.1.1                   |
| Printing a Presentation                       | Print notes pages<br>Print all or part of a presentation<br>Print in color, grayscale, or black and white | 1.6.2<br>1.6.1<br>1.6.4          |

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### Selecting a Template

PowerPoint's New tab in Backstage view enables you to create a new presentation from a template. You can choose templates from Office.com or browse templates stored on your own hard drive (Figure 2-1).

**Figure 2-1**

The New tab in Backstage view



### Troubleshooting

In Figure 2-1, there are two headings below the Suggested Searches line: FEATURED and PERSONAL. If these headings are not shown on the New page, you need to specify a default personal template location. In Backstage view, select Options in the left pane and then select the Save tab in the PowerPoint Options dialog box. In the Default personal templates location box, enter a path to the location where you want to store your templates and then select OK.

## CREATING A NEW BLANK PRESENTATION

When you start PowerPoint, its opening screen appears. If you select Blank Presentation or press the Esc key, a new blank presentation appears, containing a single slide. The fastest and simplest way to create a new presentation is to start with a blank presentation. You can add text to the presentation and then format the slides later.

### Creating a Blank Presentation

You can use the single slide that opens with a blank presentation to begin creating your new presentation. In this exercise, you will learn how to open a blank presentation.

#### STEP BY STEP

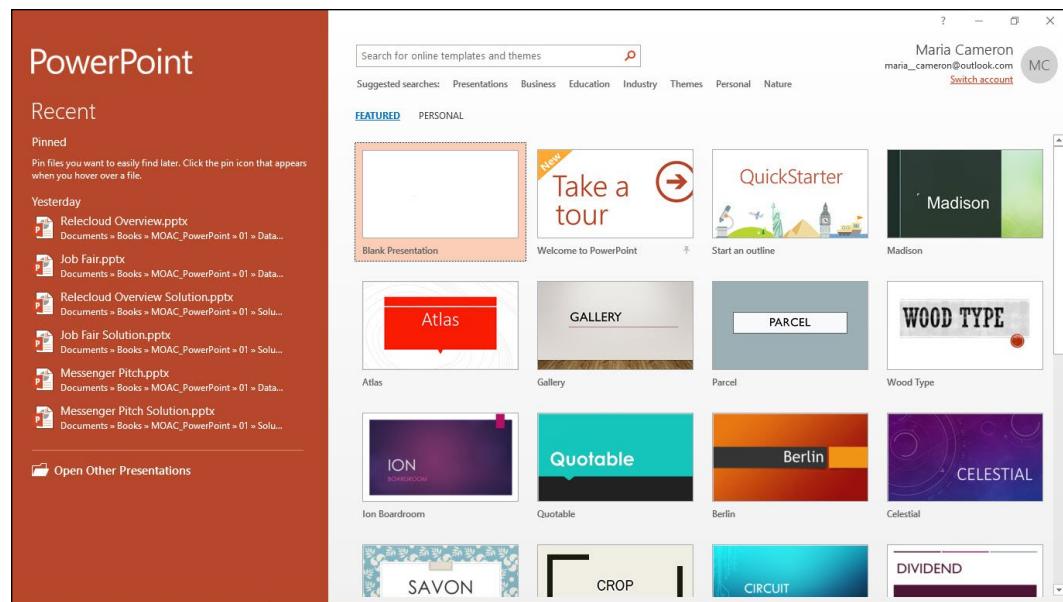
#### Create a Blank Presentation at Startup

**GET READY.** Before you begin these steps, make sure that your computer is on. Sign in to Windows, if necessary.

- 1. LAUNCH** PowerPoint 2016. PowerPoint's opening screen appears, as shown in Figure 2-2.

**Figure 2-2**

The opening screen in PowerPoint 2016



2. Select **Blank Presentation** or press **Esc**. A blank presentation appears in Normal view.

**PAUSE.** **CLOSE** the blank presentation without saving. **LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

## STEP BY STEP

### Create a Blank Presentation (PowerPoint Already Open)

**GET READY.** **LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open and **OPEN** a new blank presentation.

1. Select the **File** tab to display Backstage view.
2. Select **New** in the left pane. The New page displays in Backstage view (refer to Figure 2-1).
3. Select **Blank Presentation**. A new blank presentation appears in Normal view.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the blank presentation open to use in the next exercise.

There are two advantages to using a blank presentation to start a slide show. First, PowerPoint creates a blank presentation every time the program starts, so you always have immediate access to the first slide of a new presentation by just pressing Esc at startup. Second, because the presentation is not formatted (meaning there are no backgrounds, colors, or pictures), you can focus on writing your text. Many experienced PowerPoint users prefer to start with a blank presentation because they know they can format their slides after they finish entering the text.

## Adding Text to a Blank Slide

If a blank slide has one or more text placeholders, you can easily add text to the slide. To enter text, just select the sample text in the placeholder and then type your text. In this exercise, you will enter text into a blank slide's placeholders to create a set of discussion points for a meeting of store managers. The slide you work with in this exercise has a title placeholder and a content placeholder that can hold text and other types of content.

**STEP BY STEP****Add Text to a Blank Slide**

**GET READY.** USE the blank presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **title placeholder** at the top of the slide. The text *Click to add title* disappears and a blinking insertion point appears in the placeholder.
2. Type **Discussion Points**.
3. Select the **subtitle placeholder** in the lower placeholder. The text *Click to add subtitle* disappears and the insertion point appears.
4. Type **Customer surveys** and then press **Enter** to move the insertion point down to a new line.
5. Type **Inventory tracking** and press **Enter**.
6. Type **Absenteeism policy** and press **Enter**.
7. Type **Break** and press **Enter**.
8. Type **Store security** and press **Enter**.
9. Type **Store closing procedures** and press **Enter**.
10. Type **Cash drawer management** and then select anywhere in the blank area outside the placeholder to clear its border from the screen.

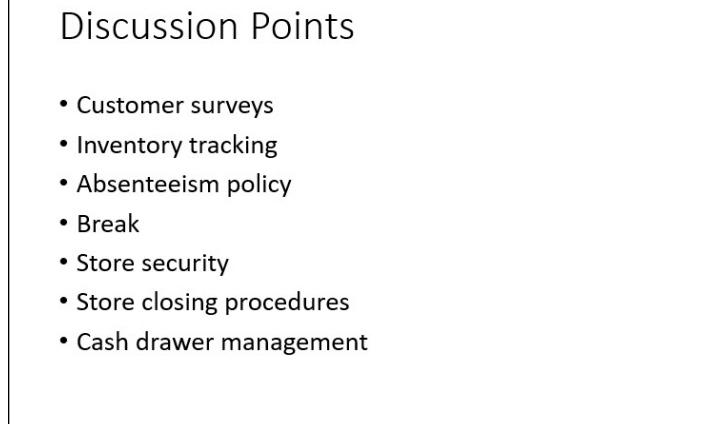
**Take Note**

Notice that the text you entered is centered and becomes smaller as you type. That's because by default the first slide of a blank presentation is a title slide with centered text. After you fill the subtitle placeholder with text, additional text is automatically sized to fit the placeholder.

11. Select the **Home** tab and then select the **Layout** button. A drop-down menu appears, displaying PowerPoint's default layouts in a *gallery*.
12. Select the **Title and Content** thumbnail in the gallery. The gallery closes and PowerPoint applies the Title and Content layout to the current slide (Figure 2-3) so the subtitle format is replaced with bullets.

**Figure 2-3**

The completed slide



**PAUSE.** LEAVE the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

**SAVING A PRESENTATION**

When you create a new presentation, it exists only in your computer's memory. If you want to keep the presentation, you must save it on your computer, a network drive, CD, flash drive, or other storage location. After you save a file, you can close it and then open it later to resume working on it. The following exercise shows you how to save a new presentation to a location you choose, how to save the presentation in a different file format, and how to work with PowerPoint's Save options.

## Saving a New Presentation for the First Time

When you save a presentation for the first time, PowerPoint displays the Save As dialog box so you can give the presentation a name before saving it. In this exercise, you will name and save the presentation you created earlier.

### STEP BY STEP

### Save a New Presentation

**GET READY. USE** the presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the Quick Access Toolbar, select **Save**. The Save As page displays in Backstage view.
2. Navigate to the folder where you want to save your file. For example, you can double-click **This PC** (or select **Browse**) to open the Save As dialog box. Then use the Save As dialog box to find the location, such as the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select the text in the File name box by dragging the mouse pointer over it and then press **Delete** to delete it.
4. Type **Managers Meeting Solution**.
5. Select the **Save** button. PowerPoint saves the presentation in the folder you chose with the name you typed in the previous step.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

When you save a presentation (or any type of document), be sure to give it a name that describes its contents. Giving the presentation a name that describes its contents will help you identify your presentations more easily when you are trying to find the correct file.

## Embedding Fonts

When you create a presentation, you can choose any of the fonts installed on that computer. When you present the presentation on another computer that does not have the same font installed that you used in the presentation, PowerPoint substitutes a different font, which may or may not be acceptable to you and may or may not display correctly onscreen. To ensure that the correct font is always available no matter which computer you use to view the presentation, you can embed the fonts in the presentation file. The disadvantage of embedding fonts is that it makes the presentation file size larger.

### Take Note

Some fonts cannot be embedded in a presentation because of their licensing restrictions.

### STEP BY STEP

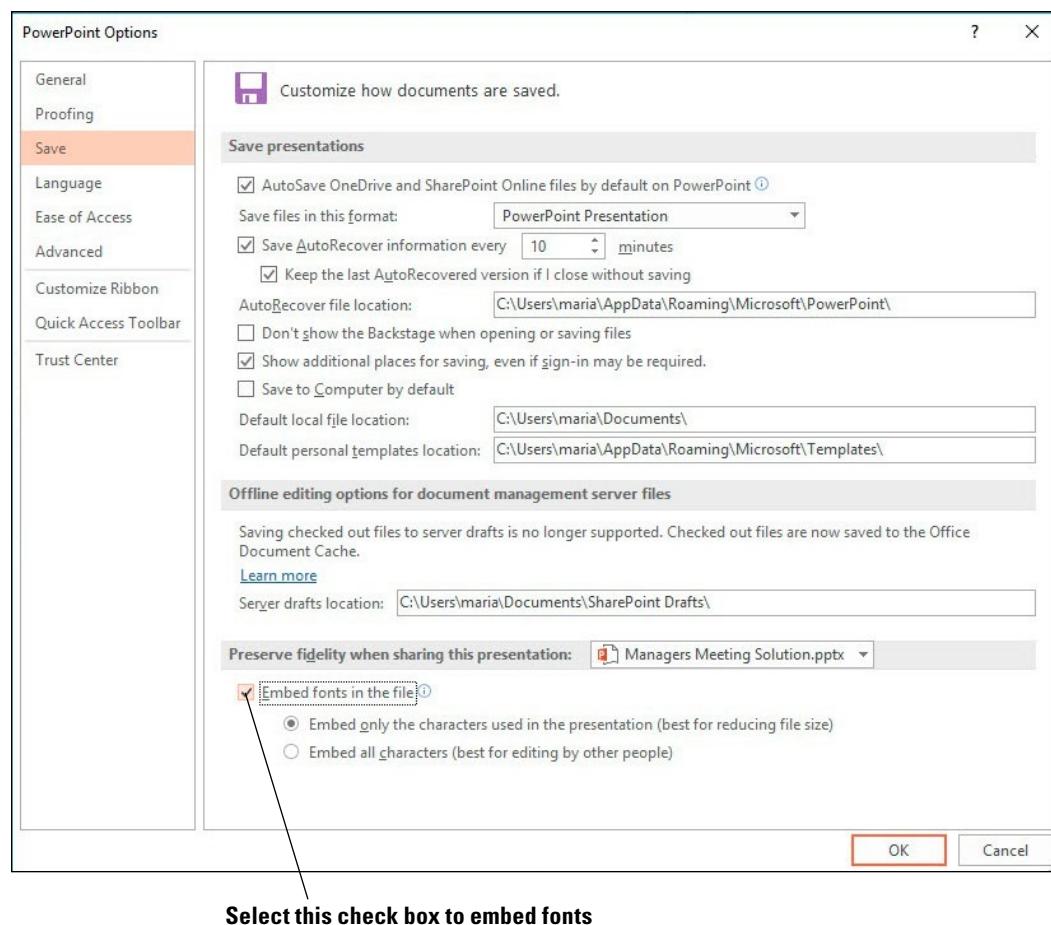
### Embed Fonts When Saving

**GET READY. USE** the **Managers Meeting Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab and then select **Save As**.
2. Select **Browse** and navigate to the location where you want to save, such as the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. In the Save As dialog box, select **Tools**. A menu opens.
4. Select **Save Options**. The PowerPoint Options dialog box opens.
5. Select the **Embed fonts in the file** check box. This check box is located under the **Preserve fidelity when sharing this presentation** heading (Figure 2-4).

**Figure 2-4**

Choose to embed fonts in a presentation



Select this check box to embed fonts

**6. Select OK.**

**7. SAVE the *Managers Meeting Solution* presentation and then CLOSE the file.**

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

When you select the Embed fonts in the file check box in step 5, two option buttons become available. Select the one that best fits your needs:

- Embed only the characters used in the presentation (best for reducing file size): Choose this option if the presentation text is final, if you do not anticipate making any changes to it, and if small file size is important.
- Embed all characters (best for editing by other people): Choose this option if the presentation text is not final, or if file size is not important (for example, if there is plenty of space on the drive where it is being stored).

## CREATING A PRESENTATION FROM A TEMPLATE

PowerPoint's templates give you a jump start in creating complete presentations. A **template** is a reusable sample file that includes a background, layouts, coordinating fonts, and other design elements that work together to create an attractive, finished slide show. Some templates also contain sample content.

## Using a Template as the Basis for a Presentation

Each template employs one or more **themes**. A theme is a collection of settings including colors, fonts, background graphics, bullet graphics, and margin and placement settings. You can create your own templates or download templates from Office.com. In this exercise, you will use a downloaded template to start a presentation that, when finished, will help you show pictures and descriptions of new products to a group of store managers.

### STEP BY STEP

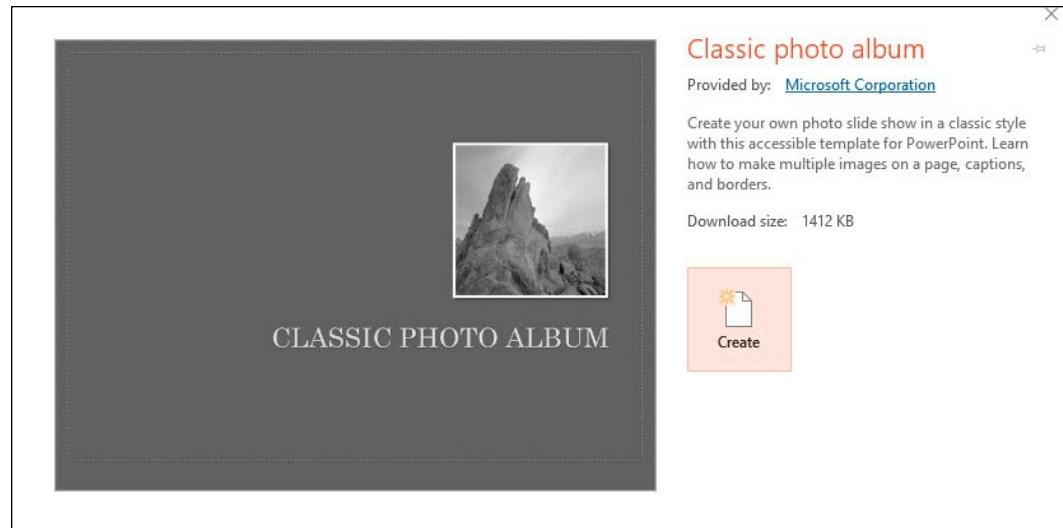
### Create a Presentation from a Template

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. Select the **File** tab.
2. Select **New** to display the New page.
3. In the Search box, type **photo albums** and then press **Enter** or select the **Start searching** button (the magnifying glass). Thumbnail images of the photo album templates appear.
4. Locate and select the **Classic photo album** thumbnail (Figure 2-5) and then select **Create** in the preview window that appears in the middle of the screen. PowerPoint opens a new presentation based on the selected template. It contains several sample slides with text and graphics.

**Figure 2-5**

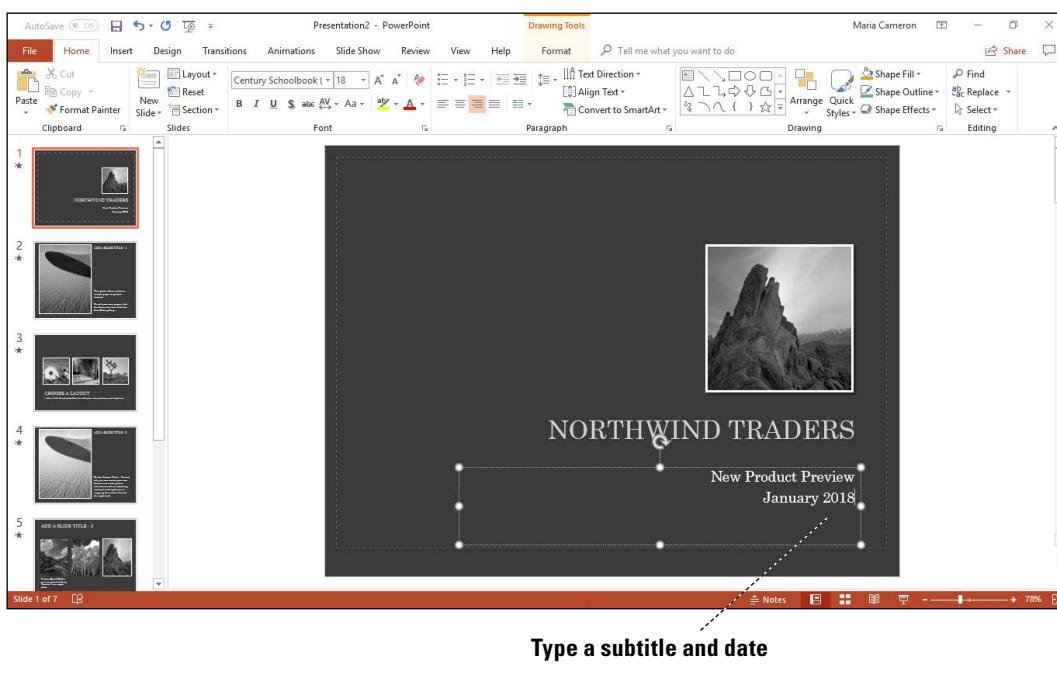
Selecting a sample template



5. On slide 1, drag over to select the **Classic Photo Album** text and then type **Northwind Traders** to replace it.
6. Select the text in the *Click to add date and other details* placeholder to place the insertion point there. Type **New Product Preview**, press **Enter**, and then type **January 2018** (Figure 2-6).

**Figure 2-6**

Customizing the text on the first slide



Type a subtitle and date

7. On the Quick Access Toolbar, select **Save**. The Save As page displays in Backstage view.
8. **SAVE** the presentation as **New Product Preview Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

#### Take Note

You can change a presentation's theme from the Design tab; you do not have to create a new presentation based on a template just to use a different theme. Simply select the Design tab and point to the various themes in the Themes group. Your presentation will show you a preview of the theme. Select one you like to apply it.

It is important to choose a template that is appropriate for your audience and your message. If you need to deliver business information to a group of managers, for example, choose a template that appears professional and does not have elements that will distract the audience from getting your message. Conversely, a whimsical template might work better for a group of young people.

Besides the Microsoft-supplied templates, you can also store and use your own templates. Select the PERSONAL heading beneath the Suggested searches line on the New page in Backstage view and then browse to locate the template you want to use from your own template collection.

## ADDING, DELETING, AND ORGANIZING SLIDES

A template's sample slides can provide a basic structure as a starting point, but you will probably want to make some changes. In PowerPoint it is easy to add, delete, and reorder the slides in a presentation to suit your unique needs.

### Adding a New Slide to a Presentation

You can add as many new slides as you want to a presentation. The following exercise shows you how to insert a new slide into the current presentation in two different ways: using the New Slide button on the Ribbon, and using the Slides pane.

**STEP BY STEP****Add a New Slide**

**GET READY.** USE the *New Product Preview Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

**1.** Select **slide 1**. On the Home tab, in the Slides group, select the New Slide **drop-down arrow**. A gallery opens, showing thumbnail images of the slide layouts that are available for this template.

**2.** Scroll down to the bottom of the gallery and then select **Title and Content**.

**Take Note**

To view the New Slide gallery, you must select the New Slide button's drop-down arrow. If you select the face (top) of the New Slide button, PowerPoint will insert the default new slide for the current template.

**3.** On the new slide 2, select the **title placeholder** and type **This Year's New Products**.

**4.** Select the sample text at the top of the second placeholder and then type the following items, placing each item on its own line:

**Women's jackets**

**Men's jackets**

**Boots**

**Backpacks**

**Flannel shirts**

**Fleece**

**Turtlenecks**

**Underwear**

**Socks**

**5.** Select in the area surrounding the slide to clear the placeholder's border. When you are done, your slide should resemble the one shown in Figure 2-7.

**Figure 2-7**

The inserted slide

## THIS YEAR'S NEW PRODUCTS

- Women's jackets
- Men's jackets
- Boots
- Backpacks
- Flannel shirts
- Fleece
- Turtlenecks
- Underwear
- Socks

**6.** Select the **View** tab, and then in the Presentation Views group, select the **Outline View** button to switch to Outline view.

**Take Note**

Some of the slides in the Outline pane show no text in their Title placeholder; that is because this presentation is based on a photo album template.

7. In the Outline pane, click to place the text insertion point after the word *Socks* in slide 2 and then press **Enter**, creating a new paragraph. At this point the new paragraph is a bullet on slide 2.
8. Press **Shift+Tab**. The new paragraph is promoted into a new slide title.
9. Type **Clearance Items** and then press **Enter**. A new slide appears. Because the previous paragraph was a slide title, the new one is too.
10. Press **Tab**. The new paragraph is indented so that it is a bullet on the Clearance Items slide.
11. Type the following items, pressing **Enter** after each one except the last item to place it in its own paragraph:  
**Biking accessories**  
**Camping supplies**  
**Spelunking gear**
12. As the text is typed for the new slide, it appears in both the Outline pane and the Slide pane. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## Duplicating Selected Slides

If you want several similar slides in a presentation, you may be able to save some time by duplicating some of the slides and then modifying the copies. The following exercise shows how to select the slides you want to duplicate, even when they are non-contiguous (not adjacent), and make copies of them. You will also learn how to use the Duplicate Selected Slides command to make duplicates of slides.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Duplicate Non-Contiguous Slides

**GET READY. USE** the **New Product Preview Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the View tab, select the **Slide Sorter** button to change to Slide Sorter view. The presentation's slides appear together in a single pane.

#### Take Note

If you are working on a small screen, you may have to adjust the size of the slides so they all fit on the screen. To change the zoom, select the minus sign button at the left end of the Zoom slider located on the far right side of the status bar in the bottom-right corner of the window.

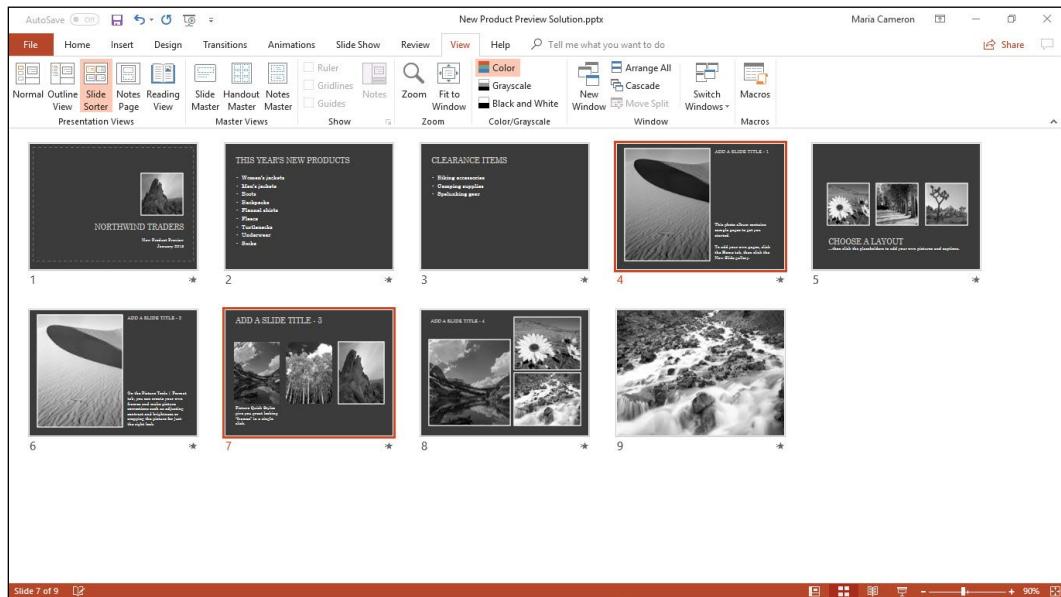
2. Select **slide 4**. An orange outline appears around the slide, indicating that it is selected.
3. Hold down **Ctrl** and select **slide 7**. An orange outline appears around this slide too (Figure 2-8).
4. Select the **Home** tab and then select **Copy**. The two slides are copied to the Clipboard.
5. Select to the right of slide 9. A vertical line appears there.
6. On the Home tab, select **Paste**. The copied slides are pasted after slide 9.
7. Select **slide 2 (This Year's New Products)** to select it.
8. On the Home tab, select the New Slide **drop-down arrow**.
9. Select **Duplicate Selected Slides**. A copy of slide 2 is pasted just after the original slide 2.
10. **SAVE** the **New Product Preview Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

---

**Figure 2-8**

Two slides selected in Slide Sorter view



## Rearranging the Slides in a Presentation

It is important to organize your slides so that they support your message. In PowerPoint, reorganizing slides is a simple drag-and-drop procedure. In Slide Sorter view (or in the Outline pane in Normal view), you can select a slide and drag it to a new location in the presentation. A line shows you where the slide will be placed when you drop it. Moving a slide is a simple procedure, as you will learn in the following exercise.

### STEP BY STEP

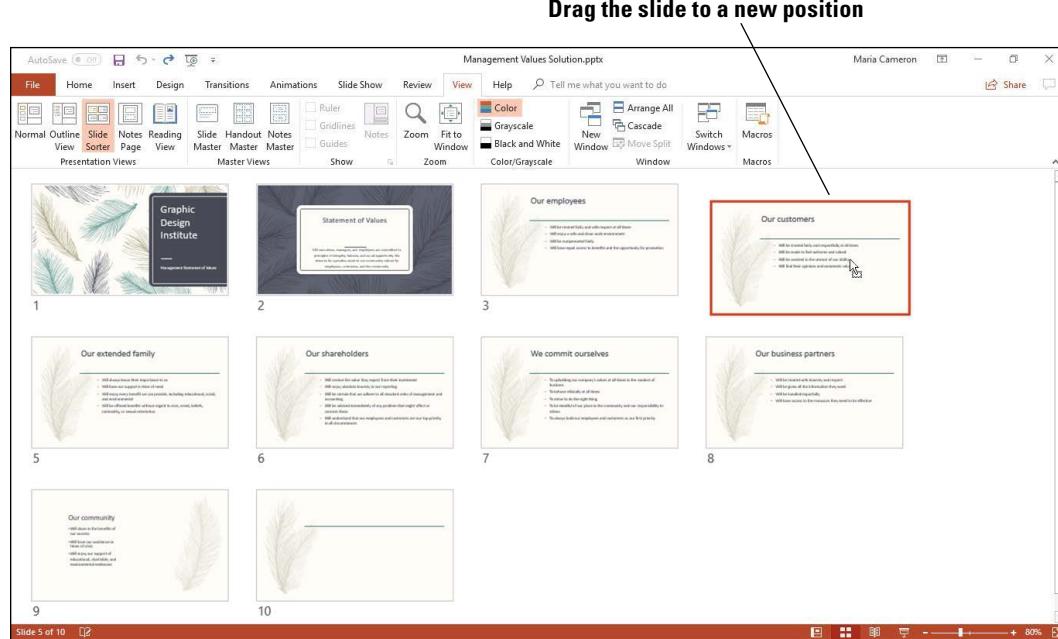
### Rearrange the Slides in a Presentation

**GET READY.** LAUNCH PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **Management Values** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Management Values Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select the **View** tab and then select the **Slide Sorter** button to change to Slide Sorter view. The presentation's slides appear together in a single window.
4. Adjust the Zoom control in the status bar as necessary, so that all the slides fit on one screen.
5. Select **slide 5** (*Our extended family*) and drag it to the left of slide 4 (*Our customers*). The moved slide is now slide 4 (Figure 2-9).

**Figure 2-9**

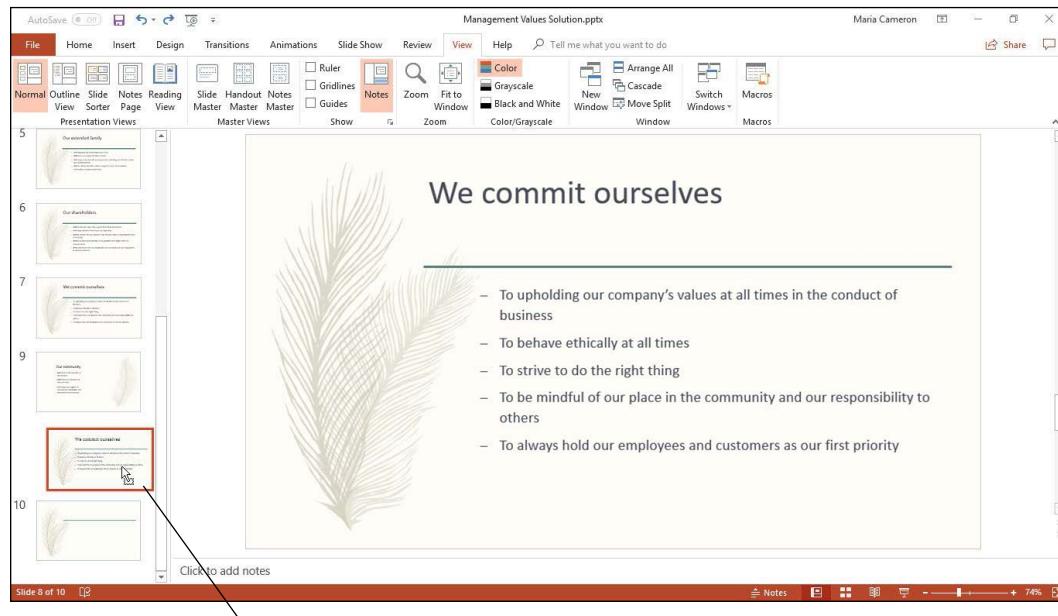
Moving a slide in Slide Sorter view



6. Switch to **Outline** view, and in the Outline pane, select the **slide icon** to the left of slide 7's title (*We commit ourselves*). All the text from slide 7 is selected.
7. Drag slide 7's icon downward. When a horizontal line appears between slides 8 and 9, release the mouse button. The moved slide is now slide 8.
8. Switch to **Normal** view and select **slide 8** (*We commit ourselves*).
9. In the Slides pane, drag slide 8 downward, drop it between slides 9 and 10 (Figure 2-10), and then release the mouse button. The moved slide is now slide 9.

**Figure 2-10**

Moving a slide in the Slides pane in Normal view



**10. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Deleting a Slide

When you do not want to keep a slide in a presentation, you can delete it. The following exercise shows you how.

### STEP BY STEP

### Delete a Slide

**GET READY.** USE the *Management Values Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Switch to **Slide Sorter** view and select **slide 10** (the blank slide).
2. Press the **Delete** key. The slide is removed from the presentation.
3. **SAVE** the *Management Values Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

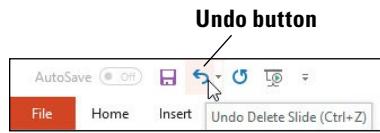
**PAUSE.** LEAVE PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

To select more than one slide at a time for deletion, hold down the Ctrl key and select each slide you want to delete. (If you change your mind, you can deselect the selected slides by selecting in a blank area of the PowerPoint window.) You can then delete all the selected slides at the same time.

PowerPoint does not ask whether you are sure if you want to delete a slide, so it is important to be careful before deleting. If you accidentally delete a slide, select the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar right away to bring the slide back (Figure 2-11).

**Figure 2-11**

Undo an accidental deletion



## CREATING A PRESENTATION FROM EXISTING CONTENT

If the content you want to present already exists in another form, it makes sense to reuse it rather than starting from scratch. PowerPoint imports content easily from a variety of formats, including Word outlines, other PowerPoint presentations, and slide libraries.

### Using Content from Word

Microsoft Word's Outline view enables you to create a well-structured hierarchical outline that consists of multiple heading levels. You can then open such outlines in PowerPoint, where each of the major headings becomes a slide title and each of the minor headings becomes a bullet of body text.

### STEP BY STEP

### Start a Presentation from a Word Outline

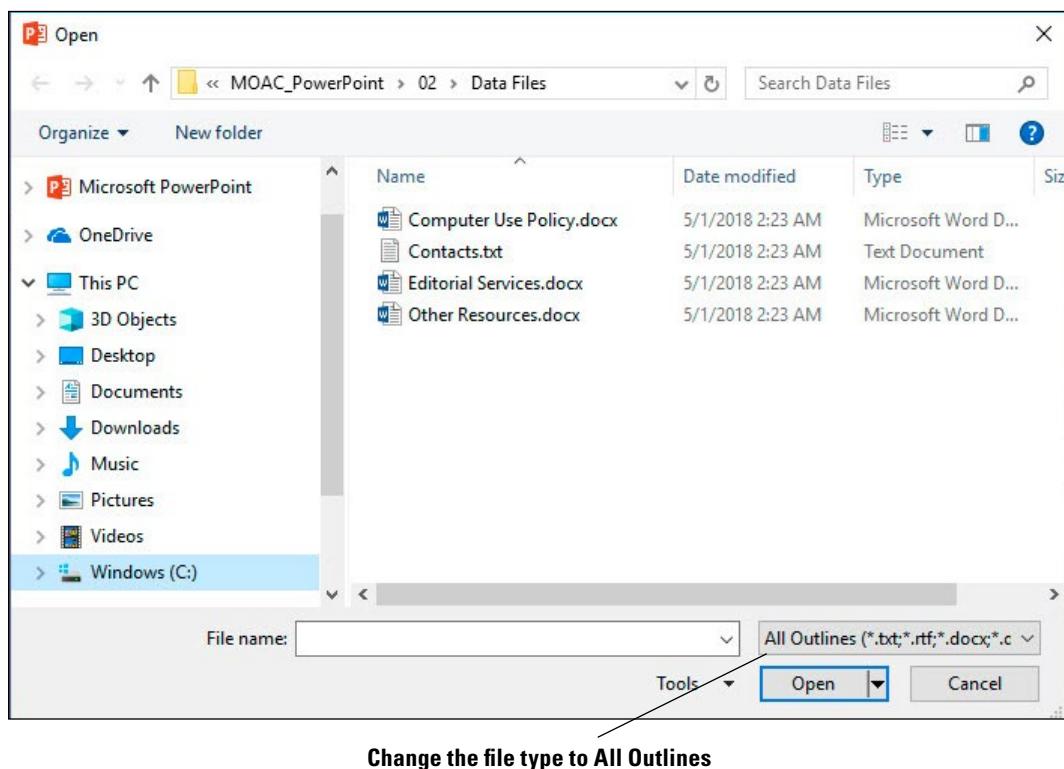
**GET READY.** LAUNCH PowerPoint if it is not already open and **OPEN** a new blank presentation.

1. In PowerPoint, select the **File** tab.
2. Select **Open** to display the Open page in Backstage view.
3. Select **Browse** and navigate to the folder that contains the data files for this lesson.
4. Select the **All PowerPoint Presentations** button to open the File type drop-down list.

5. In the File type list, select **All Outlines**. The file listing in the dialog box changes to show outlines (including Word documents). The file location is the same; the only thing that has changed is the filter that determines which file types are displayed (Figure 2-12).

**Figure 2-12**

Open a Word outline file



Change the file type to All Outlines

6. Select **Computer Use Policy.docx**.
7. Select the **Open** button. The outline opens as a new presentation. Select each of the slides in the presentation to review the content.
8. **SAVE** the presentation as **Computer Use Policy Solution.pptx** in the lesson folder on your flash drive and then **CLOSE** the file.

#### Take Note

Even though you used the Open command and not the New command, PowerPoint still started a new presentation. Prior to step 8, the file name in the title bar of the application was a generic name such as Presentation1, not the name of the original Word document. That's why you have to save the file as a presentation in step 8.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

If you create an outline in Microsoft Word, you can import it into PowerPoint and generate slides from it. Before you can create slides from a Word outline, the outline must be formatted correctly. Paragraphs formatted with Word's Heading 1 style become slide titles. Paragraphs formatted with subheading styles (such as Heading 2 or Heading 3) are converted into bulleted lists in the slides' subtitle placeholders. Any Word document may be opened in PowerPoint and converted to a presentation, but documents that are not structured as outlines may require quite a bit of cleanup in PowerPoint after importing.

## Reusing Slides from Presentations and Libraries

It is easy to reuse a slide from one presentation in another. This technique frees you from creating the same slide from scratch more than once. In addition, some companies store frequently used slides in slide libraries on their file servers, so multiple users can draw from a common pool of existing slides. The following exercise shows you how to locate a slide from a different presentation or from a slide library and insert it into the current presentation.

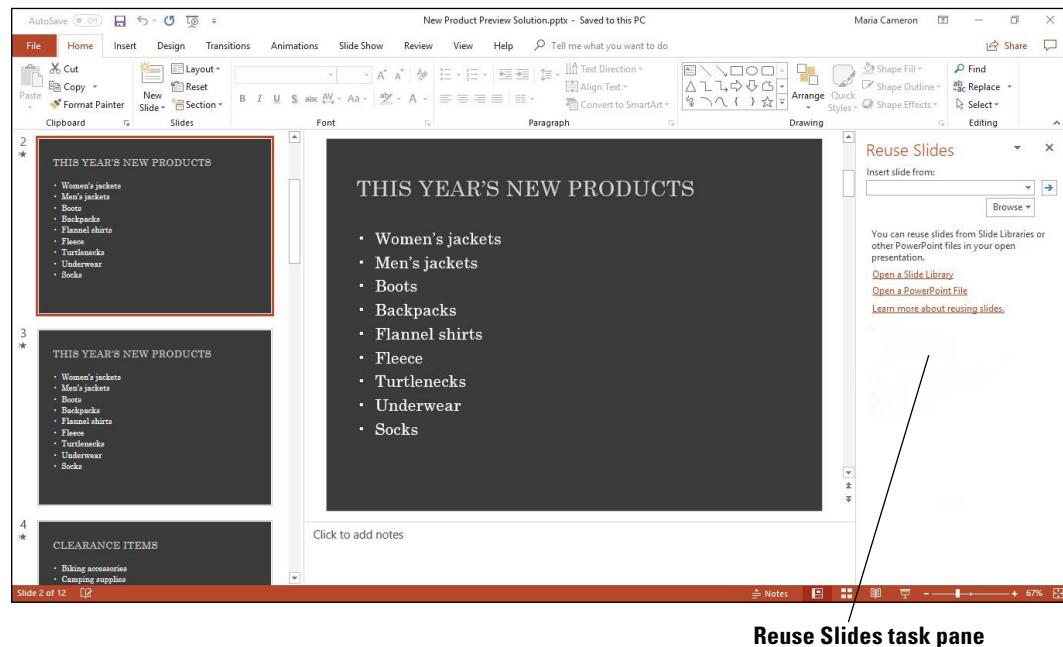
**STEP BY STEP****Reuse a Slide from Another Presentation**

**GET READY. RE-OPEN** the *New Product Preview Solution* presentation that you saved previously in this lesson. Switch to Normal view, if necessary.

1. In the *New Product Preview Solution* presentation, select **slide 2**.
2. On the Home tab, select the New Slide **drop-down arrow**. At the bottom of the gallery, select **Reuse Slides**. The Reuse Slides task pane opens on the right side of the PowerPoint window (Figure 2-13).

**Figure 2-13**

The Reuse Slides task pane provides access to existing content

**Reuse Slides task pane**

3. In the task pane, select the **Browse** button. A menu displays. Select **Browse File**. The Browse dialog box opens.
4. Locate and open **New Jackets** in the folder containing the data files for this lesson. The presentation's slides appear in the task pane.
5. In the Reuse Slides task pane, select **slide 2** (*This Year's New Jackets*) in the **New Jackets** presentation. The slide is inserted into the *New Product Preview Solution* presentation as the new slide 3.
6. Select the **Close** button in the upper-right corner of the task pane.
7. **SAVE** the *New Product Preview Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

Over time, you will probably create many presentations, and some of them may share common information. The Reuse Slides command lets you copy slides from one presentation to another. By copying finished slides in this manner, you can avoid recreating similar slides over and over again.

You can import slides from other presentations, as you just practiced, or you can import them from slide libraries. A **slide library** is a feature on a SharePoint server that enables people to publish presentations with each slide saved as an individual file, so that others can reuse slides on an individual basis without having to think about which presentation they originally came from. Because using a slide library requires access to a SharePoint server that has special software installed on it for slide libraries, this book does not practice using one. However, the steps for selecting a slide from a slide library are very similar to those for selecting a slide from a presentation. Follow the preceding steps, but in step 3, instead of choosing **Browse File**, choose **Browse Slide Library**.

## Importing Text from Other Sources

PowerPoint readily accepts text from almost any Windows application. One way to import text is to use the Clipboard, because nearly all Windows applications support Clipboard use. You can use the Paste Options icon after pasting text to choose how it will be pasted, or use Paste Special to select special pasting methods. In this exercise, you will learn how to paste text from a plain text file and from a Word document into PowerPoint, and you practice using the Paste Special command to maintain the content's original text formatting from the Word document. These same techniques also work on graphics.

### STEP BY STEP

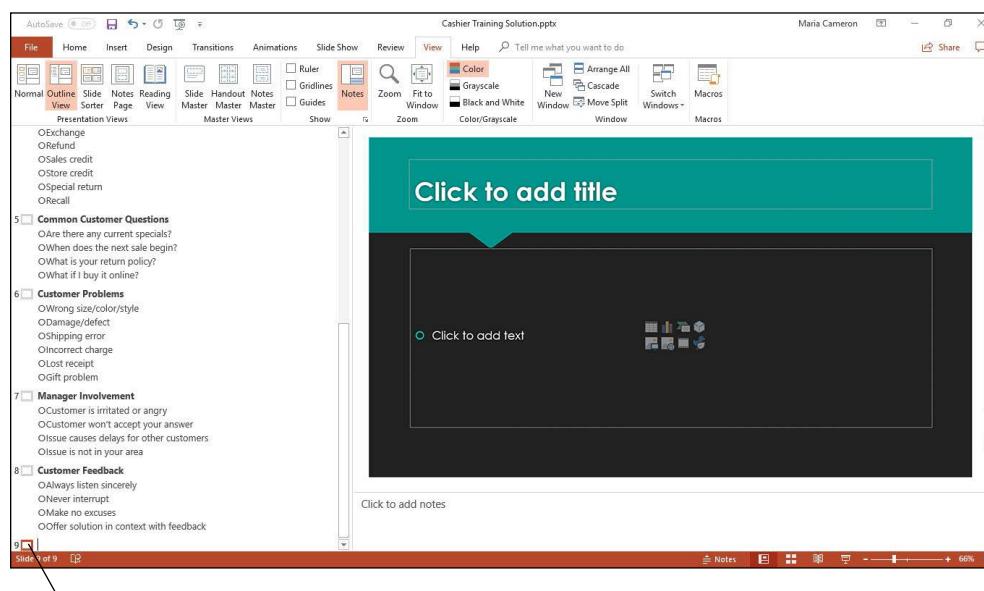
### Import Text into PowerPoint

#### GET READY. LAUNCH PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **LAUNCH** Microsoft Word. **OPEN** the *Other Resources.docx* document from the data files for this lesson.
2. Switch to PowerPoint, and then **OPEN** the *Cashier Training* presentation from the data files for this lesson. **SAVE** the presentation as *Cashier Training Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Switch to **Outline** view and scroll down to the bottom of the presentation in the Outline pane. Select after the last bullet point on the last slide and press **Enter**, creating a new bulleted paragraph.
4. Press **Shift+Tab** to promote the new paragraph to a new slide (Figure 2-14).

**Figure 2-14**

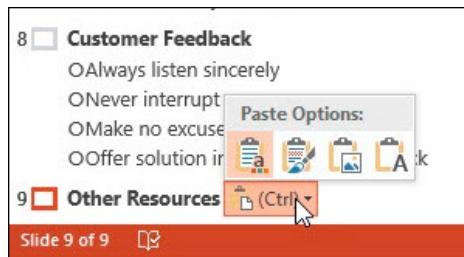
Create a new slide at the end of the presentation to hold the imported content



5. Go to the open *Other Resources* document in Word. Select the heading (*Other Resources*) and press **Ctrl+C** to copy it to the Clipboard.
6. In PowerPoint, if the insertion point is not already on the Outline pane next to the slide 9 icon, select to place it there.
7. Press **Ctrl+V** to paste the text. The text appears as the slide's title, and a Paste Options icon appears beside the text. If the icon is not displayed, move the mouse pointer over slide 9's icon to the left of the pasted text.
8. Select the **Paste Options** icon to open its menu. Its menu contains the Paste Options icons (Figure 2-15).

**Figure 2-15**

Use the icons on the Paste Options menu to specify how pasted content should be displayed



9. Select **Keep Source Formatting** (the second icon from the left). The pasted text's font changes to the font shown in the Word document.
10. In the **Other Resources** document in Word, select the **bulleted list**. Press **Ctrl+C** to copy it to the Clipboard.
11. In PowerPoint, select the **Click to add text placeholder** in the Slide pane to move the insertion point into that text box.
12. Select the **Home** tab and then select the Paste **drop-down arrow**. A menu opens, containing the same types of icons as displayed in step 8, and also containing a Paste Special command.
13. Select **Paste Special**. The Paste Special dialog box opens.
14. Verify that the Paste option button is selected.
15. In the As list, select **Formatted Text (RTF)**.
16. Select **OK**. The text is pasted into the slide, keeping the text's original formatting. Click outside the text placeholder and compare your results with Figure 2-16.

**Figure 2-16**

The completed imported content

- Complete cashier/CSR training program
- Employee handbook: Chapter 4
- Video: "Being Sensitive to Customers"
- Special training: "Working with the Angry Customer" and "Problem-Solving for Unique Customer Issues"

17. Switch to **Normal** view. In the Slides pane, select between slides 8 and 9. A horizontal line appears between them.
18. On the Home tab, select the New Slide **drop-down arrow** and then select **Slides from Outline**.
19. In the Insert Outline dialog box, navigate to the data files for this lesson. Select **Contacts.txt** and then select **Insert**. A new slide appears containing the content from **Contacts.txt**. Select **slide 9** to view the imported text.
20. **SAVE** the **Cashier Training Solution** presentation.
21. **CLOSE** the **Other Resources.docx** Word document without saving.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Take Note**

The text from Contacts.txt imported smoothly because each paragraph after the first one was preceded by a tab stop. PowerPoint understands this to mean that each of those paragraphs should be subordinate to the first paragraph, which forms the slide title. To check this out for yourself, open Contacts.txt in Notepad or another text editor.

## PRINTING A PRESENTATION

PowerPoint gives you many options for printing your slides. In the following exercises, you learn how to preview a presentation before printing it, how to choose a printer, how to set print options, and how to print a presentation in both color, grayscale, and black and white mode.

### Using Print Preview and Changing the Print Layout

PowerPoint's Print Preview feature shows you how your slides will appear on paper before you print them. When you change to a different print layout, Print Preview reflects the change, so you can try different potential layouts for your presentation printouts before committing one to paper. This exercise shows you how to use Print Preview, and how to print different layouts, including speaker notes.

#### STEP BY STEP

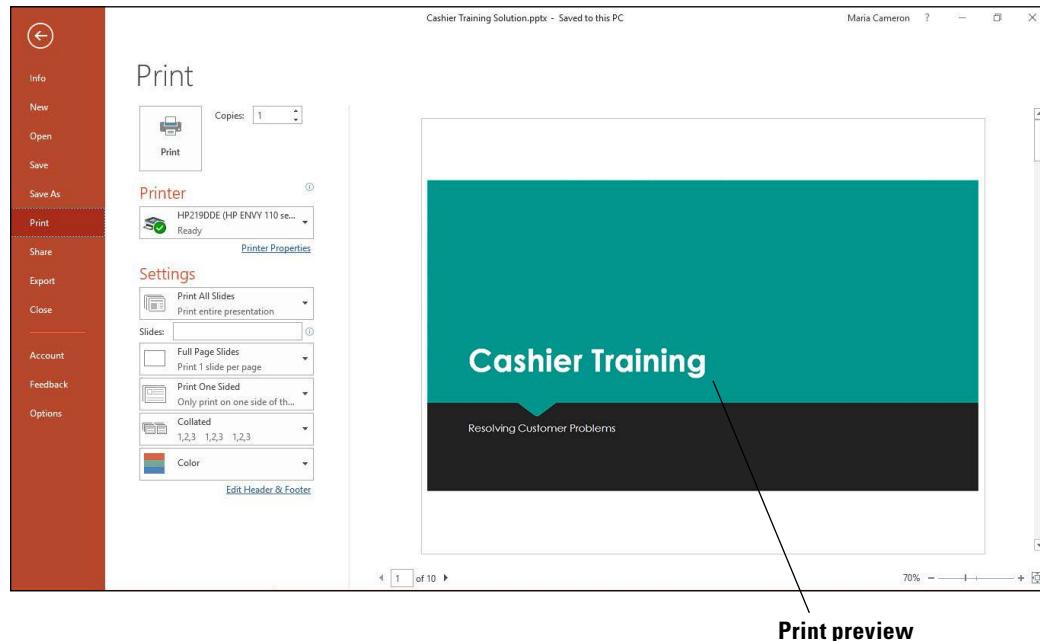
#### Use Print Preview and Change the Print Layout

**GET READY.** USE the *Cashier Training Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Switch to **Normal** view, if necessary. Select **slide 1** (*Cashier Training*).
2. Select the **File** tab and then select **Print**. A preview of the print job appears in the right pane. The default print layout is Full Page Slides (Figure 2-17).

**Figure 2-17**

Print Preview appears to the right of the print options in Backstage view

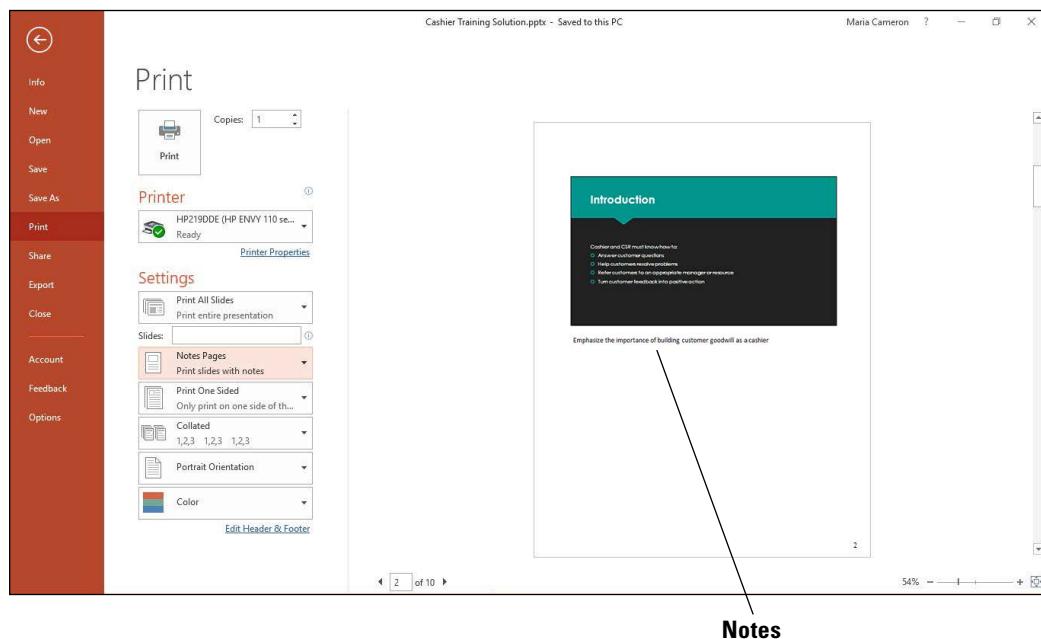
**Take Note**

If the printer selected under the Printer heading prints only in black and white, Print Preview will display your slides in grayscale. The default printer is set within Windows, not within PowerPoint.

3. Select the **Next Page** arrow at the bottom of the window. A preview of slide 2 appears.
4. In the left pane, under the **Settings** heading, select **Full Page Slides** to open a menu of layouts.
5. Select **6 Slides Vertical** under the **Handouts** section on the menu. Print Preview changes to show a page containing six small slides.
6. Select the **6 Slides Vertical** button and then select **Outline**. Print Preview shows the presentation as a text-only outline.
7. Select the **Outline** button and then select **Notes Pages**. Print Preview shows slide 2 with the existing notes in the notes area below the slide (Figure 2-18).

**Figure 2-18**

Notes Pages printouts contain the slide images and any speaker notes you have added



8. Select the **Return to Document** icon (the arrow icon in the upper-left corner of the window) or press **Esc** to leave Backstage view without printing anything.
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**Take Note** To print the Notes pages or any of the other views, you select the printer you want to print to and select Print.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Setting Print Options

In addition to choosing a layout, PowerPoint lets you set a number of other attributes before printing a presentation. The following exercise shows you how to set some of these printing options. One of these options is grayscale mode, in which there are no colors; each color appears as a shade of gray. Grayscale mode is often used for draft copies because it minimizes the use of expensive colored ink or toner. Another option is to print in black and white. (Some fax machines only transmit in black and white.) You can also choose to print only certain slides, and to print multiple copies.

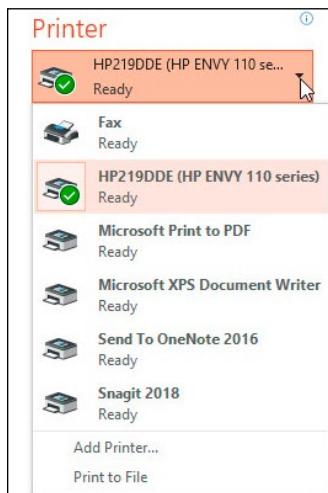
**STEP BY STEP****Set Print Options**

**GET READY. USE** the *Cashier Training Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab and then select **Print**. The printing options and Print Preview appear in Backstage view. The Notes Pages layout is still selected from the previous exercise.
2. In the Copies box at the top of the window, type **2** to print two copies.
3. Under the Printer heading, select the first button. A menu appears of other available printers (if any), as shown in Figure 2-19.

**Figure 2-19**

Other available printers appear on the Printer list



4. Click away from the open menu to close it without making a change.
5. In the Slides: text box (under Print All Slides), type **1-3**. Specifying 1-3 sets only the first three slides to be printed, and Print All Slides changes to Custom Range.
6. Select the **Custom Range** button and note the command at the bottom of its menu: Print Hidden Slides. That option is not currently available because there are no hidden slides in this presentation.
7. Click away from the menu to close it without making a change.
8. Select the **Collated** button to open a menu of collation options. When you are printing multiple copies, you can choose to have the copies collated or not.
9. Click away from the Collated button's menu to close it without making a change.
10. Select the **Color** button to open a menu of color options.

**Take Note**

If a black and white printer is selected, the Color button will appear as a Grayscale button instead.

11. Select **Pure Black and White** from the Color button's menu. Print Preview changes to show how the setting will affect the printouts.
12. If you want to print now, select the **Print** button. Be sure to follow your instructor's guidelines before printing. Otherwise, select the **Return to Document** icon or press **Esc** to leave Backstage view without printing.
13. **SAVE** the *Cashier Training Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

## Knowledge Assessment

### Matching

Match the term in Column 1 to its description in Column 2.

| Column 1     | Column 2   |
|--------------|--|
| 1. Template  | a. A black-and-white printing mode that saves colored ink or toner |
| 2. Handout   | b. A predefined arrangement of placeholders                        |
| 3. Layout    | c. A small picture of a slide                                      |
| 4. Thumbnail | d. A predesigned presentation                                      |
| 5. Grayscale | e. A printed copy of a presentation for audience use               |

### True/False

Circle T if the statement is true or F if the statement is false.

- T   F   1. A new blank presentation appears on your screen when you launch PowerPoint.
- T   F   2. When you save a presentation for the first time, the Save As dialog box appears.
- T   F   3. You can copy and paste content from most Windows applications into PowerPoint.
- T   F   4. PowerPoint can print just the text of your slide without printing any graphics by using the Outline print layout.
- T   F   5. If you use a printer that does not print in color, your slides will appear in grayscale when viewed in Print Preview.

## Projects

### Project 2-1: Creating a New Presentation from a Template

As director of a citywide business alliance, one of your jobs is to introduce the guest speaker at the organization's monthly meeting. To do this, you will create a new presentation from a theme template and then reuse a slide with information about the speaker from a different presentation.

**GET READY.** LAUNCH PowerPoint and OPEN a new blank presentation.

1. Select the **File** tab and then select **New** to display the New page in Backstage view.
2. Scroll if necessary and select the **Ion** template. In the preview window, select the purple sample and then select **Create**.
3. In the *Click to add title* placeholder, type **Citywide Business Alliance**.
4. In the *Click to add subtitle* placeholder, type **Guest Speaker: Jayne Schroeder**.
5. On the Home tab, select the New Slide **drop-down arrow** and then select **Reuse Slides**.
6. In the Reuse Slides task pane, select the **Browse** button and then select **Browse File**.
7. Navigate to the location of the data files for this lesson and OPEN the **Schroeder.pptx** presentation.
8. In the Reuse Slides task pane, select **slide 1**. The slide is added to your new presentation. CLOSE the Reuse Slides task pane.
9. Select the **File** tab and then select **Print**. The Print controls appear in Backstage view.
10. Select the **Color** button, and on the menu that appears, select **Grayscale**.

11. Select the **Full Page Slides** button, and on the menu that appears, select **2 Slides** in the Handouts section.
12. Select **Print** to print the handout in grayscale mode. Only print if instructed by your instructor. Otherwise, select the **Return to Document** icon or press **Esc** to leave Backstage view without printing.
13. Select the **File** tab and select **Save As**. Select **Browse** and navigate to the lesson folder on your flash drive.
14. In the Save as type box, select the **drop-down arrow** and choose **PowerPoint 97-2003 Presentation**.
15. Select the **text in the File name box**, press **Delete**, and then type **Speaker Solution**. Select the **Save** button. The file is saved as **Speaker Solution.ppt**.
16. **CLOSE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

---

### **Project 2-2: Creating a Presentation from an Outline**

You are the editorial director for Lucerne Publishing, a small publishing house that provides editorial services to other businesses. Your sales manager has asked you to prepare a simple presentation that lists the services offered by your editorial staff. You can create this presentation from an outline that was created earlier.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open and **OPEN** a new blank presentation.

1. In the title placeholder, type **Lucerne Publishing**.
2. In the subtitle placeholder, type **Editorial Services** and then click outside the placeholder.
3. On the Home tab, select the New Slide **drop-down arrow** and then select **Slides from Outline**. Locate and select the Microsoft Word document named **Editorial Services** in the data files for this lesson and then select **Insert**.
4. Read each of the imported slides. In the Outline pane, select **slide 6**.
5. On the Home tab, select the New Slide **drop-down arrow** and then select **Reuse Slides**. In the Reuse Slides task pane, locate and open the **About Lucerne** presentation from the data files for this lesson. Insert slide 3 from that presentation to the end of your new presentation.
6. Print one copy of the presentation in a layout that shows nine slides vertically per page (check with your instructor before printing).
7. **SAVE** the presentation as **Editorial Services Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

# Working with Text 3

## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill                              | Exam Objective  | Objective Number                          |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| Formatting Characters              | Apply formatting and styles to text   | 2.1.2                                     |
| Formatting Lists                   | Create bulleted and numbered lists  | 2.1.5                                     |
| Inserting WordArt                  | Apply WordArt styles to text  | 2.1.3                                     |
| Creating and Formatting Text Boxes | Insert text boxes<br>Resize shapes and text boxes<br>Format shapes and text boxes<br>Apply styles to shapes and text boxes<br>Format text in multiple columns | 2.2.2<br>2.2.3<br>2.2.4<br>2.2.5<br>2.1.4 |
| Using Proofing Tools               | Proof a presentation  | 5.2.3                                     |

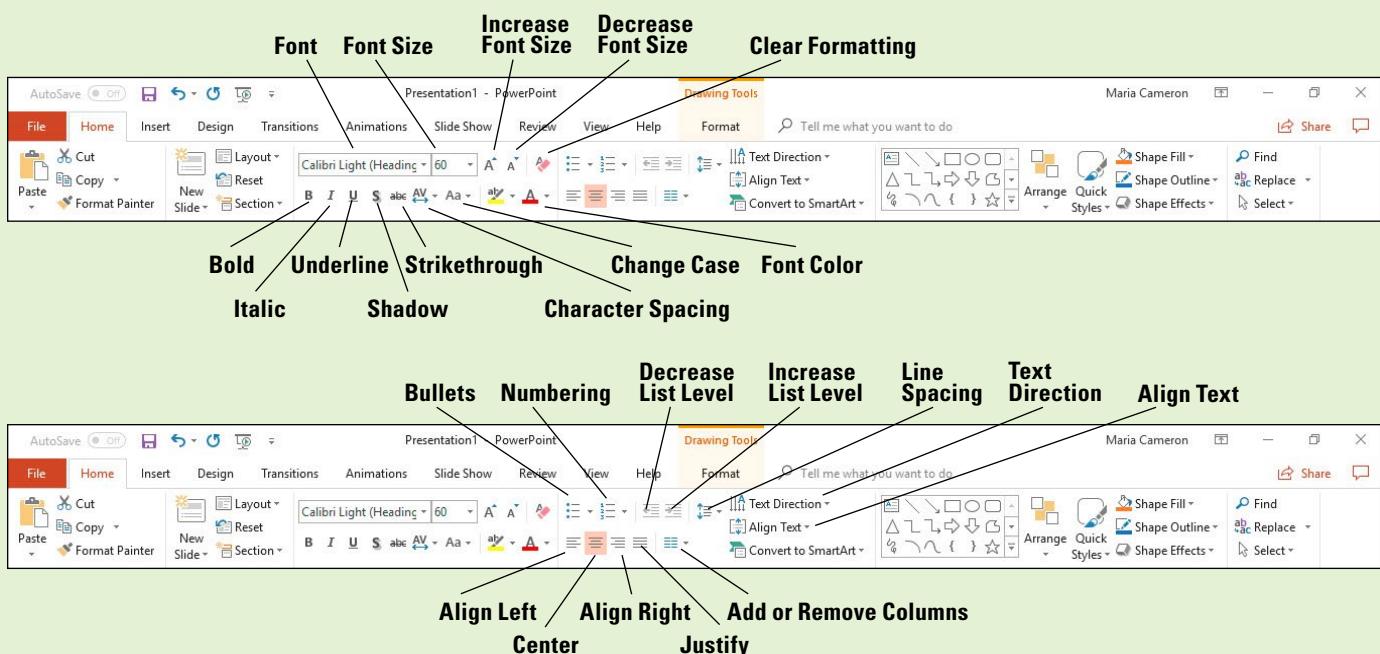
## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### Microsoft PowerPoint Basic Text Formatting Tools

**Figure 3-1**

Basic text formatting tools (Font group and Paragraph group)

Most of the PowerPoint basic text formatting tools are found on the Home tab of the Ribbon (Figure 3-1). These are the tools you will use most often when working with text. There are two groups of text formatting tools on the Ribbon: the Font group and the Paragraph group. They allow you to fine-tune the text on your slides, right down to individual characters. These groups also provide access to the Font and Paragraph dialog boxes, which give you even more control over the appearance of your text.



## FORMATTING CHARACTERS

The term **formatting** refers to the appearance of text or objects on a slide or in a document. Most of PowerPoint's tools are devoted to formatting the various parts of your slides. All PowerPoint presentations are formatted with specific fonts, font sizes, and font attributes such as style and color. You can change the way characters display on a slide by using commands in the Font group on the Home tab or the Mini Toolbar. The Format Painter feature can save you time by allowing you to copy formats from selected text to other text items.

### Choosing Fonts and Font Sizes

**Fonts** (sometimes called *typefaces*) are sets of characters, numbers, and symbols in a specific style or design. You can change the font and font size at any time on your slides. The following exercise shows you how to do this with the Mini Toolbar and with the Ribbon.

#### STEP BY STEP

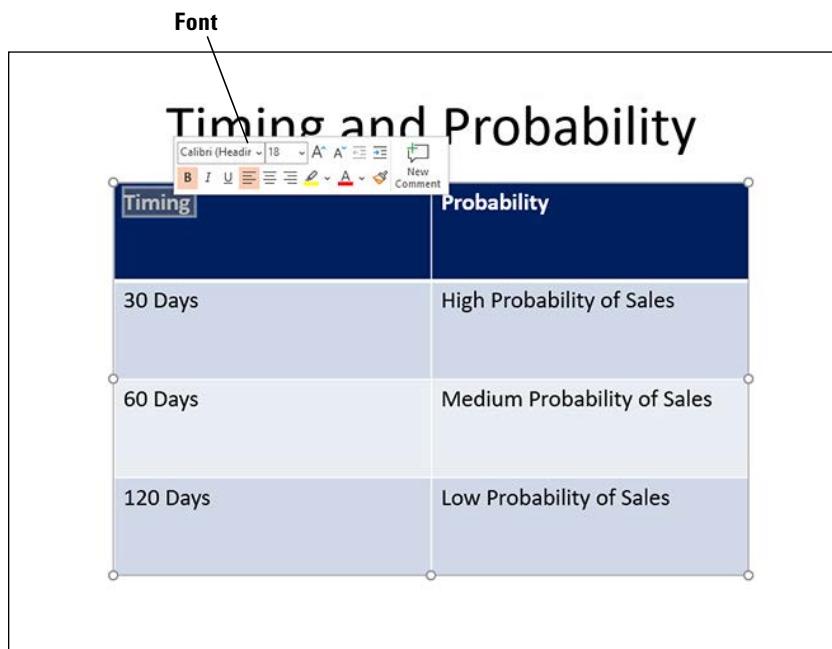
#### Choose Fonts and Font Sizes

GET READY. LAUNCH PowerPoint 2016.

1. OPEN the **Sales Pipeline** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. SAVE the presentation as **Sales Pipeline Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2**. In the first row of the table, double-click **Timing**. The Mini Toolbar appears above the selected text (Figure 3-2).

Figure 3-2

The Mini Toolbar



4. Select the Font **drop-down arrow** on the Mini Toolbar. A list of fonts appears.
5. Scroll down and select **Berlin Sans FB Demi**. PowerPoint applies the chosen font to the selected text.
6. Select the Font Size **drop-down arrow** on the Mini Toolbar. A list of font sizes appears.
7. Select **32**. PowerPoint applies the chosen font size to the selected text.
8. Double-click **Probability** in the top-right cell of the table.
9. On the Home tab of the Ribbon, select the Font **drop-down arrow**. A list of fonts appears.
10. Select the **Berlin Sans FB Demi** font. It is in the Recently Used Fonts section near the top of the list.

11. On the Home tab of the Ribbon, select the Font Size **drop-down arrow**. A list of font sizes appears.
12. Select **32**.
13. Click away from the selected text to deselect it. Your slide should resemble the one shown in Figure 3-3.

**Figure 3-3**

The new font and font size applied to the table headings

| Timing   | Probability                 |
|----------|-----------------------------|
| 30 Days  | High Probability of Sales   |
| 60 Days  | Medium Probability of Sales |
| 120 Days | Low Probability of Sales    |

14. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Take Note**

To maintain formatting consistency between slides in a presentation, you might prefer to change the font and font size on the Slide Master, which distributes the change to all slides automatically.

By default, PowerPoint presentations have two fonts: one font for the headings and one for the body text. (The same font can be used for both.) These font choices are a result of the applied theme. A theme is a set of formatting specifications, including the colors, fonts, graphic effects, and slide layouts available. All presentations have a theme—even blank ones.

To return to the default fonts provided by the theme, select a font from the Theme Fonts section of the Font drop-down list. If you choose anything other than a theme font, as in the preceding exercise, applying a different theme will have no effect on that text, because manually applied fonts take precedence over theme fonts.

### Using AutoFit to Change Text Size

By default, text in the placeholder boxes on a slide layout are set to AutoFit, so that if you type more text into them than will fit, the text automatically gets smaller so it will fit into the placeholder box. If you then delete some of the text so that there is more room available, the text once again enlarges to its default size. You can change the AutoFit setting for a text box or placeholder as needed.

**STEP BY STEP****Change AutoFit Behavior**

**GET READY.** USE the *Sales Pipeline Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

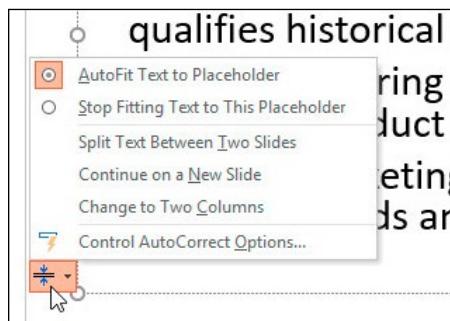
1. Select **slide 3** and then type the following new bullet points at the bottom of the slide:
  - Helps Engineering staff do long-range planning for future product enhancements
  - Provides Marketing staff with critical data about customer needs and preferences

As you begin to type the second bullet point, AutoFit engages, and makes the text in the text box smaller so it will all continue to fit within the placeholder.

2. Select the **AutoFit Options** icon in the lower-left corner of the text box. A menu appears (Figure 3-4).

**Figure 3-4**

Set AutoFit behavior



3. Select **Stop Fitting Text to This Placeholder**. The text returns to its default size and overflows the bottom of the text box.

**Take Note** Notice the other choices in Figure 3-4. You can choose to split text between two slides, continue on a new slide, or change to a two-column layout.

4. Select the **AutoFit Options** icon again and then select **AutoFit Text to Placeholder**.
5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

AutoFit is enabled by default because it is a useful feature that users appreciate in most situations. Rather than finding the maximum font size by trial and error that will allow the text to fit in the allotted space, you can rely on AutoFit to figure that out for you. There are some situations, though, where AutoFit may not be appropriate. For example, you might want the slide titles to always appear in the same size font.

**Take Note** In manually created text boxes, AutoFit is not enabled by default. Instead, the text box itself resizes as needed to hold the text.

## Applying Font Styles and Effects

You can apply font styles such as bold, italics, and underlining to text on a PowerPoint slide. Text can also be formatted with attributes such as strikethrough or shadow effects. In the following exercise, you will apply a font style and an effect to text on a slide, as well as adjust character spacing.

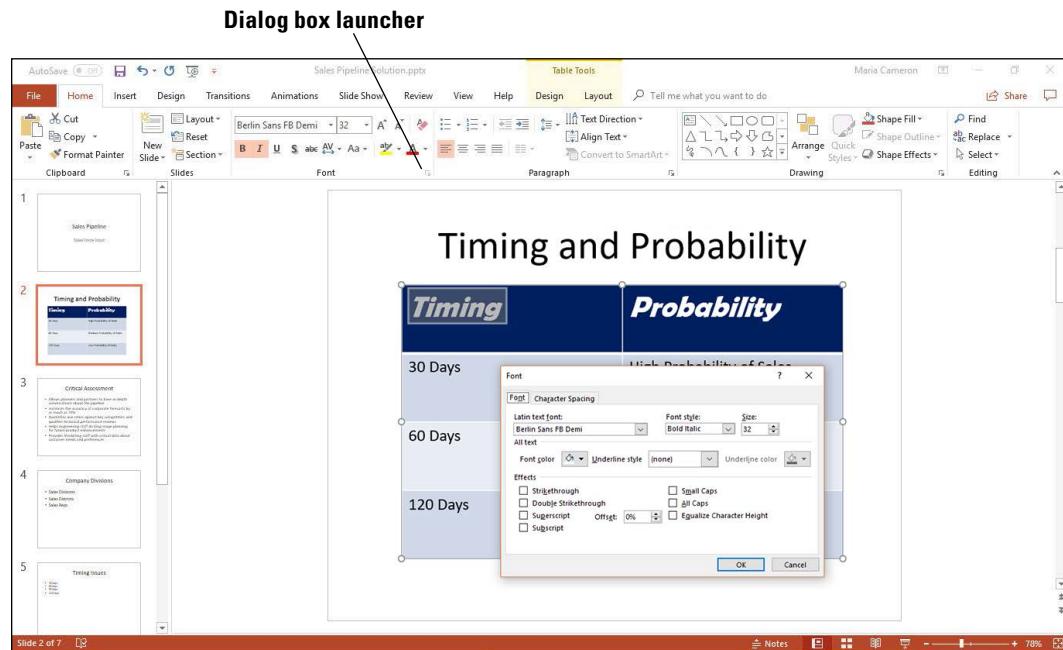
**STEP BY STEP****Apply Font Styles and Effects**

**GET READY.** USE the *Sales Pipeline Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 2** and double-click **Timing** in the top-left cell of the table. The Mini Toolbar appears above the selected text.
2. Select the **Italic** button on the Mini Toolbar. PowerPoint formats the selected text in italic. Notice that boldface is already applied to the text.
3. Double-click **Probability** in the top-right cell of the table and then italicize it using any method.
4. Double-click **Timing** again in the top-left cell of the table and then select the **dialog box launcher** in the **Font** group on the Ribbon (Figure 3-5). The Font dialog box opens.

**Figure 3-5**

Select the dialog box launcher in the Font group



5. In the Font dialog box, on the Font tab, select the **Small Caps** check box.
6. Select the **Character Spacing** tab.
7. Select the Spacing **drop-down arrow** and then select **Expanded** in the list.
8. Select **OK**. PowerPoint places 1 point of spacing between the letters and applies the Small Caps effect.
9. Double-click **Probability** in the top-right cell of the table.
10. On the Quick Access Toolbar, select the **Repeat** button. PowerPoint repeats the last command you issued, applying the new character spacing to the selected text. Click away from the text to deselect it. Your slide should resemble the one shown in Figure 3-6.

**Figure 3-6**

Completed text formatting

| <b>TIMING</b> | <b>PROBABILITY</b>          |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 30 Days       | High Probability of Sales   |
| 60 Days       | Medium Probability of Sales |
| 120 Days      | Low Probability of Sales    |

**11. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Changing Font Color

An easy way to change text appearance is to modify its color. Use the Font Color button in the Font group on the Ribbon to access a palette of colors you can apply to selected text.

#### STEP BY STEP

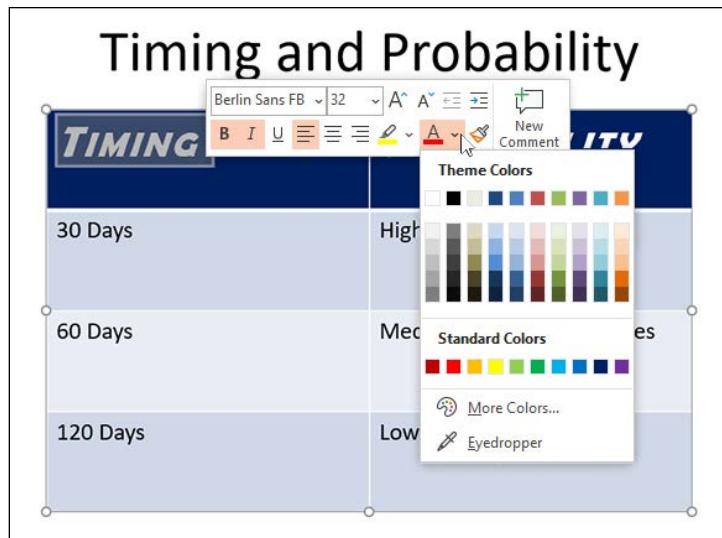
#### Change Font Color

**GET READY. USE** the *Sales Pipeline Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On slide 2, double-click **Timing** in the top-left cell of the table. The Mini Toolbar appears above the selected text.
2. Select the Font Color **drop-down arrow** on the Mini Toolbar. A palette of colors appears (Figure 3-7).

**Figure 3-7**

Choosing a different font color from the Mini Toolbar



3. In the first row of theme colors, choose **Orange, Accent 6**. PowerPoint applies the color to the selected text.

**Take Note** When you point to a color box, the color's name appears in a ScreenTip.

4. Double-click **Probability** in the top-right cell of the table.  
 5. On the Home tab of the Ribbon, select the Font Color **drop-down arrow** and apply the color **Orange, Accent 6** to the selected text. Click away from the selected text to deselect it. Your slide should resemble Figure 3-8 when you are finished.

**Figure 3-8**

Color has been applied to the table headings

| <b>TIMING</b> | <b>PROBABILITY</b>          |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 30 Days       | High Probability of Sales   |
| 60 Days       | Medium Probability of Sales |
| 120 Days      | Low Probability of Sales    |

6. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Copying Character Formats with Format Painter

As you format text in your presentations, you will want to keep similar types of text formatted the same way. **Format Painter** is a tool that copies formatting from one block of text to another. In this exercise, you will use Format Painter to copy some formatting.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Copy Character Formats with Format Painter

**GET READY. USE** the **Sales Pipeline Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

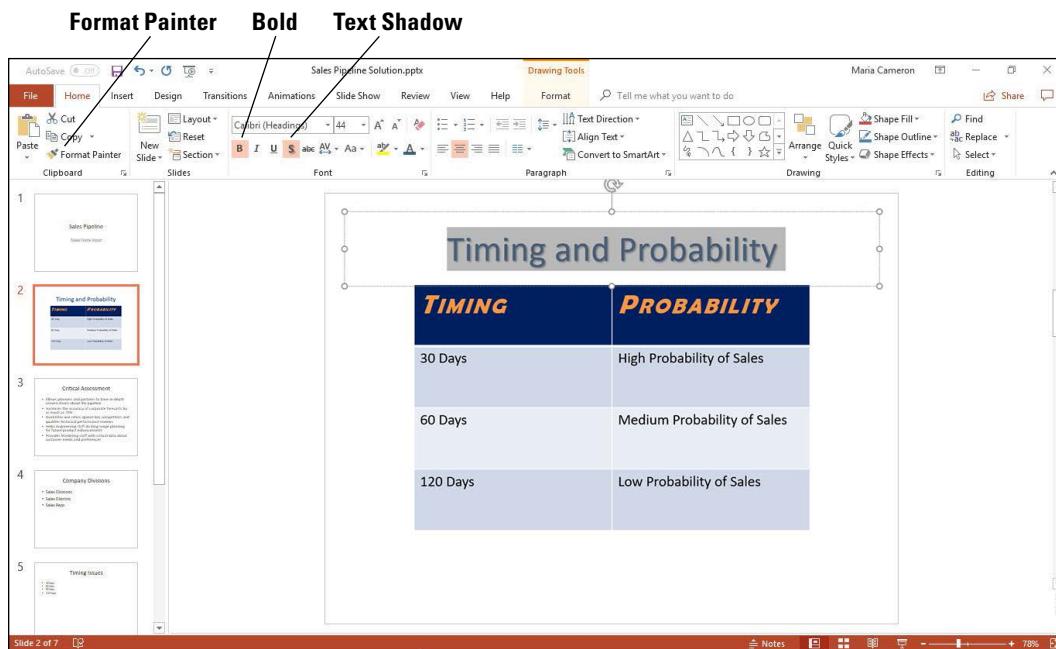
1. On slide 2, select the text in the title placeholder.
2. Change the font color to **Blue, Accent 1, Darker 25%**.

**Take Note** To locate the color requested in step 2, point to the Blue Accent 1 color in the palette (fifth from the left) and then slide the mouse down over the various tints and shades of that color until you find the one for which the ScreenTip shows Darker 25%.

3. Select the **Bold** button in the Ribbon's Font group to apply the bold font style.
4. Select the **Text Shadow** button in the Font group to apply the shadow font style (Figure 3-9).

**Figure 3-9**

Format the title text



5. With the text still selected, choose **Format Painter** button in the Clipboard group.
6. Select **slide 3** and then select the word **Assessment**. The formatting is painted onto that word.
7. Select the **Format Painter** button again to copy the formatting that is now applied to **Assessment**.
8. Drag across the word **Critical**, releasing the mouse button when the word is selected. The formatting is painted onto that word.
9. Double-click the **Format Painter** button. Double-clicking it makes the feature stay on until you turn it off.
10. Select each of the remaining slides in the presentation, and drag across all the text in the title of each slide, including the title on the first slide (Sales Pipeline). Format Painter applies the new formatting to the text.

**Take Note**

If you accidentally select anywhere that does not contain editable text, the Format Painter feature turns off. If that happens, select some of the already formatted text and then select (or double-click) the Format Painter button to turn the feature back on.

11. When you are finished painting each slide title, press **Esc** or select the **Format Painter** button again to turn the feature off.
12. **SAVE** the **Sales Pipeline Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

Format Painter makes it easy to apply the same formatting to multiple blocks of text no matter where they are in the presentation. If you want to copy a format only once, simply select the button. To copy a format multiple times, double-click the button, and the feature will stay on until you turn it off. Not only does this tool reduce your workload, but it also ensures consistency through-out a presentation.

The Format Painter feature can copy not only character formats but paragraph formats such as alignments and line spacing. You will learn about paragraph formats in the next section.

## FORMATTING LISTS

Lists make the information on slides easy to read and remember. PowerPoint provides for several levels of bulleted lists that you can modify for special effects. You can also create numbered lists when your slide text implies a specific order.

### Creating Numbered Lists

PowerPoint enables you to create **numbered lists** to place a list of itemized information in numeric order. Numbered lists are used for procedural steps, action items, and other information where the order in which the items appear is significant. In the following exercise, you will create a numbered list from a list of items on a slide.

#### STEP BY STEP

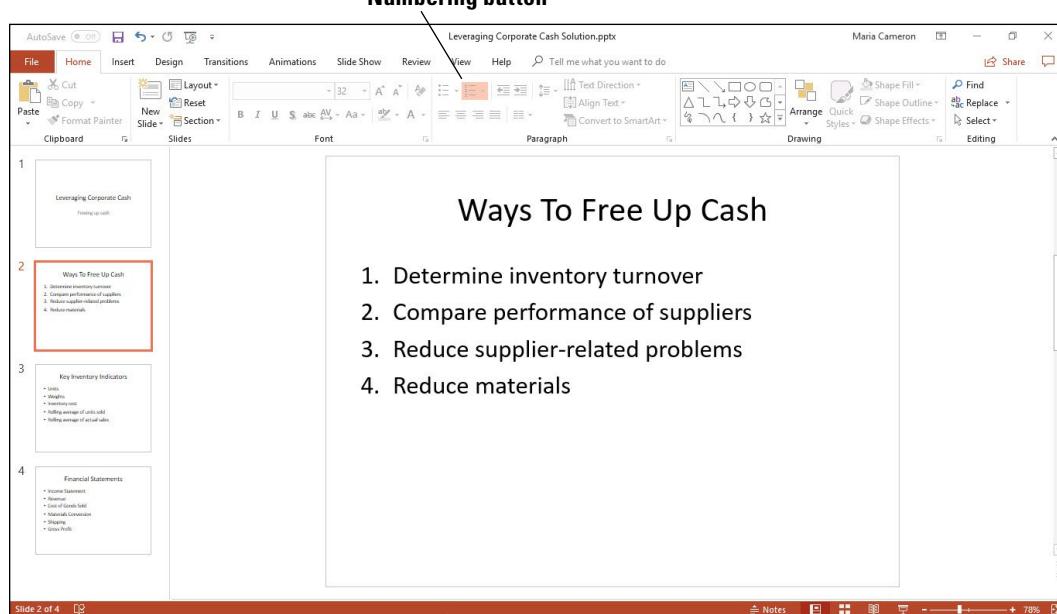
#### Create Numbered Lists

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the *Leveraging Corporate Cash* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Leveraging Corporate Cash Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2** and then select in the first line of the text in the text placeholder (*Determine inventory turnover*).
4. Select the **Numbering** button in the Paragraph group. PowerPoint formats the line with a number 1.
5. Select the last three lines in the text placeholder.
6. Select the **Numbering** button. PowerPoint applies numbers 2 through 4.
7. Click outside the text placeholder to clear any text selection. Your slide should resemble the one shown in Figure 3-10.

**Figure 3-10**

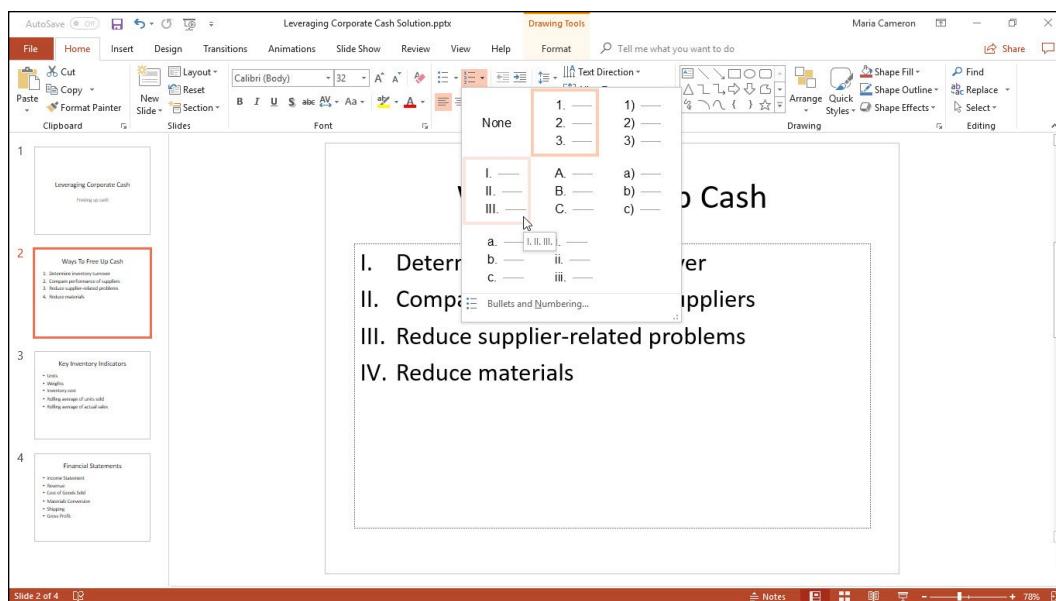
A numbered list



8. Select in the text placeholder containing the numbered list and then press **Ctrl+A** to select the entire list.
9. Select the Numbering **drop-down arrow** (to the right of the Numbering button) to open a gallery of numbering styles.
10. Select the uppercase Roman numeral style as shown in Figure 3-11.

**Figure 3-11**

Changing the numbered list's numbering style



### 11. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

When you finish typing text in a numbered paragraph, you can press Enter to start a new numbered paragraph that continues the same numbering sequence. PowerPoint automatically numbers the new paragraph with the next number in the sequence of numbers so you can continue the list uninterrupted. To turn off numbering, press Enter twice or select the Numbering button on the Home tab.

## Working with Bulleted Lists

Bullets are small dots, arrows, circles, diamonds, or other graphics that appear before a short phrase or word. A **bulleted list** is a set of paragraphs (two or more) that each start with a bullet symbol. Bulleted lists are the most popular way to present items on PowerPoint slides. In fact, most of PowerPoint's text placeholders automatically format text as a bulleted list. In this exercise, you will change the formatting for a bulleted list.

### STEP BY STEP

### Work with Bulleted Lists

**GET READY. USE** the **Leveraging Corporate Cash Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and select all of the bulleted list items in the text box. To do this, you can either drag across them or select inside the list and press **Ctrl+A**.
2. Select the Bullets **drop-down arrow** in the Paragraph group. PowerPoint displays a gallery of bullet styles.

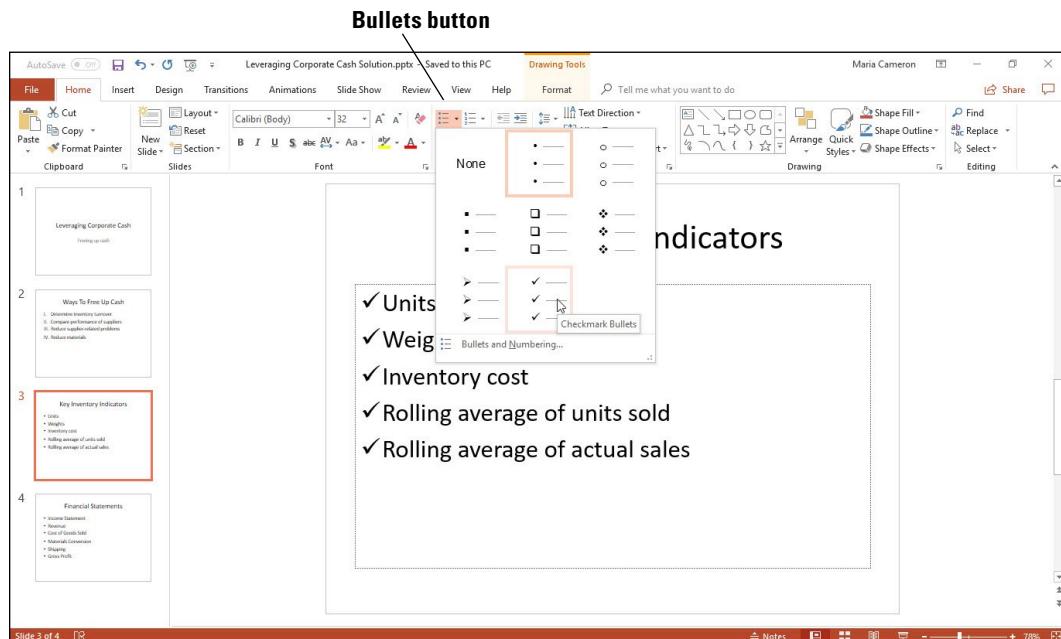
#### Take Note

If a series of paragraphs does not have bullets, you can add them by selecting the paragraphs and then selecting the Bullets button in the Paragraph group.

3. Select **Checkmark Bullets** (Figure 3-12). PowerPoint applies the bullet style to the selected paragraphs.

**Figure 3-12**

Select a different bullet character



4. With the text still selected, press the Bullets **drop-down arrow** again and then select **Bullets and Numbering**. The Bullets and Numbering dialog box appears.
5. In the Size box, type **80**. This reduces the bullets' size to 80% of the text size.
6. Select the **Color** button and then select **Blue, Accent 1**. (It is the fifth color from the left in the first row.) This changes the color of the bullets.
7. Select **OK**. PowerPoint applies the changes.
8. **SAVE** the **Leveraging Corporate Cash Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

### Take Note

If you point to a certain bullet style on the list, the selected text on the slide is previewed using that bullet character. This is an example of the Live Preview feature, which also works with various other types of formatting too, including borders and fills.

Each PowerPoint theme supplies bullet characters for up to nine levels of bullets, and these characters differ according to theme. When you create a bulleted list on your slide, you can continue it automatically after the last item by pressing Enter. PowerPoint automatically adds the new paragraph with a bullet. To turn off the feature, press Enter twice or select the Bullets button on the Home tab.

## INSERTING WORDART

The **WordArt** feature allows you to use text to create a graphic object. PowerPoint's WordArt feature can change standard text into flashy, eye-catching graphics.

### Inserting a WordArt Graphic

In this exercise, you will enhance the appearance of slide titles by converting them to WordArt.

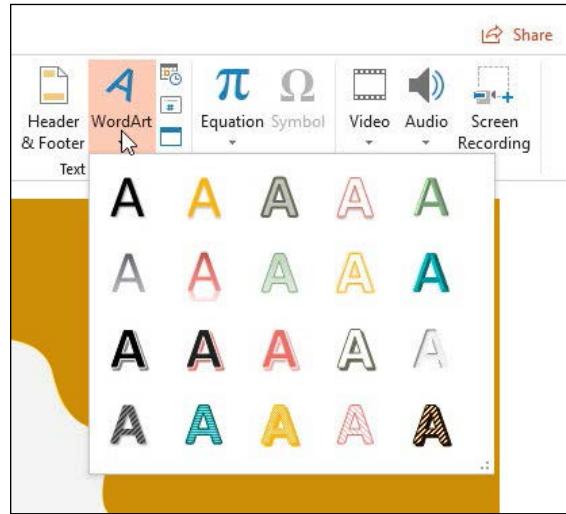
**STEP BY STEP****Insert a WordArt Graphic**

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the *Full Profit* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Full Profit Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive. Notice that the first slide has a subtitle but no title placeholder.
3. Select the **Insert** tab on the Ribbon, and then in the **Text** group, select the **WordArt** button to display a gallery of WordArt styles (Figure 3-13).

**Figure 3-13**

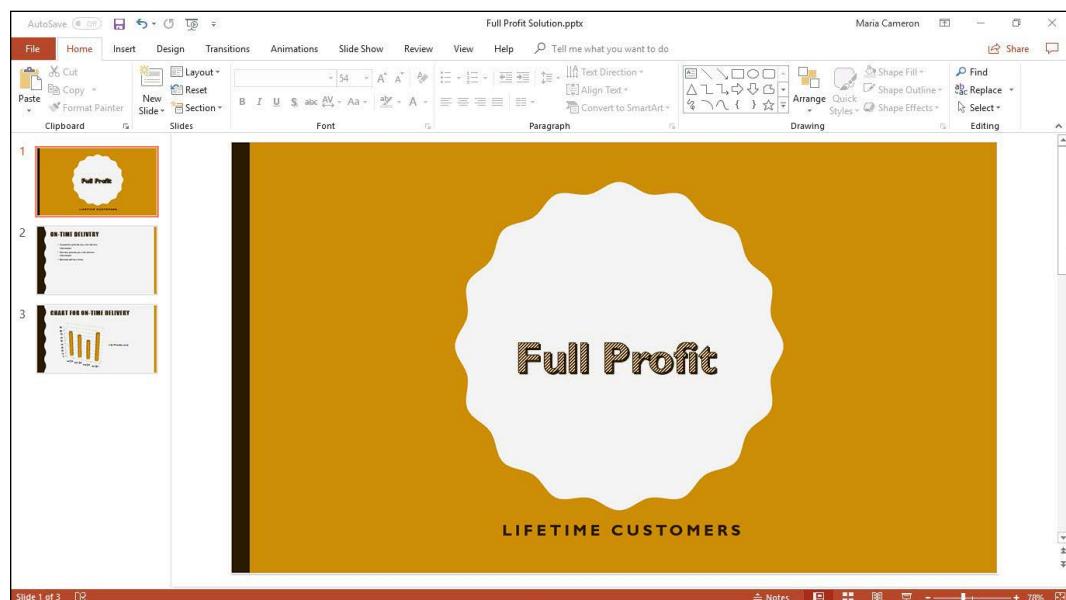
Gallery of WordArt styles



4. Select the **Pattern Fill: Brown, Dark Upward Diagonal Stripe; Hard Shadow** WordArt style (in the lower-right corner of the gallery). PowerPoint displays the WordArt graphic with the sample text *Your text here*.
5. Type **Full Profit** to replace the sample text. Click outside of the graphic. Your slide should resemble Figure 3-14.

**Figure 3-14**

A new WordArt graphic on a slide



6. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

After you have inserted the WordArt graphic, you can format it in a number of ways. You can change the style from the WordArt gallery, you can modify the fill or the outline, or you can apply a number of interesting special effects. You can also modify the text of the graphic at any time. Select the graphic to open the placeholder, similar to when editing a slide's title or body text, and then edit the text as desired.

## Formatting Text with WordArt Styles

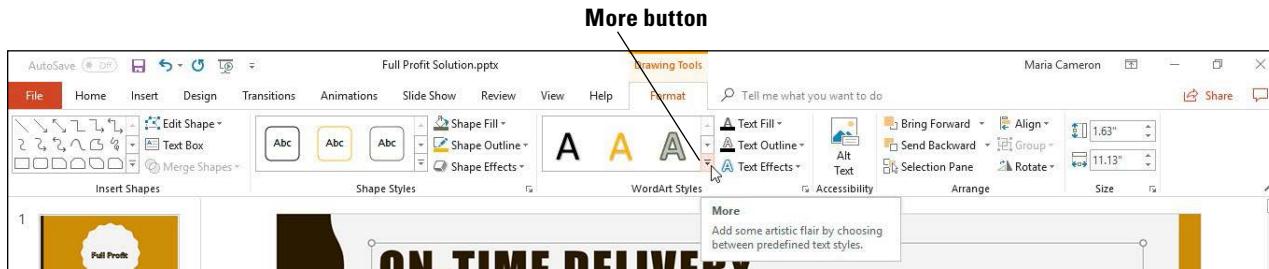
You do not have to insert a WordArt graphic to use the WordArt styles. You can apply WordArt styles to any existing text on a slide. Applying WordArt styles to regular text in a presentation is an additional way to format the text to customize the presentation. You can use the same features you use to format the WordArt graphic to format a title or bulleted text: Text Fill, Text Outline, and Text Effects. In this exercise, you will practice applying WordArt styles to text.

### STEP BY STEP

### Format Text with WordArt Styles

**GET READY.** USE the *Full Profit Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 2**.
2. Select the slide title **On-Time Delivery**.
3. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab and then select the **More** button in the WordArt Styles group (Figure 3-15) to display the WordArt Styles gallery.



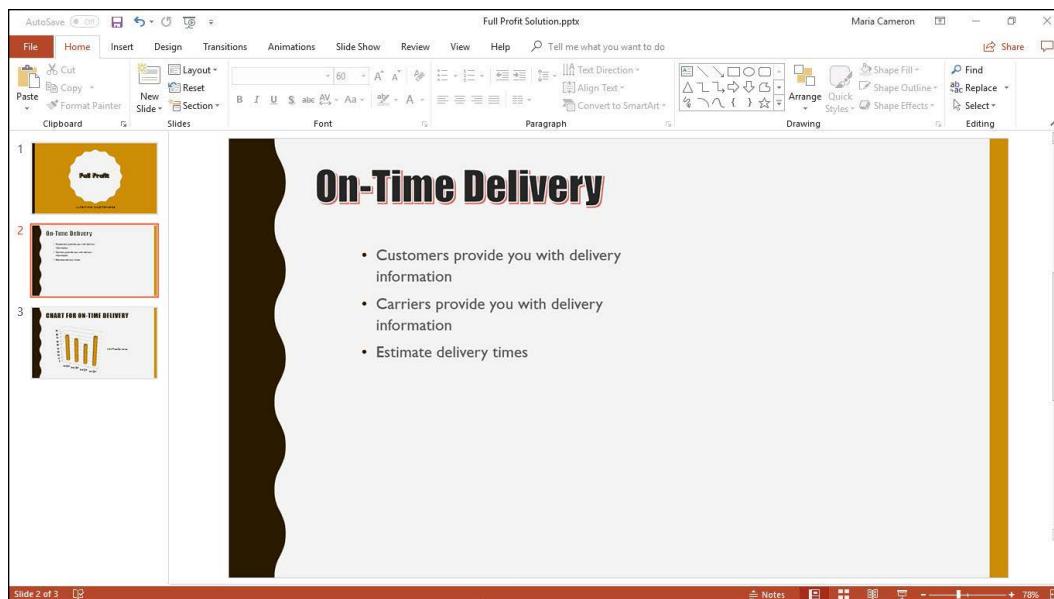
**Figure 3-15**

The More button opens the WordArt Styles gallery

4. Select the **Fill: Black, Text color 1; Outline: White, Background color 1; Hard Shadow: Red, Accent color 5** WordArt style. The style is applied to the selected text.
5. Select the **Home** tab, and then in the Font group, select the Font Size **drop-down arrow** and select **60**.
6. Click outside the text placeholder. The formatted title should resemble the one shown in Figure 3-16.

**Figure 3-16**

The title with WordArt applied



**7. SAVE** the **Full Profit Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

## CREATING AND FORMATTING TEXT BOXES

Although PowerPoint layouts are very flexible and provide a number of ways to insert text, you may occasionally need to insert text in a location for which there is no default placeholder. **Text boxes** are the answer in this circumstance. A text box is a free-floating box into which you can type text. You can use text boxes as containers for extra text that is not part of a placeholder. A text box can hold a few words, an entire paragraph of text, or even several paragraphs of text. Text boxes make it easy to position content anywhere on a slide.

### Adding a Text Box to a Slide

You can use text boxes to place text on a slide any place you want it. In this exercise, you will add a text box to a slide and then type text into the text box.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Add a Text Box to a Slide

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **Profit Analysis** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Profit Analysis Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. If the rulers do not appear onscreen, select the **View** tab and then select the **Ruler** check box so that rulers appear above and to the left of the slide.
4. Select **slide 1**.
5. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the **Text** group, select **Text Box**. The cursor changes to a text insertion pointer.
6. Move the pointer to the right side of the slide, below the red dot and at the 3.25" mark on the horizontal ruler.
7. Click and hold down the mouse button. Drag the mouse down and to the right to create a rectangle that is about 3" wide. Use the horizontal ruler to gauge the size.

**Take Note** The height you draw the text box does not matter because the height automatically adjusts to fit the content. When blank, the text box is one-line high. It expands as you type more lines.

**8.** Release the mouse button. The rectangle changes to a text box.

**Take Note** When you release the mouse button after creating a text box, the Ribbon automatically displays the Home tab.

**9.** Type **Fourth Coffee** in the text box.

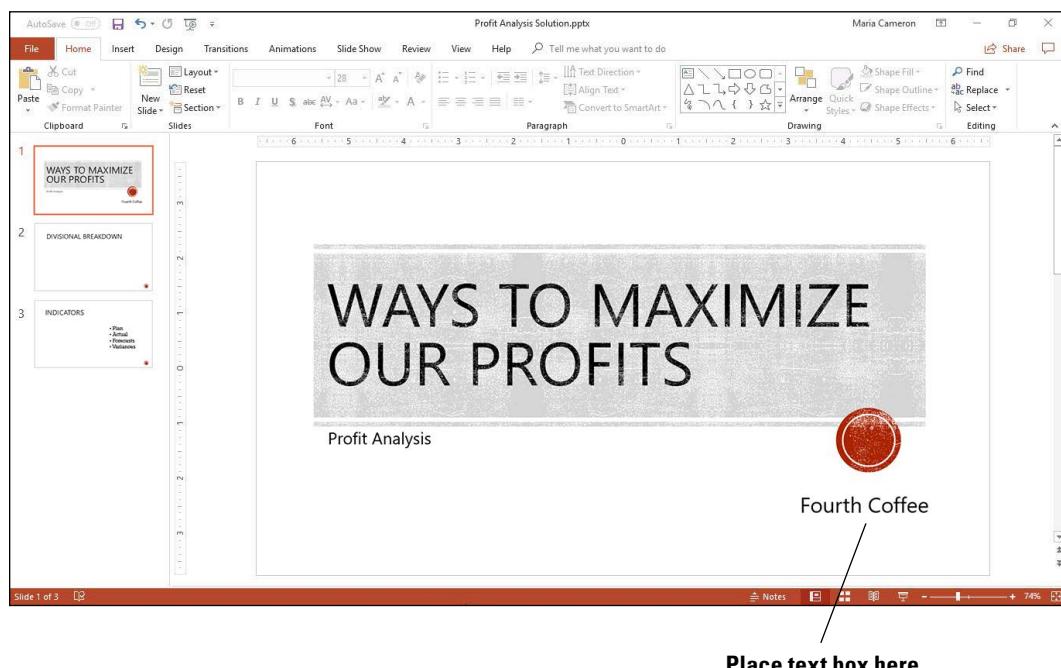
**10.** Select the text **Fourth Coffee** and then change the Font Size to **28** using the Mini Toolbar or the Font Size list on the Home tab.

**11.** Drag the text box to center the text below the red dot as much as possible.

**12.** Click outside the text box to clear its border. Your slide should resemble the one shown in Figure 3-17.

**Figure 3-17**

Inserting a text box



**13.** Select **slide 2**, select the **Text Box** button on the Insert tab, and drag to draw a new text box under the Divisional Breakdown heading, approximately 6" in width. Use the red guidelines to align the text box with the left of the heading.

**14.** Select in the text box and type the following items, placing each item on its own line:

**Sales**

**Marketing**

**Purchasing**

**Production**

**Distribution**

**Custom Service**

**Human Resources**

**Product Development**

**Information Technology**

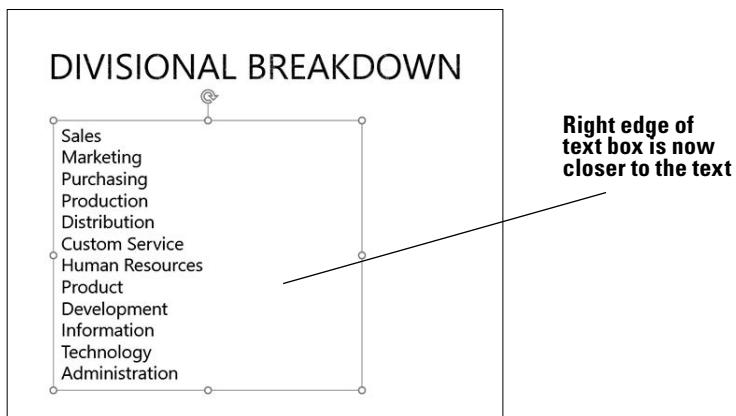
**Administration**

**15.** Position your mouse pointer over the center, right handle on the text box frame. Select and the pointer becomes a plus sign.

**16.** Resize the box so the border is closer to the text (Figure 3-18).

**Figure 3-18**

The resized text box



**17. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

You have two options when creating a text box. If you simply select the slide with the text box pointer, you create a text box in which text will not wrap. As you enter text, the text box expands horizontally to accommodate the text. If you want to create a text box that will contain the text in a specific area, with text wrapping from line to line, you draw a desired width with the text box pointer as you did in the preceding exercise. When text reaches that border, it wraps to the next line.

**Take Note** You can change a text box's wrap setting. Right-click its border and then select Format Shape. In the Format Shape task pane, select Shape Options, select the Size & Properties icon, and under the Text Box settings, mark or clear the Wrap Text in Shape check box.

### Formatting a Text Box

You can apply many different types of formatting to text boxes to make them more eye-catching and graphical. You can apply a Quick Style, add a border, or apply a solid, gradient, texture, or pattern fill to its background.

### Applying a Quick Style to a Text Box

PowerPoint's **Quick Styles** allow you to quickly format any text box or placeholder with a combination of fill, border, and effect formats to make the object stand out on the slide. In this exercise, you will apply a Quick Style to a text box. PowerPoint also provides Quick Styles for other features such as tables, SmartArt graphics, charts, and pictures.

#### STEP BY STEP

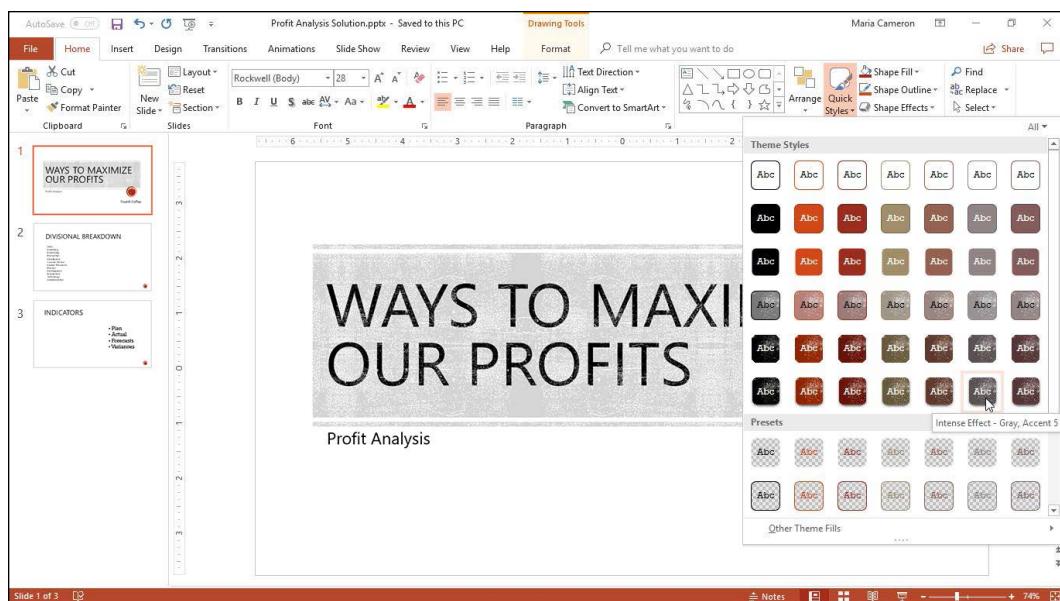
#### Apply a Quick Style to a Text Box

**GET READY. USE** the **Profit Analysis Solution** that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 1**.
2. Select the **Fourth Coffee** text box to select it.
3. On the Home tab, in the Drawing group, select the **Quick Styles** button to display a gallery of Quick Styles.
4. Under Theme Styles, select the **Intense Effect – Gray, Accent 5** Quick Style, the next-to-last style in the last row (Figure 3-19). The Quick Style formatting is applied to the text box.

**Figure 3-19**

Apply a Quick Style to a text box



### 5. SAVE the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

There are several advantages to using Quick Styles to format an object. Each Quick Style provides a number of formatting options that would take more time to apply separately. Quick Styles give a professional appearance to slides. Using Quick Styles can also make it easy to format consistently throughout a presentation.

## Applying Fill and Border Formatting to a Text Box

If you want more control over formatting applied to a text box, you can use the Shape Fill and Shape Outline tools to set the formatting for a text box on your own. In this exercise, you will apply fill and border formatting to a text box.

### STEP BY STEP

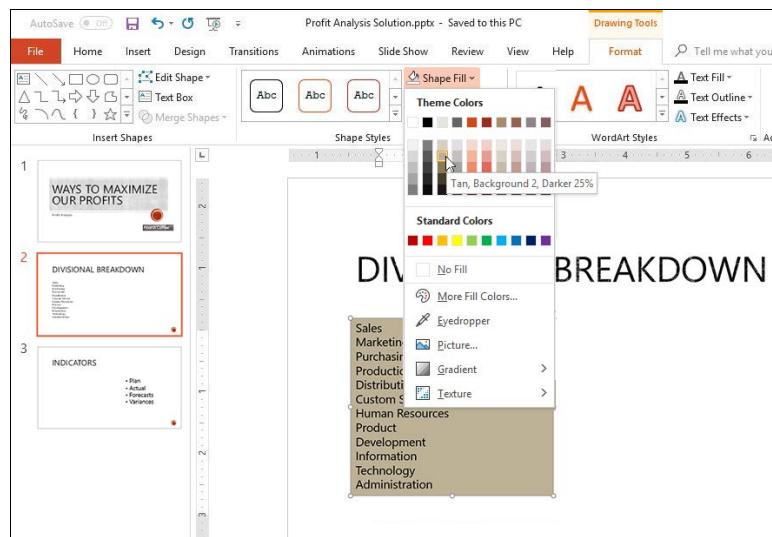
#### Apply Fill and Border Formatting to a Text Box

**GET READY. USE** the *Profit Analysis Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 2**.
2. Select inside the text box list. PowerPoint displays the text box border and sizing handles.
3. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, and then in the Shape Styles group, select the **Shape Fill** button. The Theme Colors palette for the text box fill color appears.
4. Select the **Tan, Background 2, Darker 25%** theme color. PowerPoint formats the text box fill with this color (Figure 3-20).

**Figure 3-20**

Select a shape fill



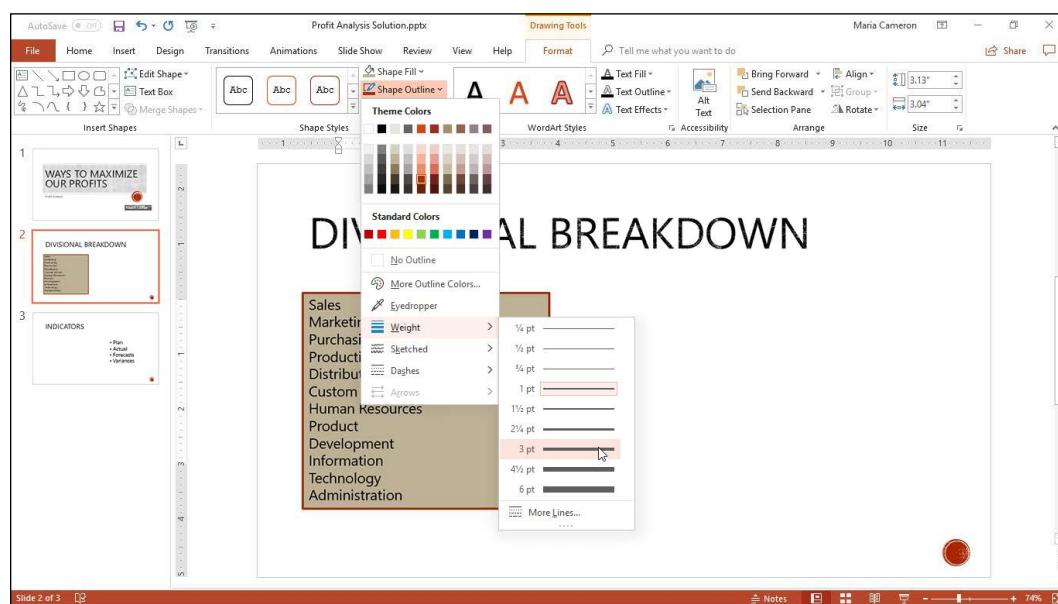
5. Select the **Shape Outline** button. The Theme Colors palette for the text box border color appears.
6. Select the **Orange, Accent 1, Darker 25%** theme color. PowerPoint formats the text box border with this color.
7. Select the **Shape Outline** button again.
8. Point to **Weight**. A menu with line weights appears.
9. Select **3 pt** (Figure 3-21). PowerPoint resizes the text box border to a 3-point border size.

#### Take Note

You can change the style of a text box's outline from solid to dashed or dotted by selecting the Dashes option from the Shape Outline menu.

**Figure 3-21**

Applying a 3-point shape outline



10. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Applying Special Fills to a Text Box

You are not limited to plain, solid colors for text box fills. You can fill using gradients, patterns, textures, and pictures to create interesting special effects. In this exercise, you will insert a picture and apply a gradient color to a text box.

### STEP BY STEP

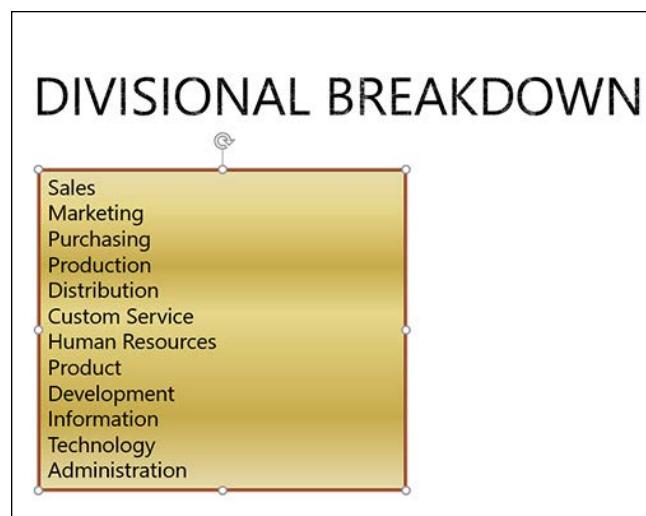
### Apply Picture and Gradient Fills to a Text Box

GET READY. USE the *Profit Analysis Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On slide 2, select the text box containing the list of divisions.
2. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, select the **Shape Fill** button, and then select **Picture**. The Insert Pictures dialog box opens.
3. Select the **From a File** button. Then navigate to the location of the data files for this lesson and select **Golden.jpg**.
4. Select **Insert**. The dialog box closes and the picture is inserted as a background in the text box (Figure 3-22).

**Figure 3-22**

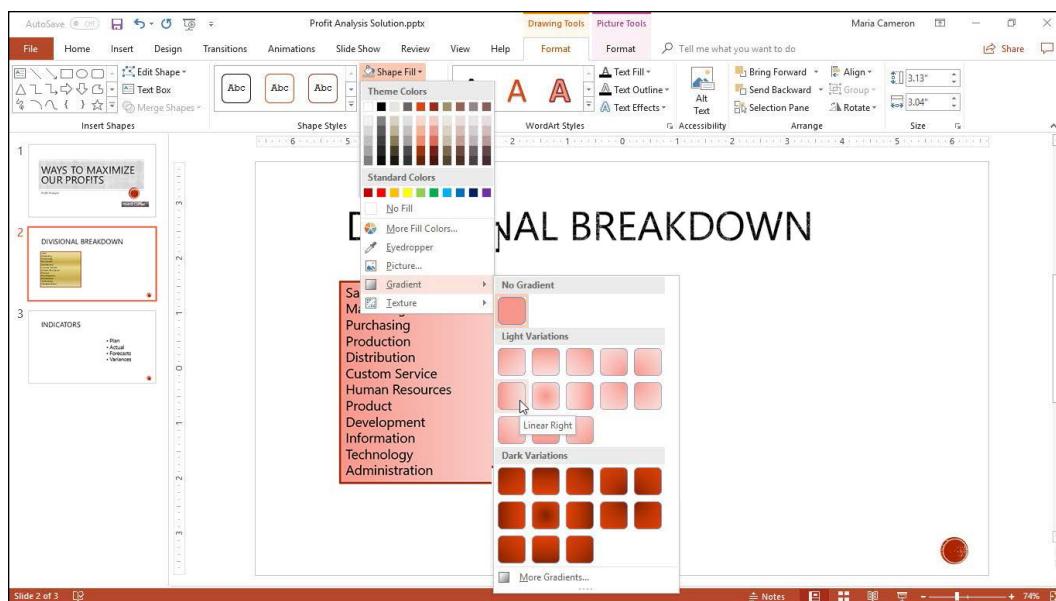
A picture applied as a text box background



5. With the same text box still selected, on the Drawing Tools Format tab, select the **Shape Fill** button. A menu appears.
6. Point to the **Gradient** option. A menu of gradient presets appears.
7. Select the **Linear Right** sample in the Light Variations section (Figure 3-23). To determine the name of a sample, point to each sample, so a ScreenTip appears with its name.

**Figure 3-23**

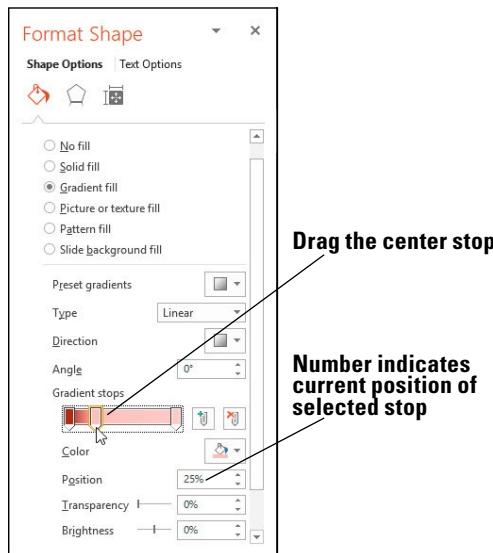
Select a gradient preset



8. On the Drawing Tools Format tab, select **Shape Fill**, point to **Gradient**, and then select **More Gradients**. The Format Shape task pane opens.
9. Select the **Color** button in the task pane, and select **Dark Red, Accent 2**.
10. Drag the center stop on the Gradient Stops bar until the value in the Position box reads 25 (Figure 3-24).

**Figure 3-24**

Adjusting the gradient fill



11. Select **Close** in the upper-right corner of the task pane to close it.
12. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

Gradient fills can be much more complex than the simple ones you applied in the preceding exercise. You can choose from several preset color combinations in the Format Shape task pane (Figure 3-24), or create your own color combinations. The slider in the task pane can be adjusted to create multipoint gradient effects in which you choose exactly which colors appear and in what proportions. You can also adjust the brightness and transparency of the gradient at various points in the fill.

## Applying Texture and Pattern Fills

Texture and pattern fills are alternatives to plain colored fills. A texture fill repeats a small graphic to fill the area; texture graphics are specially designed so that the edges blend together and it resembles a single graphic. Texture graphics usually simulate some type of textured material like wood, marble, or fabric. A pattern fill is a repeating pattern that consists of a background color and a foreground color like the pattern on a checked table cloth or a pinstripe suit. In the following exercise, you will apply texture and pattern fills to a text box.

### STEP BY STEP

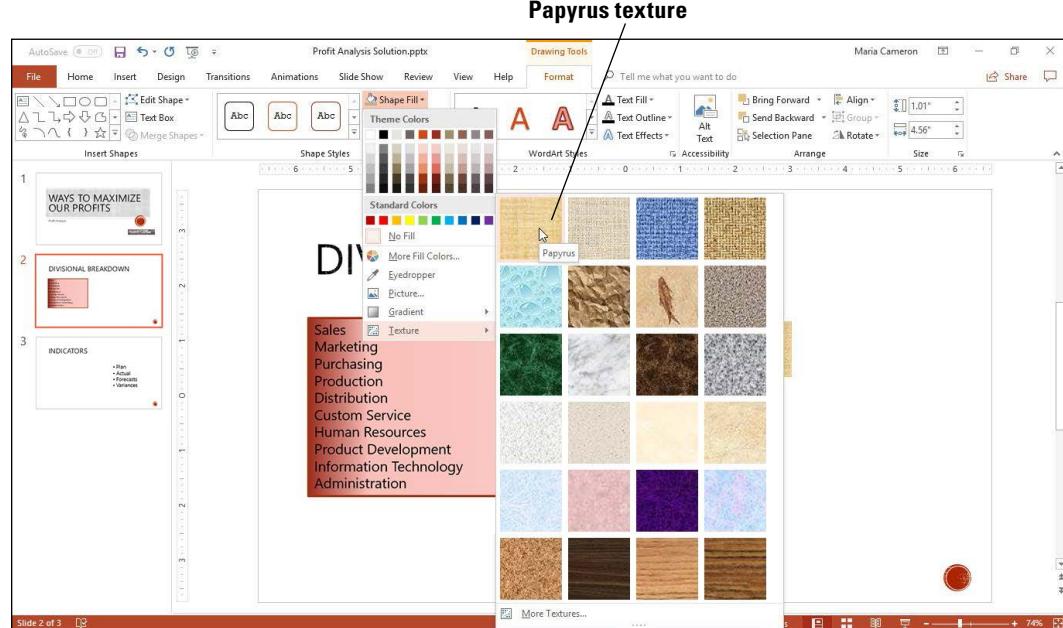
### Apply Texture and Pattern Fills to a Text Box

**GET READY. USE** the *Profit Analysis Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

- With slide 2 displayed, select the **Insert** tab and then select the **Text Box** button. Drag to draw a new text box to the right of the existing one, approximately 4.5" in width.
- In the new text box, type the following: **Each division makes a unique and valuable contribution to the organization.**
- Select the new text box. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, select **Shape Fill**, and point to the **Texture** option in the menu.
- Select the **Papyrus** texture. To locate the correct texture, point to each texture to display the ScreenTip (Figure 3-25). The texture is applied to the text box.

**Figure 3-25**

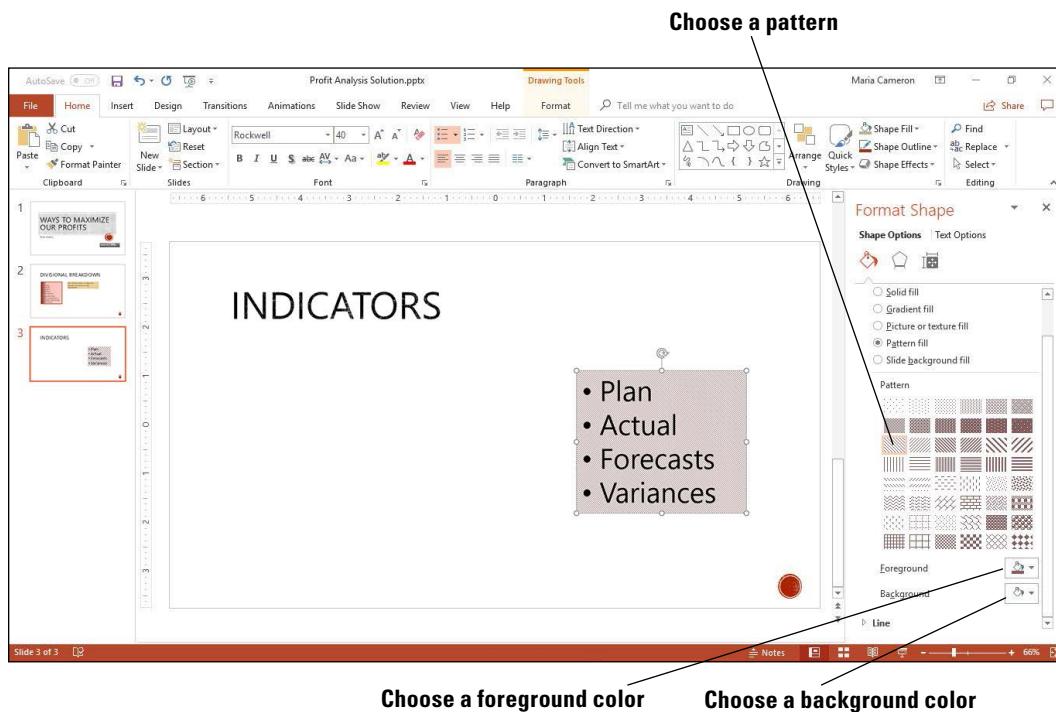
Apply a texture fill to a text box



- Select **slide 3** and select the text box containing the bulleted list.
- Right-click the text box to display the shortcut menu and select **Format Shape**. The Format Shape task pane opens.
- Select **Pattern Fill**. A selection of patterns appears.
- Select the **Diagonal stripes: Light downward** pattern (the first pattern in the third row).
- Select the **Foreground** button to browse for a color.
- Select **Brown, Accent 6** (Figure 3-26). The new fill appears in the text box.

**Figure 3-26**

Apply a pattern fill to a text box



**11. CLOSE** the task pane.

**12. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Setting Up Columns in a Text Box

PowerPoint enables you to create columns in text boxes to present information you want to set up in lists across the slide but do not want to place in PowerPoint tables. As you enter text or other items into a column, PowerPoint fills up the first column and then wraps text to the next column. Viewers of your presentation may have an easier time reading and remembering lists formatted into multiple columns. You can create columns in any text box, placeholder, or shape. In the following exercise, you will change a text box so it uses two columns.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Set Up Columns in a Text Box

**GET READY. USE** the *Profit Analysis Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 2** and drag the *Each division...* text box to the bottom of the slide, under the other text box.
2. Select in the text box that contains the list of divisions beginning with Sales.
3. On the Home tab, in the Paragraph group, select the **Add or Remove Columns** button. A menu appears.
4. Select **Two Columns**. PowerPoint formats the list of items into two columns. The columns are truncated at this point because the text box is not wide enough.
5. Drag the right border of the text box to the right to widen it enough that two columns can appear side by side with neither one truncated.
6. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, and then in the Size group, select the **down arrow** for the Shape Height text box, decreasing the shape height until each column contains seven lines of text.
7. Position the text boxes so they are left aligned with the *Divisional Breakdown* heading.

8. **SAVE** the presentation as **Profit Analysis Final Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

**Take Note**

If the choices in the Add or Remove Columns menu do not meet your needs, select the More Columns option to display the Columns dialog box. Here you can set any number of columns and adjust the spacing between columns.

## USING PROOFING TOOLS

The Spelling and Thesaurus features in PowerPoint help you ensure your presentation's text is professionally written and edited, free from spelling errors.

### Checking Spelling

The Spelling feature in PowerPoint compares each word in the presentation to its built-in and custom dictionaries, and it flags any words that it does not find plus any instances of repeated words, such as the the. You can then evaluate the found words and decide how to proceed with each one. Misspelled words appear with a wavy red underline in the presentation, and you can deal with each one individually by right-clicking it. Alternatively, you can open the Spelling dialog box and work through all the possible misspellings at once. In this exercise, you will practice using PowerPoint's Spelling feature using both of these methods.

### STEP BY STEP

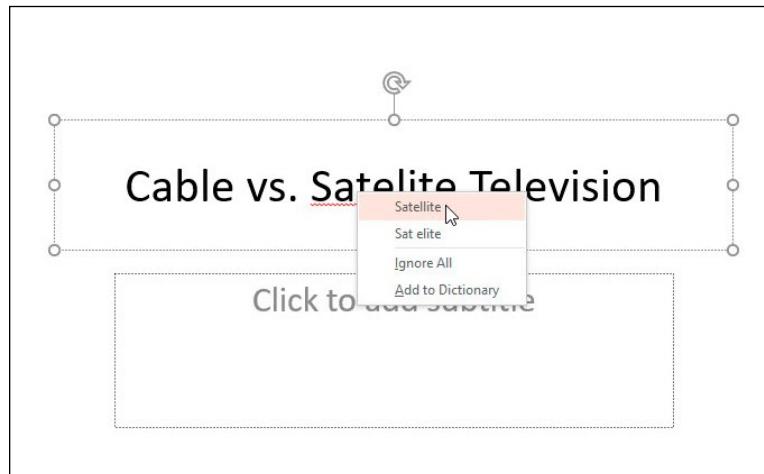
### Check Spelling

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **TV Options** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **TV Options Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. On slide 1, notice that the word *Satelite* is misspelled, and that it has a wavy red underline.
4. Right-click the word **Satelite**. A list of possible spelling corrections appears.
5. In the list, select **Satellite** (Figure 3-27). The correction is made.

**Figure 3-27**

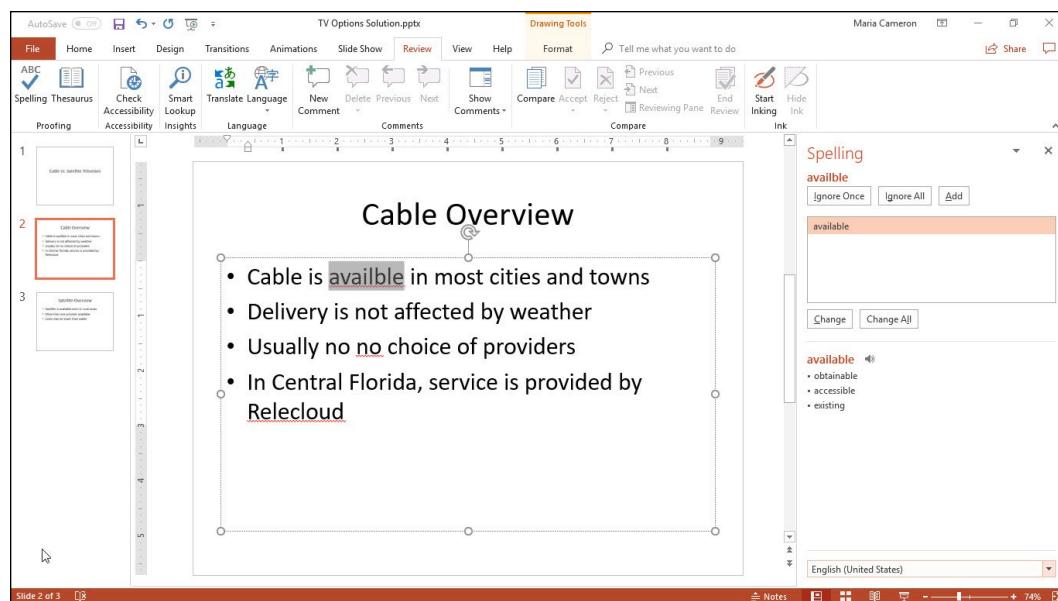
Correct a single misspelled word from the shortcut menu



6. Select the **Review** tab, and then in the Proofing group, select **Spelling**. The Spelling task pane opens, and the Spelling feature finds and flags the next misspelled word (Figure 3-28). The suggestions list contains only one possible correction.

**Figure 3-28**

Correct multiple spelling errors quickly with the Spelling task pane



7. Select the **Change** button to change to the correct spelling of *available*. The next problem identified is a repeated word, *no*.
8. Select the **Delete** button to delete one of the repeated words. The next problem that appears is a proper name, *Relecloud*, which is actually a correct spelling.
9. Select the **Ignore All** button. You could have also selected Add to add the proper name to the dictionary; but because it is a fictional company name for this exercise, Ignore All is more appropriate.
10. Select **Change** to change to the correct spelling of *cable*. A message appears that the spelling check is complete.
11. Select **OK** to close the dialog box.
12. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open for the next exercise.

#### Take Note

Use caution with the **Change All** button because it may make changes you do not intend. For example, if you correct all instances at once where you have typed *pian* instead of *pain*, it will also change all instances of *piano* to *paino*.

### Using the Thesaurus

A thesaurus is a reference book or utility that offers suggestions for words that are similar in meaning to the word you are using (synonyms) or that are opposite in meaning (antonyms). PowerPoint includes a built-in thesaurus. In the following exercise, you will use the thesaurus to find an alternate word.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Change a Word with the Thesaurus

**GET READY. USE** the **TV Options Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and select the word **Costs**.
2. On the Review tab, select **Thesaurus**. The Thesaurus task pane opens, displaying a list of terms related to the word you have selected.
3. In the Thesaurus task pane, point to the word **Charges**. Select the **down arrow** that appears to the right of **Charges** (Figure 3-29), then select **Insert** from the menu that appears. The word **Costs** changes to **Charges** on the slide.

**Figure 3-29**

Find word alternatives with the Thesaurus



4. In the Thesaurus task pane, select the word **Prices**. The display changes to show synonyms of that word.
5. Select the **Back arrow** in the task pane to return to the list of synonyms for Costs.
6. **SAVE** the **TV Options Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

## Knowledge Assessment

### Fill in the Blank

Fill in each blank with the term or phrase that best completes the statement.

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a container for text on a slide.
2. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a set of letters, numbers, and symbols in a specific style or design.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ feature, when needed, shrinks the size of the text in a text box in order to fit it in the box.
4. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a symbol that appears to the left of each paragraph in a list.
5. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ object is text in the form of a graphic.

### Multiple Choice

Circle the correct answer.

1. You can select a different font from the \_\_\_\_\_ tab on the Ribbon.
  - a. Home
  - b. Font
  - c. Layout
  - d. Review
2. Most of PowerPoint's text placeholders automatically format text as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ list.
  - a. numbered
  - b. bulleted
  - c. sorted
  - d. itemized
3. To apply a WordArt style to existing text on a slide, you must first:
  - a. format the text with a Quick Style
  - b. insert a text box
  - c. select the text
  - d. change the text's alignment

4. What does it mean when a word displays a wavy red underline?
  - a. The word is inconsistently formatted compared to the surrounding text.
  - b. There is a grammar error.
  - c. The word is not in the dictionary.
  - d. The capitalization does not match that of the surrounding text.
5. A thesaurus enables you to search for synonyms and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. alternate spellings
  - b. antonyms
  - c. translations
  - d. pronunciations

## Projects

### Project 3-1: Using Quick Styles

As director of marketing for Fourth Coffee, you have prepared a product brochure for new company employees. This year's brochure includes a page of new products that you need to format. In this project, you will use Quick Styles to format the title and text placeholders. You will also correct a spelling error.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the **Coffee Products** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Coffee Products Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2** and select anywhere in the slide title.
4. On the Home tab, select the **Quick Styles** button to display the Quick Styles gallery.
5. Select the **Moderate Effect – Dark Red, Accent 1** style.
6. Select in any of the product items on slide 2.
7. Select the **Quick Styles** button.
8. Select the **Subtle Effect – Dark Red, Accent 1** style.
9. Right-click the red-underlined word and select **Caffeine** as the correct spelling.
10. **SAVE** the **Coffee Products Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

---

## Project 3-2: Typecasting with Typefaces

As an account representative for Graphic Design Institute, you are responsible for preparing a presentation for potential sponsors. Another employee started a PowerPoint presentation containing a title slide, but when you open the file, you realize that the font choices are not appropriate. In this project, you need to modify both the font and font size of the slide's text, as well as change the horizontal alignment of the text.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the *Graphic Designs* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Graphic Designs Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. On slide 1, select the text **Graphic Design Institute**.
4. Select the Font **drop-down arrow**.
5. Select **Bodoni MT**.
6. Select the Font Size **drop-down arrow**.
7. Select **60**.
8. Select the **Center** button in the Paragraph group.
9. Select the **Format Painter** in the Clipboard group.
10. Drag across the subtitle text to change its font and size to the same as the title.
11. With the subtitle text still selected, press the Font Size **drop-down arrow** and select **28**. Notice that the subtitle is not centered exactly beneath the title; that is because the text boxes for the title and subtitle are different widths.
12. Select in the title text box and then note the position of its right edge on the slide.
13. Select in the subtitle text box and then drag its right edge to widen it so it is the same width as the title box.
14. **SAVE** the *Graphic Designs Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

# 4 Designing a Presentation

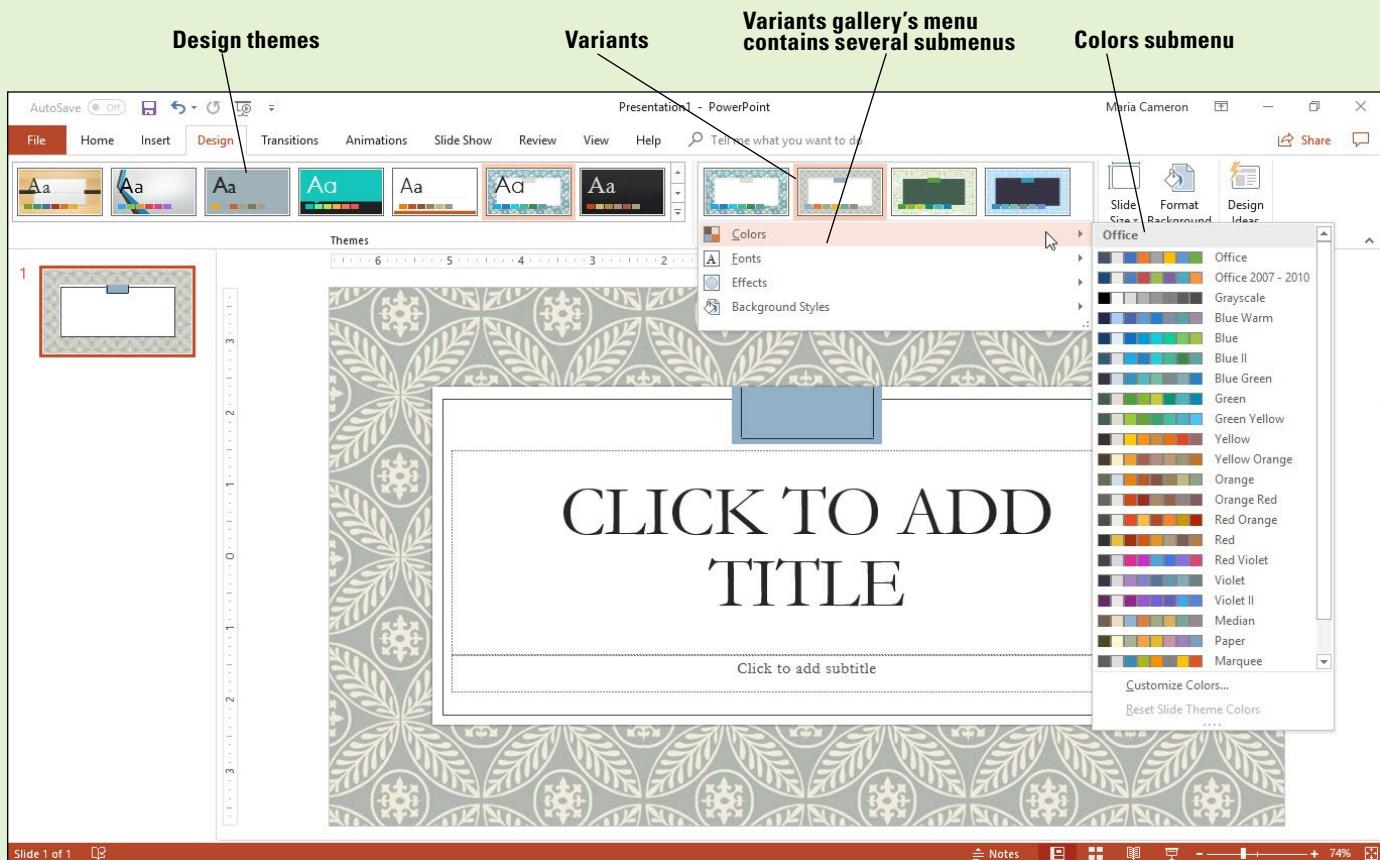
## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill  | Exam Objective   | Objective Number                                   |
|--|--|--|
| Formatting Presentations with Themes and Layouts | Change the slide master theme or background  | 1.3.1  |
| Changing Slide Backgrounds                       | Modify individual slide backgrounds  | 1.2.6  |
| Inserting a Date, Footer, and Slide Numbers      | Insert slide headers, footers, and page numbers  | 1.2.7  |
| Linking to Web Pages and Other Programs          | Insert hyperlinks  | 2.1.6  |
| Working with Sections                            | Create sections<br>Modify slide order<br>Rename sections   | 1.4.1<br>1.4.2<br>1.4.3                            |
| Customizing Slide Masters                        | Change the slide master theme or background<br>Modify slide master content<br>Modify a slide layout<br>Create a slide layout<br>Modify the handout master<br>Modify the notes master | 1.3.1<br>1.3.2<br>1.3.4<br>1.3.3<br>1.3.5<br>1.3.6 |

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### Microsoft PowerPoint's Themes and Variants

PowerPoint offers dozens of unique themes and variants you can apply to presentations to format the slides with colors, fonts, effects, and backgrounds. Figure 4-1 shows the Design tab with the Variants gallery open showing access to the Colors, Fonts, Effects, and Background Styles commands.



**Figure 4-1**  
The Design tab

Use PowerPoint’s built-in themes to give your presentation a polished, professional appearance without a lot of trial and error. You can preview a theme by pointing to it in the Themes gallery and then apply it to the presentation by selecting it. After you have chosen a theme, you can select one of its variants from the Variants gallery.

## FORMATTING PRESENTATIONS WITH THEMES AND LAYOUTS

A PowerPoint **theme** includes a set of colors designed to work well together, a set of fonts (one for headings and one for body text), special effects that can be applied to objects such as pictures or shapes, and often a graphic background. The theme also controls the layout of placeholders on each slide. Use a theme to quickly apply a unified appearance to one or more slides in a presentation (or to the entire presentation). You can also modify a theme and save your changes as a new custom theme.

Slide **layouts** control the position of text and objects on an individual slide. For each slide, you can select a layout according to the content you need to add to it.

PowerPoint makes it easy to view how a theme will appear on your slides by offering a **live preview**. As you move the mouse pointer over each theme in the gallery, that theme’s formats display on the current slide. This formatting feature takes a great deal of guesswork out of the design process. If you don’t like a theme’s appearance, just move the pointer to a different theme or click outside the gallery to restore the previous appearance.

Selecting a theme applies it to all slides in a presentation. You can also apply a theme to a single slide or a selection of slides by making the selection, right-clicking the theme, and choosing **Apply to Selected Slides**.

A theme differs from a template in that it contains no sample content—only formatting specifications.

## Applying a Theme and Variant to a Presentation

In this exercise, you will learn how to select a theme from the Themes gallery to replace the default blank design and create a more visually appealing design for your PowerPoint presentations.

You can apply a variant after selecting a theme. The most obvious change that a variant makes is to apply different colors, but some variants also make other changes too, such as a different background graphic. You can select a variant from the Variants group on the Design tab.

### STEP BY STEP

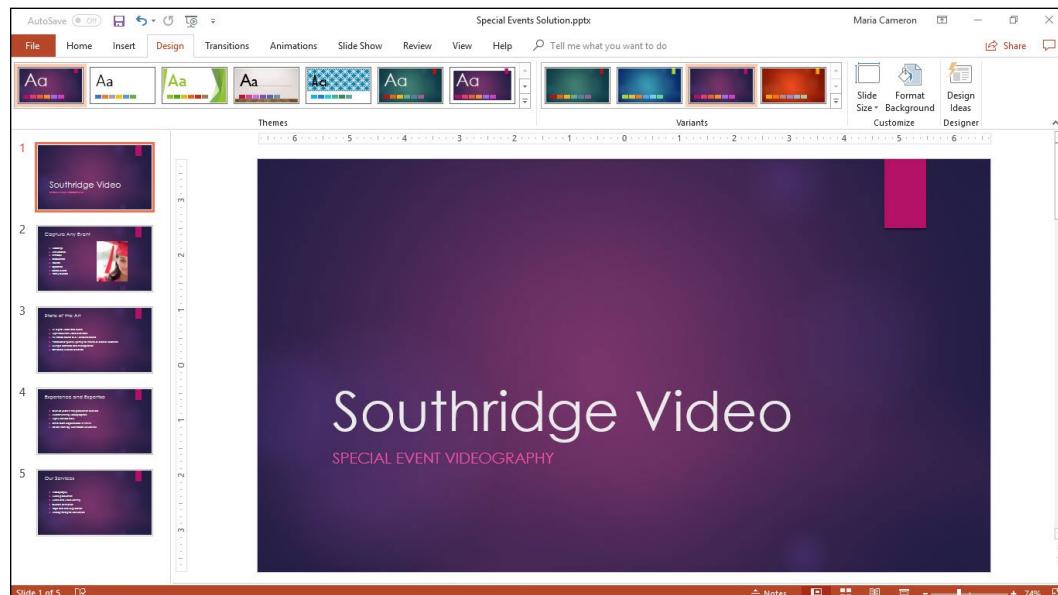
### Apply a Theme and Variant to a Presentation

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint 2016.

1. **OPEN** the **Special Events** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Special Events Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Make sure slide 1 is selected.
4. Select the **Design** tab, and then in the Themes group, select the **More** button. PowerPoint's available themes display in the Themes gallery.
5. Point to any of the themes in the gallery. Notice that a ScreenTip displays the theme's name, and a preview of the theme formats displays on the slide behind the gallery.
6. Right-click the **Parallax** theme. In the shortcut menu, select **Apply to Selected Slides**. The Parallax theme is applied only to slide 1.
7. Select the **More** button again in the Themes group to reopen the Themes gallery.
8. Right-click the **Ion** theme and select **Apply to All Slides** to apply it to all slides.
9. Scroll through the slides to determine how the theme has supplied new colors, fonts, bullet symbols, and layouts.
10. On the Design tab, in the Variants group, select the **purple thumbnail image**. The colors change on all slides to reflect the chosen variant (Figure 4-2).

**Figure 4-2**

The Ion theme applied to all slides in the presentation



11. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Take Note** You can display the name of the current theme on the status bar if you'd like. To do so, right-click the status bar and select Theme.

## Changing Theme Colors

If you do not like the colors used in the theme you have chosen, you can change them. One way to do so is to choose a different variant, as you saw in the previous exercise. You can also select a different color theme, or you can create your own color theme. When you apply a different color theme, your current theme fonts, background graphics, and effects remain the same, only the colors change. In this exercise, you will choose a different color theme for a presentation.

### STEP BY STEP

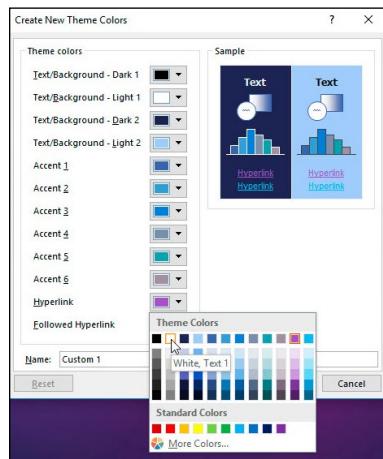
### Change Theme Colors

**GET READY.** USE the *Special Events Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **More** button in the Variants group and then point to **Colors**. A menu appears containing the available color themes.
2. Move the pointer over some of the color themes. The live preview of those colors displays on the current slide.
3. Select the **Blue Warm** color theme. The new colors are applied to the presentation.
4. Select the **More** button again in the Variants group, point to **Colors**, and then select **Customize Colors** at the bottom of the gallery. The Create New Theme Colors dialog box opens to allow you to replace colors in the current color palette.
5. Select the **drop-down arrow** next to the color designated for Hyperlink.
6. Select **White, Text 1** on the Theme Colors palette to change the color for Hyperlinks to white (Figure 4-3).

**Figure 4-3**

The Create New Theme Colors dialog box



7. Select the text in the Name box and type **Southridge** in its place.
8. Select **Save** to save the new theme colors.
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Changing Theme Fonts

Each theme supplies a combination of two fonts to be applied to headings and body. Collectively these two fonts are called a **font theme**. A font theme may have two different fonts—one for headings and one for body text—or the same font for both. In the following exercise, you will choose a different font theme for a presentation.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Change Theme Fonts

**GET READY.** USE the *Special Events Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **More** button in the Variants group and then point to **Fonts**. A gallery displays showing font combinations for all available themes.
2. Move the pointer over some of the font combinations. The live preview of those fonts displays on the current slide.
3. Select the **Candara** font theme. The new fonts are applied to the presentation.
4. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## Applying a Different Slide Layout

The slide layout gallery shows the available layouts in the theme you have applied. If more than one theme is in use in the presentation (e.g., if you applied a different theme to only selected slides), the slide layout gallery shows available layouts from all themes in use so you can pick and choose among a greater variety of layout options. In this exercise, you will choose a different layout for a slide.

### STEP BY STEP

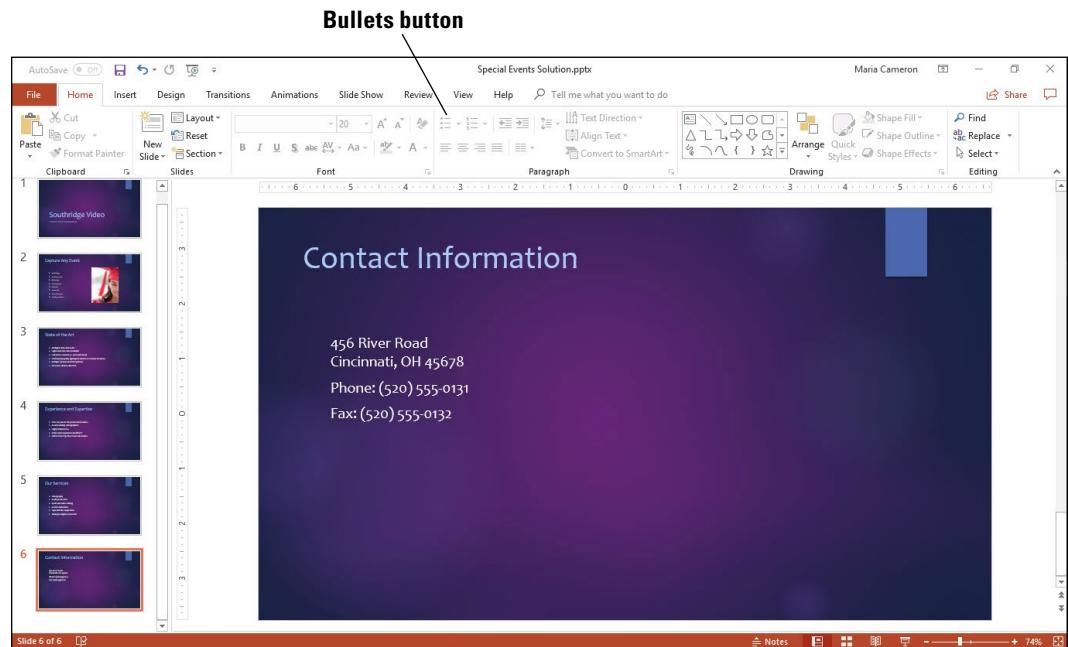
#### Apply a Different Slide Layout

**GET READY.** USE the *Special Events Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **Home** tab.
2. Select **slide 5** and then select the **New Slide** button in the Slides group. (Select the graphical part of the button, not the button's arrow.) PowerPoint adds a new slide with the same layout as slide 5, Title and Content.
3. On the new slide 6, type the title **Contact Information**.
4. Type the following information as the first bullet point in the content placeholder. (After typing *Road*, press **Shift+Enter** to start a new line without starting a new paragraph.) **456 River Road  
Cincinnati, OH 45678**
5. Type these additional bullet points:  
**Phone: (520) 555-0131**  
**Fax: (520) 555-0132**
6. Select the entire bulleted list and then select the **Bullets** button on the Home tab to turn off the bullets. Then click away from the text box to deselect the text. Your slide should resemble Figure 4-4.

**Figure 4-4**

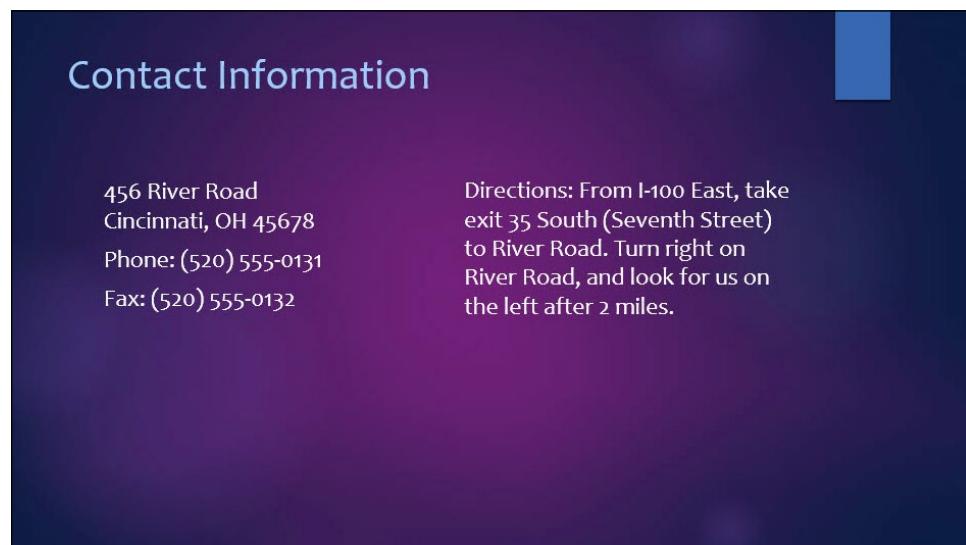
Add contact information to the slide



7. On the Home tab, in the Slides group, select the **Layout** button to display the slide layout gallery.
8. Select **Two Content** to change the layout to two side-by-side content placeholders.
9. In the second placeholder, type the following:  
**Directions: From I-100 East, take exit 35 South (Seventh Street) to River Road. Turn right on River Road, and look for us on the left after 2 miles.**
10. Select anywhere in the text you just typed and then select the **Bullets** button on the Home tab to turn off the bullet.
11. Drag over the text in the text box and change the font size to **24 pt**. Apply the same font size to the first text box. Click away from the text box to deselect it. Your slide should resemble Figure 4-5.

**Figure 4-5**

The completed slide



12. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

The layouts that appear in the slide layout gallery depend on the layouts stored in the Slide Master.

## CHANGING SLIDE BACKGROUNDS

Themes provide a default background for all slides formatted with that theme. To customize a theme or draw attention to one or more slides, you can apply a different background.

### Selecting a Theme Background

The Background Styles gallery allows you to choose from plain, light, or dark backgrounds and gradient backgrounds that gradually change from light to dark. Background colors are determined by the theme. Some background styles include graphic effects such as fine lines or textures that cover the entire background. Use the Background Styles gallery to quickly apply a different solid-color or gradient background based on theme colors. You can apply a background to one or more selected slides or to all slides in the presentation. In this exercise, you will select a background style from the preset backgrounds provided by the theme.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Select a Theme Background

**GET READY.** USE the *Special Events Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 6** if it is not already selected.
2. Select the **Design** tab, select the **More** button in the Variants group, and then point to **Background Styles**. A gallery displays some background styles created using the theme's designated background colors.

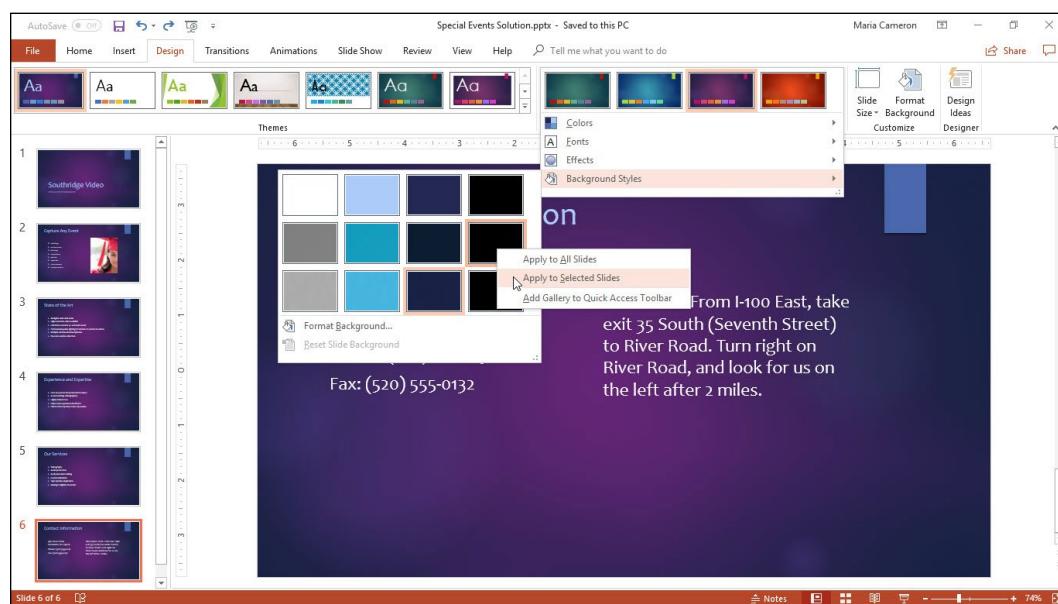
#### Take Note

Point to a background style to display its name and preview it on the current slide.

3. Right-click **Style 8** and select **Apply to Selected Slides** (Figure 4-6). After selecting this option, the background style is applied to slide 6 only.

**Figure 4-6**

The Background Styles gallery with the Apply to Selected Slides option



4. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

The area of the slide that is considered to be the “background” can change depending on the theme. For example, some themes have graphics overlaid on a colored background, so that your choice of background color peek through in only a few spots.

## Customizing the Background

Use the Format Background task pane to create and modify any background, even a default theme background. You can apply a solid color or gradient fill, or select a picture or texture for the background. Options for each of these fill types allow you to modify the fill to suit your needs.

### STEP BY STEP

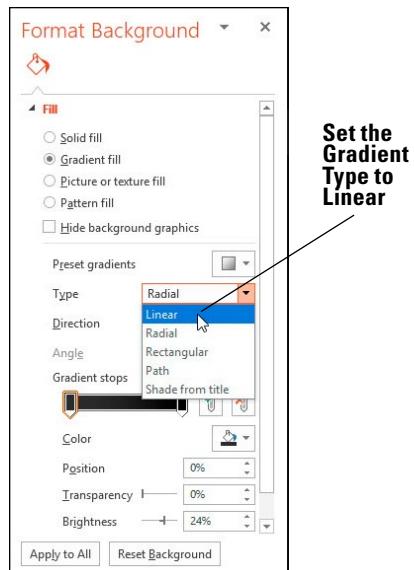
### Customize the Background

**GET READY.** USE the **Special Events Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

- With slide 6 still active, select the **Format Background** button on the Design tab. The Format Background task pane opens. A gradient fill is selected because the style you selected in the previous exercise was a gradient.
- Select the Type **drop-down arrow** and then in the drop-down list, select the **Linear** preset (Figure 4-7). The slide background changes to a different gradient type.

**Figure 4-7**

Format Background task pane with gradient controls



Set the Gradient Type to Linear

- Select the **Solid fill** option. The controls change to those for solid colors.
- Select the Color **drop-down arrow** and in the gallery that appears, select **Dark Purple, Background 2, Lighter 40%** (the third color in the fourth row of the Theme Colors section).
- Drag the Transparency slider to **20%** or type **20** in the Transparency text box. The fill lightens because it is now partly transparent.
- Select **Picture or texture fill**. The controls change to those for pictures and textures.
- Select the Texture **drop-down arrow** and then select the **Purple mesh** texture.
- Select **Pattern fill**. The controls change to those for patterns.
- Select the **Foreground** button and select **Dark Purple, Background 2** (the third color in the top row of the Theme Colors section).
- Select the **Background** button and select **Teal, Accent 5** (next-to-last color in the top row of the Theme Colors section).
- Select the **Dotted: 90%** pattern (the last pattern in the second row).
- In the Format Background task pane, select the **Reset Background** button. The background returns to its original state specified by the theme and variant in use.
- CLOSE** the Format Background task pane.
- SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## INSERTING A DATE, FOOTER, AND SLIDE NUMBERS

Adding a date, footer, and slide numbers to a presentation can help you identify and organize slides. In this exercise, you will learn how to apply these useful elements to one or more slides.

### Inserting a Date, Footer, and Slide Numbers

A footer is text that repeats at the bottom of each slide in a presentation (or in whatever location on the slide where the footer placeholder is located). Use a footer to record the slide title, company name, or other important information that you want the audience to keep in mind as they view the slides. In this exercise, you will apply a footer, a date, and slide numbers to a PowerPoint presentation.

#### STEP BY STEP

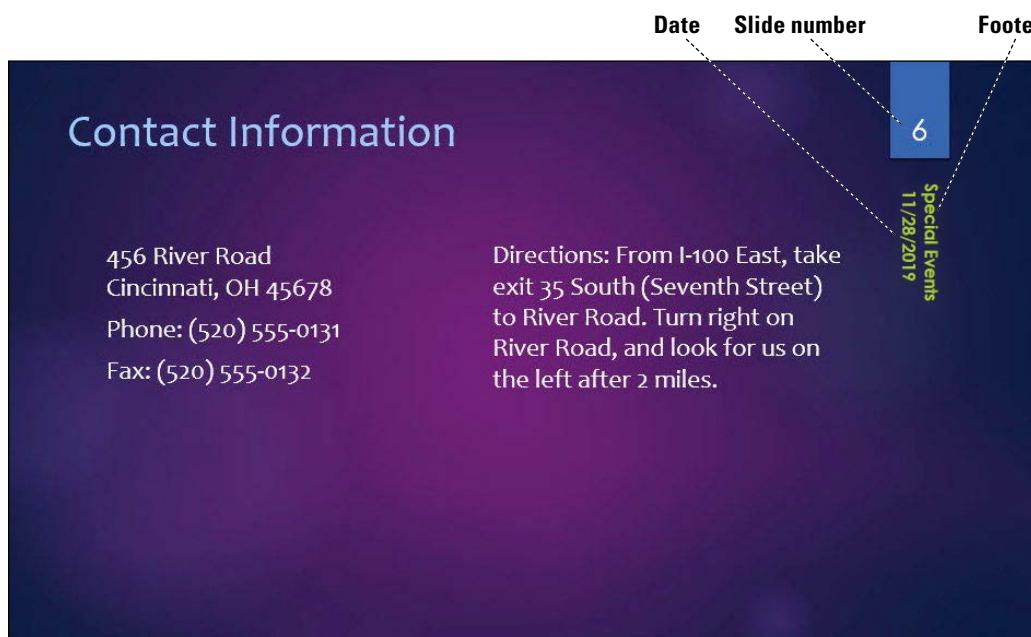
#### Insert a Date, Footer, and Slide Numbers

**GET READY. USE** the *Special Events Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the Text group, select the **Header & Footer** button. The Header and Footer dialog box opens.
2. Select the **Date and time** check box and then select **Update automatically** if it is not already selected. The date will be today's date.
3. Select the **Slide number** check box.
4. Select the **Footer** check box and then type **Special Events** in the text box below the check box.
5. Select the **Don't show on title slide** check box.
6. Select the **Apply to All** button to apply the date, footer, and slide number to all slides except the title slide. Slide 6 should resemble Figure 4-8. In this particular theme, the footer and date appear vertically along the right side of the slide, and the slide number appears in the colored box in the upper-right corner.

**Figure 4-8**

A slide number, footer, and date on a slide



7. Select the **Design** tab and move the mouse over several different themes in the Themes group. Notice that the placement of the slide number, footer, and date change with different themes. In many of the themes, these elements appear at the bottom of the slide.

8. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

You may have noticed that the Header and Footer dialog box has another tab, the Notes and Handouts tab. When you create notes, pages, and handouts, you can specify a **header** to appear at the top of every page. A header is repeated text, much like a footer, except it appears at the top of each printed page. Headers do not appear onscreen in Slide Show view, only on printouts. You can also create footers for notes pages and handouts.

## LINKING TO WEB PAGES AND OTHER PROGRAMS

You can set up **hyperlinks** (selectable shortcuts) on slides that allow you to jump to a specific slide in the presentation or to external content. Hyperlinks can be displayed as either text or a graphic.

### Adding a Text Hyperlink

Use the Insert Hyperlink dialog box to set up links between slides or from slides to other targets. (The **target** is the page, file, or slide that opens when you select a link.) If you select text before inserting the hyperlink, that text will become the link that can be selected. If you select a graphic before inserting the hyperlink, the hyperlink will be attached to the graphic, so that selecting it activates the hyperlink. In this exercise, you will create a text hyperlink.

#### STEP BY STEP

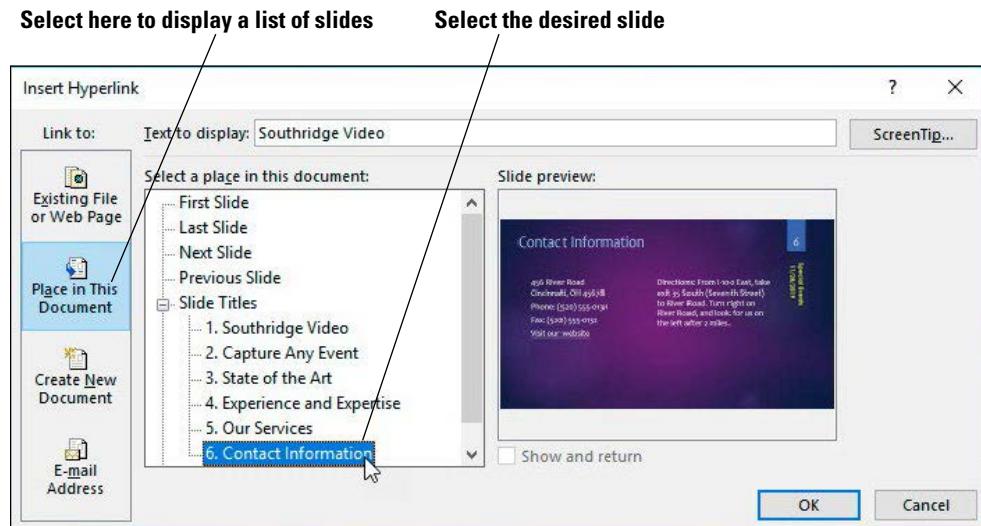
#### Add a Text Hyperlink

**GET READY. USE** the **Special Events Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 6**, position the insertion point at the end of the fax number, and then press **Enter** to start a new paragraph. Then type **Visit our website**.
2. Select the text you just typed and then, on the Insert tab, select the **Link** button. The Insert Hyperlink dialog box opens.
3. In the Link to list, ensure that Existing File or Web Page is selected. Then select in the **Address** box and type **<http://www.southridgevideo.com>** as the target of the link text.
4. Select **OK**. The website address is formatted with the theme's hyperlink color and an underline.
5. Select **slide 1** and select **Southridge Video**.
6. On the Insert tab, select the **Link** button. The Insert Hyperlink dialog box opens.
7. In the Link To list on the left side of the dialog box, select **Place in This Document**. A list of slides from the current presentation appears.
8. Select **6. Contact Information** (Figure 4-9).

**Figure 4-9**

Creating a hyperlink to another slide



**9.** Select **OK**. PowerPoint identifies slide 6 as the target for this hyperlink.

**10. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

You can create links to a number of different types of targets using the Insert Hyperlink dialog box. The available options are:

- **Existing File or Web Page:** Links to any web page or any file on your system or network. Use the Look in box, the Browse the Web button, or the Browse for File button to locate the desired page or file, or type the URL or path in the Address box.
  - **Place in This Document:** Displays a list of the current presentation's slides and custom shows. Select the slide or custom show that you want to display when the link is selected.
  - **Create New Document:** Creates a link to a new document. You supply the path and the name for the new document and then choose whether to add content to the document now or later.
  - **E-mail Address:** Type an email address to which you want to link.
- You can add hyperlinks to a slide in Normal view, but the links will work only in Slide Show view. However, you can test a hyperlink in Normal view by holding down the Ctrl key and then selecting the hyperlink.

### Adding a Graphical Hyperlink

Hyperlinks can be attached to graphics so that when you select the graphic, the specified target displays. In this exercise, you will make an existing graphic into a hyperlink.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Add a Graphical Hyperlink

**GET READY. USE** the *Special Events Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

- 1.** Select the photo in **slide 2**.
- 2.** Press **Ctrl+K** to open the Insert Hyperlink dialog box. (**Ctrl+K** is a keyboard shortcut for the Insert Hyperlink command you used previously.)
- 3.** select **Place in This Document**. A list of slides from the current presentation appears.

4. Select **6. Contact Information**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. **SAVE** the **Special Events Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

If you need to change a link's target, select the text or graphic with the hyperlink, and then select the Link button on the Insert tab, or right-click the text or graphic and select Edit Link. The Edit Hyperlink dialog box opens, offering the same functionality as the Insert Hyperlink dialog box. You can remove a link by right-clicking the text or graphic with the hyperlink and selecting Remove Link from the shortcut menu.

## WORKING WITH SECTIONS

To organize a long presentation, you can create **sections**, which are dividers that group slides into logical clusters, similar to how folders organize groups of related papers. You can then work with the sections rather than with individual slides, moving or deleting an entire section as a group.

### Creating Sections

You can create sections that organize the slides for easier management. This organization is especially useful in a lengthy presentation that covers multiple topics; each topic can be a section. In this exercise, you will create some sections and then use them to manipulate content.

#### STEP BY STEP

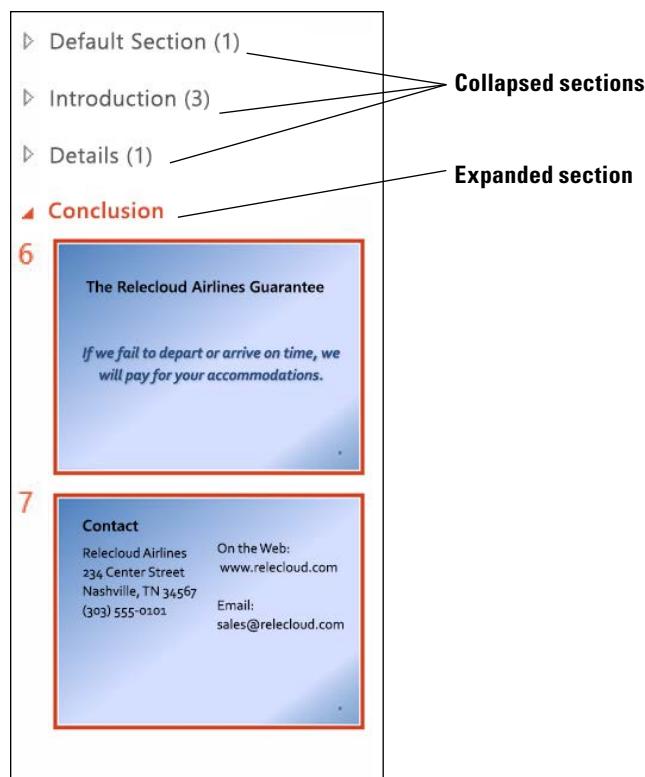
#### Create Sections

**GET READY.** **LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **Relecloud Introduction** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Relecloud Introduction Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2**. In the Slides pane on the left, right-click **slide 2** and select **Add Section** in the shortcut menu. A new section bar labeled **Untitled Section** appears in the Slides pane above slide 2, indicating that the new section begins with that slide.
4. In the Rename Section dialog box, type **Introduction** in the Section name box and then select **Rename**.
5. Select **slide 5**. In the Slides pane, right-click **slide 5** and select **Add Section**. Another new section (labeled **Untitled Section**) appears above slide 5 in the Slides pane.
6. In the Rename Section dialog box, type **Details** and select **Rename**.
7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to create another new section named **Conclusion** above **slide 6**.
8. Right-click the **Details** section heading in the Slides pane and select **Move Section Up** to move that section to appear before the **Introduction** section.
9. Right-click the **Details** section heading again and select **Move Section Down**. The **Details** section moves back to its original location.
10. Right-click the **Introduction** section heading in the Slides pane and select **Collapse All**. All the sections collapse in the Slides pane.
11. Double-click the **Conclusion** section heading. That section is expanded so you can view the individual slides in it (Figure 4-10).

**Figure 4-10**

Collapse and expand sections



12. Right-click the **Conclusion** section and select **Remove Section**. The section heading is removed, but the slides remain; they are added to the Details section.
13. Right-click any of the remaining section headings and choose **Expand All**.
14. Select the **Introduction** section heading. Choose the **Design** tab, and then in the Variants group, select the **More** button and point to **Background Styles**. In the Background Styles gallery, right-click **Style 1** and then choose **Apply to Selected Slides**. Only the slides in the selected section change their background color.
15. **SAVE** the **Relecloud Introduction Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

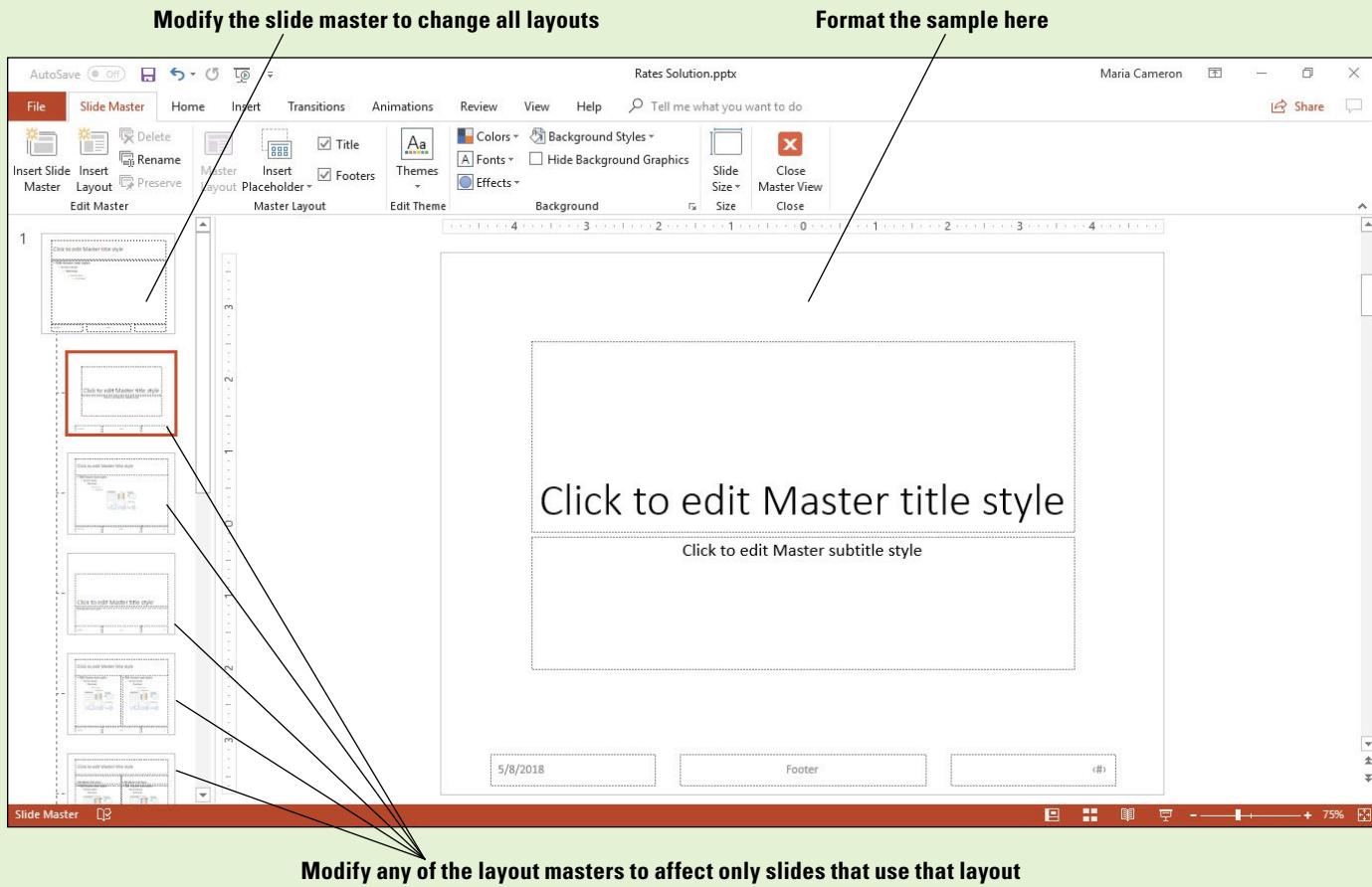
**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

---

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### PowerPoint's Slide Master View

Slide Master view (Figure 4-11) provides tools for modifying the master slides, on which all of the current presentation's layouts and formats are based. You can modify the slide master itself, or any of the individual layout masters subordinate to it.



**Figure 4-11**

Slide Master view

Use the tools on the Slide Master tab and the slide in the Slides pane to customize formats that will apply to all slides in a presentation. If you make changes to the topmost slide in the left pane, the changes apply to all layouts. If you select a specific layout below it to change, the changes apply to all slides that use that layout.

## CUSTOMIZING SLIDE MASTERS

The **slide master** for a presentation stores information on the current theme, layout of placeholders, bullet characters, and other formats that affect all slides in a presentation. If you want to make design changes that will apply to many or all slides in a presentation, you can save a great deal of time by modifying the slide master rather than applying changes on each slide. Slide Master view makes it easy to change formats globally for a presentation by displaying the slide master and all layouts available in the current presentation. Customizing a slide master makes it easy to apply changes consistently throughout a presentation.

## Applying a Theme to a Slide Master

To customize a slide master, you use Slide Master view. Slide Master view has its own tab on the Ribbon to provide tools you can use to change the masters. In this exercise, you will apply a theme to a slide master to change its appearance.

### STEP BY STEP

### Apply a Theme to a Slide Master

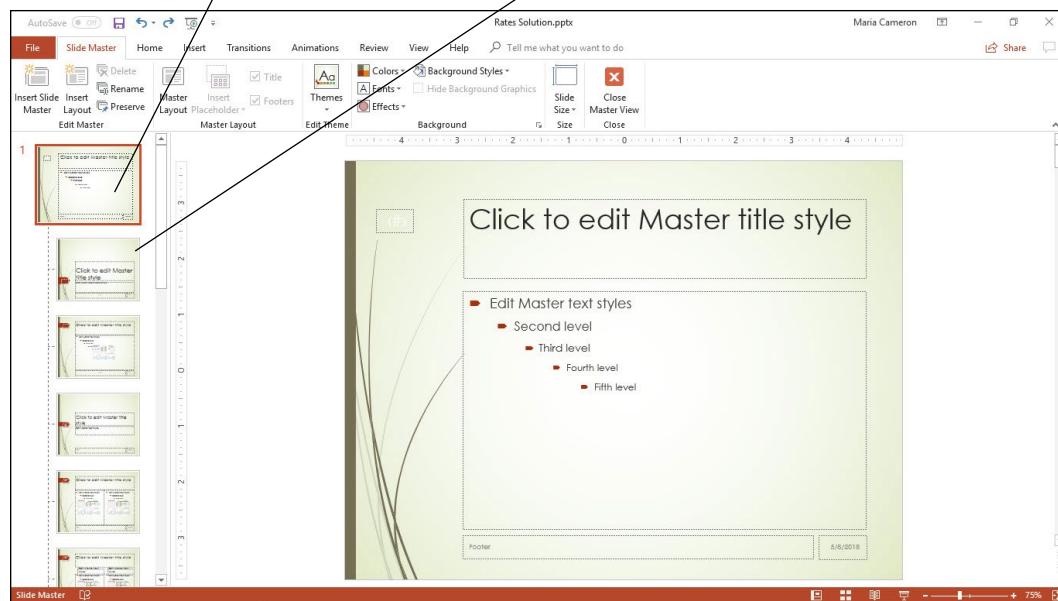
**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the *Rates* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the file as *Rates Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. With slide 1 active, select the **View** tab.
4. In the Master Views group, select the **Slide Master** button. Slide Master view opens with the Title Slide Layout selected in the left pane.
5. Select the first slide in the left pane, which is the slide master for the current theme. (It is the top slide in the left pane—the one that is slightly larger than the others. You may have to scroll up to display it.)
6. On the Slide Master tab, in the Edit Theme group, select the **Themes** button to open the Themes gallery; select the **Wisp** theme in the gallery. The theme is applied to the slide master as well as all slide layouts in the left pane (Figure 4-12).

**Applying a theme to the Slide Master... ...also applies it to each of the layouts**

**Figure 4-12**

A new theme applied to the slide master and its layouts



**Take Note** Remember that you can find a layout or theme's name by pointing to it with the mouse.

7. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open in Slide Master view to use in the next exercise.

## Moving and Resizing Placeholders

You may have noticed that some designs place slide content in different locations from others. This is because the placeholders on the slide master are positioned differently. You can move and resize the placeholders on the slide master to create different effects yourself. Each slide master has a set of **layout masters** that determine the number, type, and position of the placeholders on a

particular type of slide. In Slide Master view, the layout masters are beneath the Slide Master and slightly indented in the left pane to show that they are subordinate to it. Any changes you make to the placeholders on the Slide Master itself flow down to the layout masters. In this exercise, you will change the layout for a particular layout master.

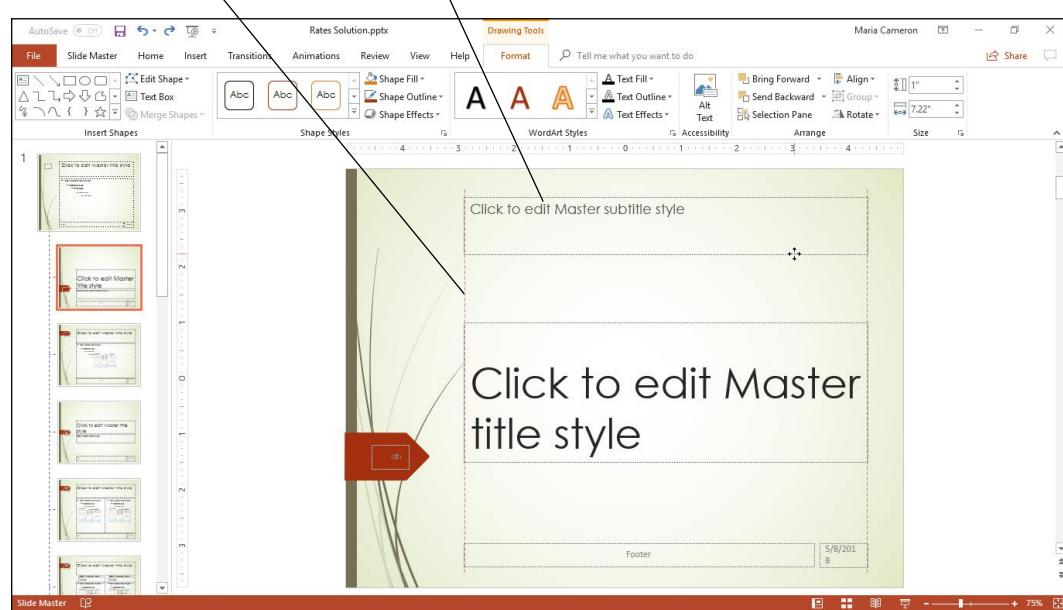
## STEP BY STEP

### Move and Resize Placeholders on a Layout Master

**GET READY.** USE the *Rates Solution* presentation that is open in Slide Master view from the previous exercise.

1. In Slide Master view, select the **Title Slide Layout** master in the left pane (point to the slide to display a ScreenTip indicating the layout master's name). The Title Slide Layout master appears in the right pane.
2. In the right pane, click the outer border of the subtitle placeholder (*Click to edit Master subtitle style*) to select that text box.
3. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, and then in the **Size** group, set the Height value to **1"**.
4. Position the mouse pointer over the border of the subtitle placeholder, but not over a selection handle. The mouse pointer becomes a four-headed arrow. Click and drag the text box to the top of the slide and align it with the left edge of the title placeholder (Figure 4-13).

**Figure 4-13**  
Moving a placeholder



5. Using the same process as in step 4, move the title placeholder immediately below the subtitle placeholder.
6. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open in Slide Master view to use in the next exercise.

### Adding New Elements to a Master

Adding a new element to a layout, such as a text box or a graphic, places it on all slides that use that layout. Adding such elements to the Slide Master itself places them on every slide that uses that theme, regardless of the layout. You might place the company's logo on each slide, for example, or a copyright notice. In this exercise, you will add a copyright notice to the Slide Master, which affects every layout master that is subordinate to it.

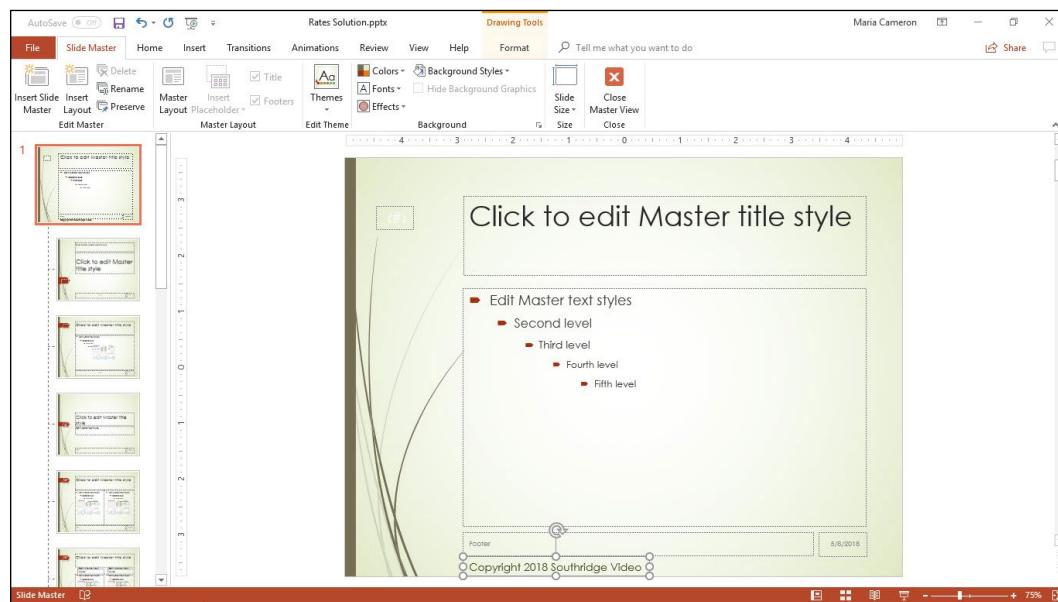
**STEP BY STEP****Add a New Element to a Master**

**GET READY.** USE the **Rates Solution** presentation that is open in Slide Master view from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **Slide Master** at the top of the left pane.
2. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the Text group, select the **Text Box** button.
3. Near the bottom-left corner of the slide master, directly below the footer, select to place a new text box and then type **Copyright 2018 Southridge Video**.
4. Select the text you just typed. Select the **Home** tab and then select the **Decrease Font Size** button two times to change the font size to **14 pt**. Resize and move the text box as necessary so that the text fits on one line and displays completely on the slide.
5. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, and with the text box still selected, change the **Text Fill** color to **Light Green, Background 2, Darker 75%**.
6. Select the **Slide Master** tab. Your slide should resemble Figure 4-14.

**Figure 4-14**

Slide with a copyright in the Slide Master



7. Select the **Close Master View** button to return to Normal view.
8. View each slide to confirm that the copyright text appears on each one.
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Working with Background Images**

Many of PowerPoint's themes include background images that enhance the appearance of the slides. You can hide these images if you like for a particular layout master, or delete them entirely from the Slide Master. You can also add your own background images.

**STEP BY STEP****Work with Background Images**

**GET READY.** USE the **Rates Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 1**.
2. Select the **Design** tab and then select **Format Background** to display the Format Background task pane.

3. Select the **Hide background graphics** check box in the task pane. The background image disappears from slide 1. It remains on the other two slides.
4. Clear the **Hide background graphics** check box. The background image reappears on slide 1.
5. **CLOSE** the Format Background task pane.
6. Select the **View** tab and then select **Slide Master** to enter Slide Master view. Select the **Title and Content Layout** in the left pane.
7. On the Slide Master tab, select the **Hide Background Graphics** check box. The background graphic is removed from the chosen layout. This method of removal hides the background for all slides that use the chosen layout, whereas the method in step 3 hid the background just for the selected slide.
8. Clear the **Hide Background Graphics** check box to restore the background graphic to the Title and Content Layout.
9. Select the **Title Slide Layout** in the left pane and then in the right pane, select the brown polygon on the left side of the slide. Hold down the **Ctrl** key and select the page number code inside it, so that both objects are selected.
10. Drag the selected objects up so that the point of the polygon points to the word "Click" in the title placeholder (Figure 4-15).



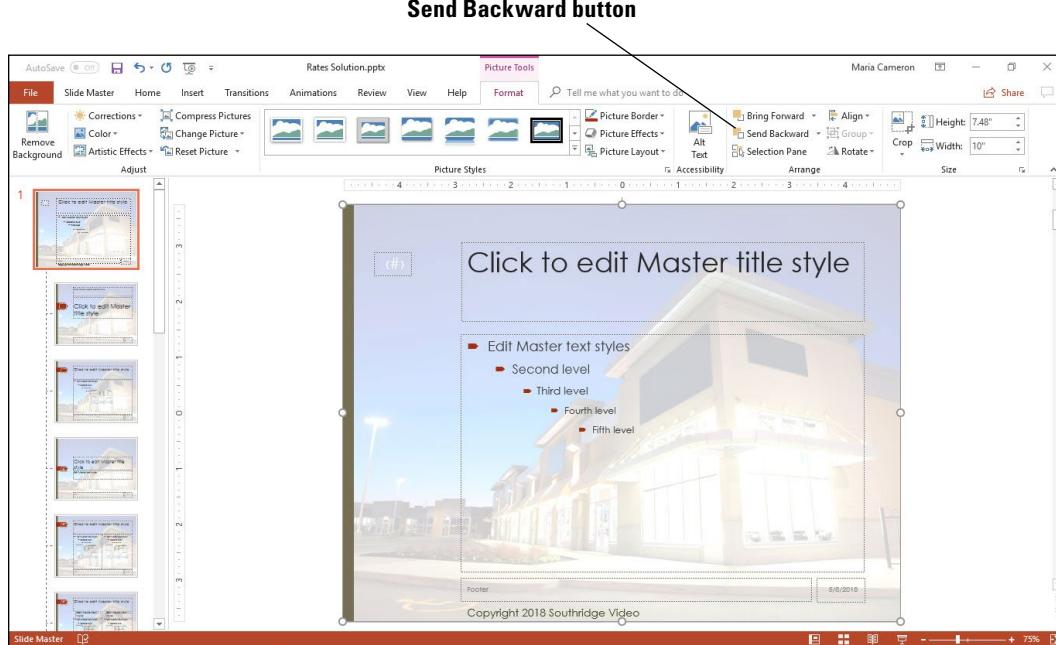
**Figure 4-15**

Reposition background graphics by dragging them

11. Select the **Slide Master** thumbnail at the top of the left pane and then in the right pane, select the leaf graphic on the left side of the slide to select it. Then press **Delete** to remove it. The leaf graphic is in two parts; repeat the process for the remaining part to remove the entire graphic.
12. Notice that the leaf graphic is removed from all the layouts.
13. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the Images group, select **Pictures**. Navigate to the location containing the data files for this lesson, select **Store.jpg** and select **Insert**. The image is inserted on the Slide Master where it covers almost all the content.
14. Drag the top middle and bottom middle selection handles on the image so that it covers the entire slide. The image will distort slightly; that is okay.
15. On the Picture Tools Format tab, in the Adjust group, select the **Color** button and then select **Washout** (the fourth thumbnail in the first row of the Recolor section).
16. In the Arrange group, select the Send Backward **drop-down arrow** and select **Send to Back**. Now the background image is behind all other objects on the Slide Master as well as on each layout master (Figure 4-16).

**Figure 4-16**

The new background image is behind all other content



### 17. SAVE the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open in Slide Master view to use in the next exercise.

## Creating a New Layout

If you need to create a number of slides with a layout different from any of the default layouts, you can create a new custom layout to your own specifications. Or, if you want some slides to use a modified version of one of the default layouts, but you also want to retain that original layout, you may want to create your own custom slide layout. In this exercise you will create a custom layout.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Create a New Layout

**GET READY. USE** the **Rates Solution** presentation that is open in Slide Master view from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **Slide Master** at the top of the left pane.
2. On the Slide Master tab, in the Edit Master group, select **Insert Layout**. A new layout appears at the bottom of the left pane.
3. On the Slide Master tab, select the Insert Placeholder **drop-down arrow**. A menu opens.
4. In the menu, select **Text**. The mouse pointer turns into a crosshair.
5. Draw a new text placeholder on the slide below the title placeholder that will cover most of the empty space on the slide vertically and about three-fourths of the empty space on the slide horizontally.
6. Select the **Slide Master** tab, select the Insert Placeholder **drop-down arrow** again, and then select **Picture** in the menu. Draw a placeholder box to the right of the text placeholder (Figure 4-17).

**Figure 4-17**

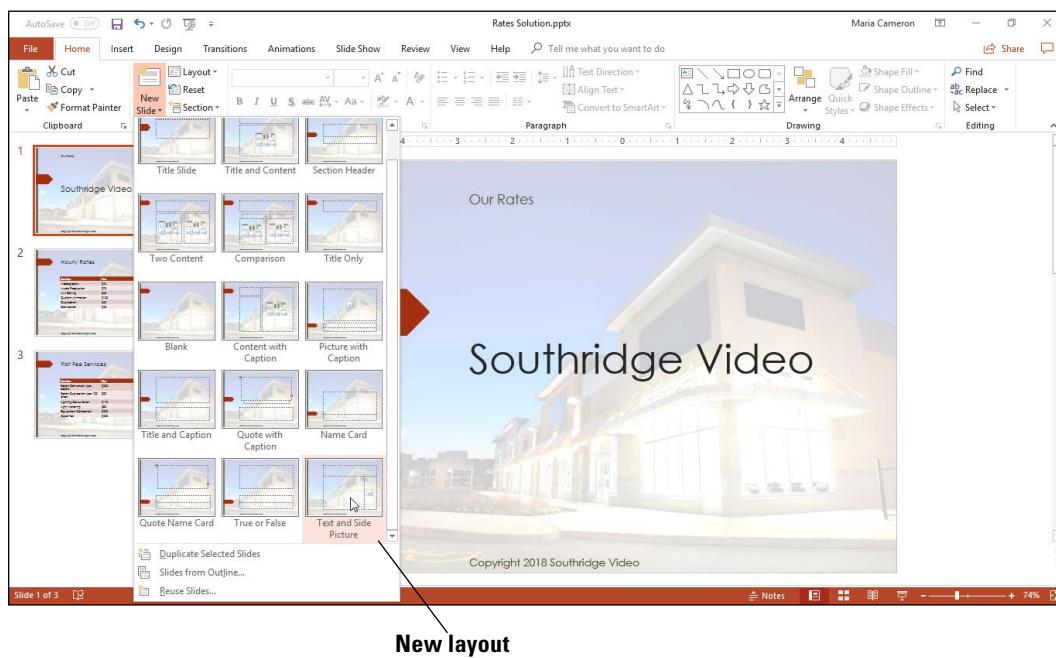
Draw a picture placeholder as shown here



7. Right-click the **new layout master** in the left pane and select **Rename Layout** in the shortcut menu.
8. In the Rename Layout dialog box, replace the current name with **Text and Side Picture** and then select **Rename**.
9. On the Slide Master tab, select **Close Master View**.
10. Select **slide 1**.
11. On the Home tab, in the Slides group, select the New Slide **drop-down arrow**. On the gallery of layouts that appears, select the new **Text and Side Picture** layout (Figure 4-18), to create a new slide using it.

**Figure 4-18**

Select the new layout to create a new slide



**12. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Modifying Handout and Notes Masters

Similar to the Slide Master view, the Handout and Notes masters let you modify various elements on the page. There's a little less flexibility on the sizes of the elements in these masters, but you can customize elements such as the header, footer, date, page orientation, page number, number of slides, background, fonts, and so on. In this exercise, you will modify the Handout and Notes masters.

### STEP BY STEP

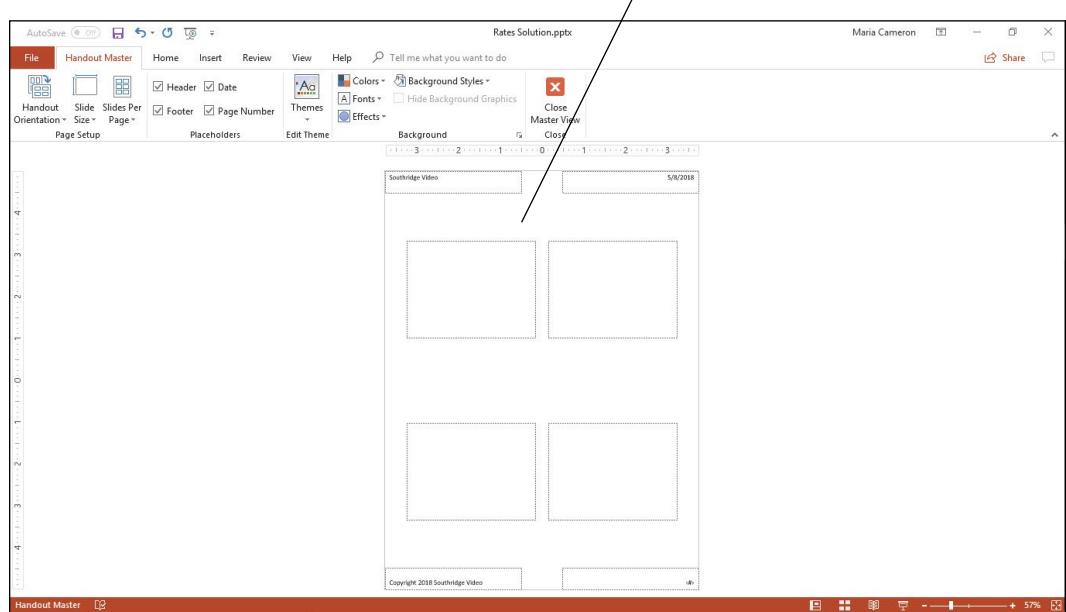
### Modify Handout and Notes Masters

**GET READY. USE** the **Rates Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **View** tab and then select the **Handout Master** button. The Handout Master view opens.
2. Select in the Header section in the top-left corner and type **Southridge Video**.
3. Select in the Footer section in the bottom-left corner and type **Copyright 2018 Southridge Video**.
4. Select the **Slides Per Page** button and select **4 slides** from the drop-down menu. Your Handout Master should resemble Figure 4-19.

**Figure 4-19**

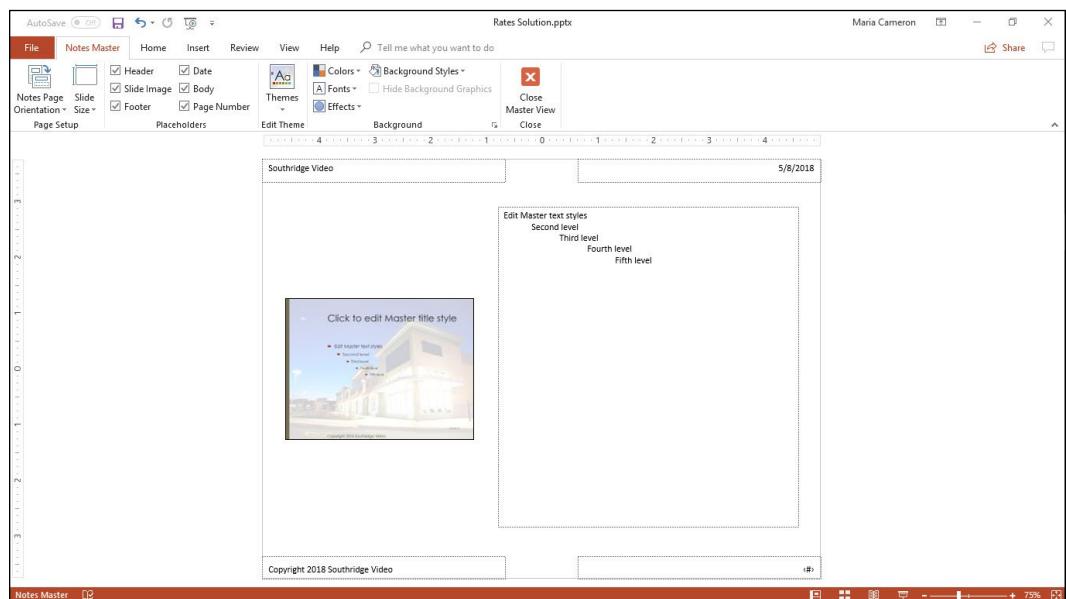
The Handout Master with 4 slides per page



5. Select **Close Master View**.
6. Select the **View** tab and then select the **Notes Master** button. The Notes Master view opens.
7. Select in the Header section and type **Southridge Video**.
8. Select in the Footer section and type **Copyright 2018 Southridge Video**.
9. In the Page Setup group, select the **Notes Page Orientation** button and select **Landscape**.
10. Resize the text box so it appears on the right side of the page and move the slide to the left of the page, as shown in Figure 4-20.

**Figure 4-20**

The Notes Master now appears in landscape orientation



11. Select **Close Master View**.
12. Select the **File** tab, select **Print**, and under Settings, select the **Full Page Slides** button.
13. Select **4 Slides Vertical** to preview the handout pages. Your header and footer should display with the slides in landscape orientation.
14. Select the **Return to Document** icon.
15. **SAVE** the *Rates Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

## Knowledge Assessment

### Fill in the Blank

Fill in each blank with the term or phrase that best completes the statement.

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ contains color, font, layout, and effect settings that you can apply to a presentation to change its appearance.
2. A slide's \_\_\_\_\_ determines the positioning and types of placeholders on it.
3. Text that repeats at the bottom of each slide is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Underlined text on a slide usually means that the text is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ and opens a web page or another slide when clicked.
5. To ensure consistency, make formatting changes to the \_\_\_\_\_ rather than individual slides.

### Multiple Choice

Circle the correct answer.

1. Which of the following does a theme *not* include?
  - a. A color palette
  - b. Fonts
  - c. Graphic effects
  - d. Sample content
2. Themes are applied from which of the following tabs?
  - a. Home
  - b. Insert
  - c. Design
  - d. Transitions
3. From which of the following tabs do you apply a different layout to a slide?
  - a. Home
  - b. Insert
  - c. Design
  - d. Transitions
4. Which of the following is *not* a type of fill you can use for a slide background?
  - a. Solid color
  - b. SmartArt
  - c. Texture
  - d. Gradient
5. To link to a slide in the current presentation, choose \_\_\_\_\_ in the Insert Hyperlink dialog box.
  - a. Existing File or Web Page
  - b. Place in This Document
  - c. Create New Document
  - d. Show Current Slides

## Projects

### Project 4-1: Changing Themes and Variants

You are the sales manager for a large chain of auto dealerships that prides itself on service and warranty packages that give customers a sense of security. The company is rolling out a new line of extended warranties to offer its customers. You have created a presentation that details three levels of warranties. In this project, you will improve the appearance of the slides to make customers take notice.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the **Warranty Plans** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Warranty Plans Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. With slide 1 active, insert a new **Title and Content** slide.
4. Change the slide layout to **Title Slide**.
5. Type the title **Northwind Traders** and the subtitle **Extended Warranty Plans**.
6. Drag the **title slide** above slide 1 so the title slide becomes the first slide.
7. Select the **Design** tab and then select the **More** button in the Themes group to display the Themes gallery.
8. Select the **Wood Type** theme to apply this theme to all slides.
9. Select the **More** button in the Variants group. On the menu that appears, point to **Fonts** and then scroll down to locate and select the **Times New Roman-Arial** theme font combination.
10. Select the **More** button in the Variants group, and on the menu that appears, point to **Colors** and then select **Customize Colors**.
11. Select the Accent 1 **drop-down arrow** and then select **Orange, Accent 1, Darker 25%**.
12. Select the Accent 2 **drop-down arrow** and then select **Dark Red, Accent 2, Darker 50%**.
13. Type **Northwind** as the color scheme name and then select **Save**.
14. Select **slide 1** if it isn't already selected.
15. Select the **More** button in the Variants group, and on the menu that appears, point to **Background Styles** and then select **Style 9**.
16. **SAVE** the **Warranty Plans Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

### Project 4-2: Organizing Slides into Sections

You are an assistant at Margie's Travel, and your boss has created the beginnings of a presentation containing travel tips for various destination types. Because there will eventually be many slides per destination, you will organize the slides into sections for the destination types and make some changes to the slide master that will improve the appearance of the slides.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **Travel Tips** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Travel Tips Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2**. Notice that the title is obscured by the graphic.
4. Switch to **Slide Master** view and select the **slide master**.
5. Drag the bottom border of the title placeholder upward so its height is **0.75"**. Use the Height box on the Drawing Tools Format tab to gauge the height, or use the vertical ruler.

6. Close Slide Master view and confirm on slide 2 that the title no longer overlaps the graphic.
7. Create a section that starts with slide 3. Name it **Sand and Sun**.
8. Create a section that starts with slide 6. Name it **Adventure**.
9. Create a section that starts with slide 9. Name it **Cruise**.
10. Create a section that starts with slide 12. Name it **City**.
11. Create a section that starts with slide 15. Name it **Summary**.
12. Move the **City** section before the **Cruise** section.
13. Select **slide 2**. Select the graphic for **Sand and Sun** (select the main graphic and then select the Sand and Sun graphic inside the main graphic) and then create a hyperlink that jumps to slide 3.
14. Create additional hyperlinks for the other three graphics, jumping to the first slide in their respective sections.
15. **SAVE** the **Travel Tips Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

# Adding Tables to Slides 5

## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill                                  | Exam Objective                           | Objective Number |
|--|--|------------------|
| Creating Tables                        | Create a table                           | 3.1.1            |
| Importing Tables from External Sources | Import a table                           | 3.1.4            |
| Modifying Table Layout                 | Insert and delete table rows and columns | 3.1.2            |
| Formatting Tables                      | Apply table styles                       | 3.1.3            |

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### A PowerPoint Table

Tables are designed to organize data in columns and rows (Figure 5-1).

**Figure 5-1**  
A PowerPoint table and  
the Table Tools tabs on the  
Ribbon

The screenshot shows a Microsoft PowerPoint slide titled "Current Top Six Locations". The slide contains a table with three columns: "Location", "Monthly Transaction Value", and "Monthly Fee Revenue". The table data is as follows:

| Location                 | Monthly Transaction Value | Monthly Fee Revenue |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Chestnut Mall         | \$1,700,000               | \$225,000           |
| 2. Birch Shopping Center | \$1,200,000               | \$198,000           |
| 3. Maple Lake Mall       | \$1,050,000               | \$164,000           |
| 4. Willow Place          | \$934,000                 | \$106,000           |
| 5. Walnut Shoppes        | \$859,000                 | \$92,000            |
| 6. Oak Square            | \$802,000                 | \$88,000            |

Below the table, the ribbon shows the "Table Tools" tab is selected. Arrows point from the words "Row", "Column", and "Cell" to the corresponding horizontal, vertical, and diagonal lines of the table respectively.

The Table Tools Design tab, shown in Figure 5-1, and the Table Tools Layout tab provide tools for modifying and formatting a table. When you select a table, these tabs become active in the Ribbon.

## CREATING TABLES

When you want to organize complex data on a slide, use a **table**. A table is a grid into which you can type text in the individual **cells** at the intersection of each **column** and **row**. A table's column and row structure makes data easy to understand. If you need to organize numerical data that may be used in calculations, you can insert an Excel worksheet on a slide and use Excel's tools to work with the data.

### Inserting a Table

PowerPoint has automated the process of creating a table so that you can simply specify the number of columns and rows and then type data to achieve a professionally formatted result. PowerPoint offers several ways to insert a table. The simplest method is to select the Insert Table icon in any content placeholder. You can also insert a table by using the Table button on the Insert tab. In this exercise, you will create tables using both methods.

#### STEP BY STEP

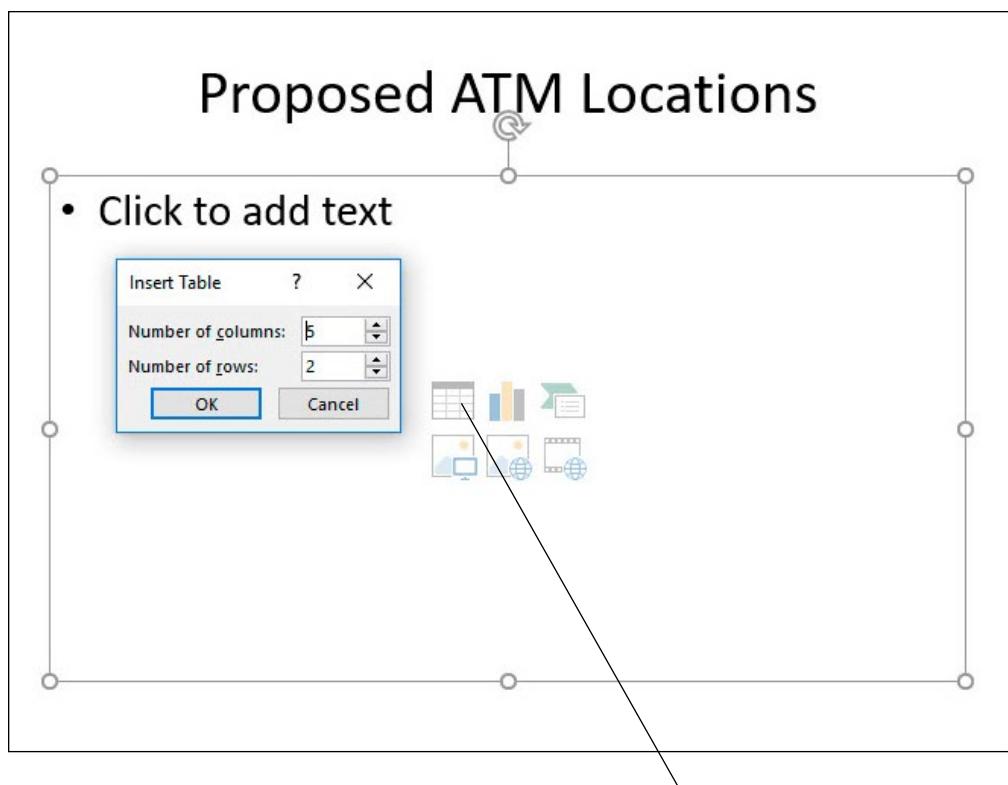
#### Insert a Table

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint 2016.

1. **OPEN** the **ATMs** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **ATMs Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select below slide 4 in the Slides pane and press **Enter** to insert a new slide with the **Title and Content** layout after slide 4.
4. On the new slide, select in the title placeholder and type the slide title, **Proposed ATM Locations**.
5. Select the **Insert Table** icon in the content placeholder. The Insert Table dialog box opens (Figure 5-2).

**Figure 5-2**

The Insert Table dialog box



Insert Table icon

6. In the Number of columns box, use the spin box arrow to specify **3** columns. Press **Tab** to move to the Number of Rows box, and then use the spin box arrow to specify **6** rows. Select **OK**. PowerPoint creates the table in the content area. Notice that formats specified by the current theme are applied to the table.
  7. Select in the first table cell in the top row and type **Location**. Press **Tab** to move to the next cell and type **Site Study Complete**. Press **Tab** to move to the third cell in the row and type **Nearest Competing ATM**.
  8. Type the following information in the remaining table cells, pressing **Tab** to move from cell to cell (do not press Tab after the last entry or you will insert a new row). Your table should resemble Figure 5-3 when you complete it.
- | Spring Street Cineplex | Yes | More than two miles |
|------------------------|-----|---------------------|
| Park Avenue BIG Foods  | No  | Three blocks        |
| Market Square          | Yes | One block           |
| Center City Arena      | Yes | One block           |
| State Street College   | No  | Half a mile         |

**Figure 5-3**

The table with data typed in it

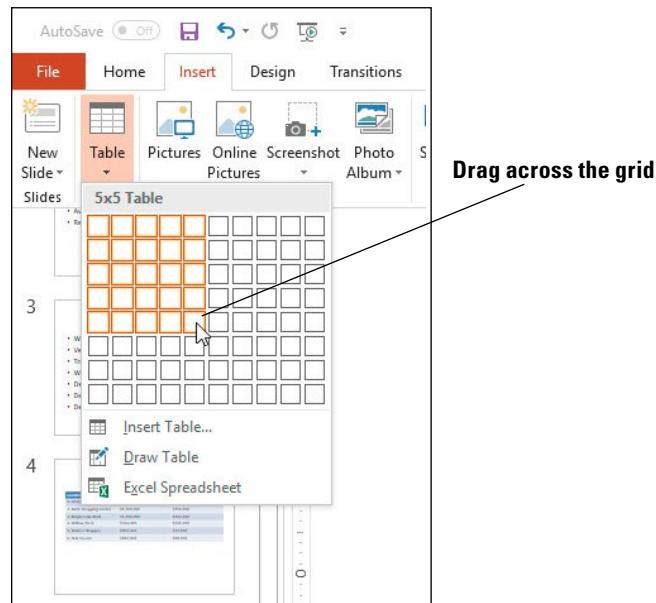
## Proposed ATM Locations

| Location               | Site Study Complete | Nearest Competing ATM |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Spring Street Cineplex | Yes                 | More than two miles   |
| Park Avenue BIG Foods  | No                  | Three blocks          |
| Market Square          | Yes                 | One block             |
| Center City Arena      | Yes                 | One block             |
| State Street College   | No                  | Half a mile           |

9. Insert a new slide with the **Title and Content** layout at the end of the presentation, and select to display the new slide.
10. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the Tables group, select **Table** to display the Insert Table menu and grid.
11. Drag across the grid to select a **5x5** block (Figure 5-4) and then release the mouse button to create the table.

**Figure 5-4**

Use the Table button to select a 5x5 block



12. Delete the new slide on which you just created the table.

13. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Drawing a Table

Drawing a table enables you to create a table with different row and column sizes, and with different numbers of rows per column (or columns per row). In this exercise, you will draw a table.

### STEP BY STEP

### Draw a Table

**GET READY. USE** the *ATMs Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Insert a new slide at the end of the presentation with the **Title Only** layout.
2. Select the **Insert** tab, select the **Table** button to open the Table menu, and then select **Draw Table**. The mouse pointer changes to a pencil.
3. Select and drag the mouse pointer to draw a frame approximately 3" high and the same width as the slide's title placeholder box. When you release the mouse button, the new table (with just one large cell) appears, and the Table Tools Design tab is displayed.
4. On the Table Tools Design tab, in the Draw Borders group, select **Draw Table**. The mouse pointer becomes a pencil again.
5. Click and drag to draw a horizontal line that divides the table horizontally through the middle of the table. A dotted horizontal line appears. Release the mouse button to accept it.

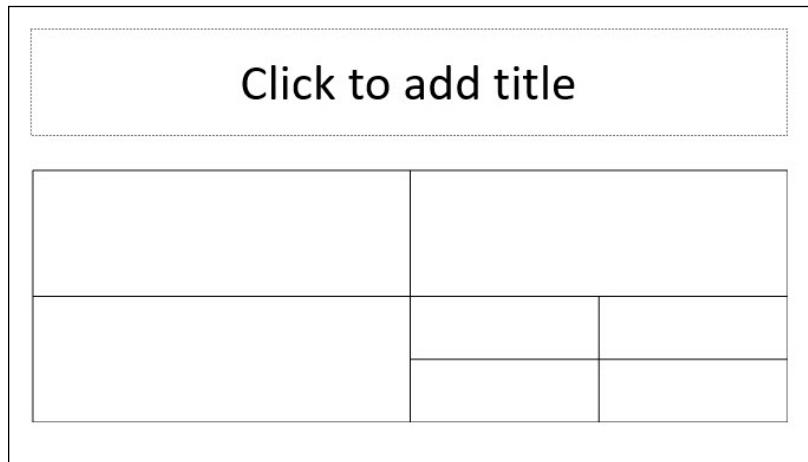
#### Take Note

Drag to draw the lines starting slightly inside the border rather than on the border's edge. If you start dragging too close to the border, PowerPoint creates a new table frame rather than adding lines to the existing table. If this happens, select Undo in the Quick Access Toolbar and try again.

6. The pencil mouse pointer should remain on; if it turns itself off, select the **Draw Table** button to enable it again.
7. Draw a vertical line through the middle of the table to divide it vertically.
8. Draw another vertical line that divides only the lower-right cell of the table vertically.
9. Draw another horizontal line that divides only the lower-right cells of the table horizontally.
10. Press **Esc** to turn off the pencil cursor on the mouse pointer. Click outside of the table to deselect it. Figure 5-5 shows the completed table.

**Figure 5-5**

A drawn table



11. Type the text shown in Figure 5-6 into the slide's title placeholder and into the table.  
You will format this table later in the lesson.

**Figure 5-6**

The table with text added

| Team Leaders |       |         |
|--------------|-------|---------|
| Division     | Name  |         |
| Eastern      | Jesus | Santoro |
|              | Lily  | Mullins |

12. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## IMPORTING TABLES FROM EXTERNAL SOURCES

Microsoft Office 2016 allows a great deal of integration among its programs. If you need to show numerical data on a slide, for example, you can insert an Excel worksheet directly on the slide and use it to manipulate data just as you would in Excel.

### Using an Excel Worksheet in PowerPoint

Inserting an Excel **worksheet** (a spreadsheet from an Excel **workbook**) in a PowerPoint presentation gives you access to all of Excel's data manipulation and formatting tools. If you want to show Excel data on a slide and have not yet created the worksheet, it makes sense to create the worksheet directly on the PowerPoint slide. A worksheet you insert in this way is **embedded** on the slide. This means it is stored within the PowerPoint presentation but can be edited using the tools of its source application, Excel.

When you insert a worksheet using the Excel Spreadsheet command, the worksheet consists of only four visible cells. Drag the bottom or side sizing handle (or the lower-right corner handle) to reveal more cells. When you have finished inserting data, use these handles to adjust the border to hide empty cells that would otherwise show on the PowerPoint slide.

You can also resize a worksheet object by selecting it once to display the container border, then dragging a bottom, side, or corner of the placeholder. This action enlarges or reduces the object itself; however, it does not change the font size of the embedded data even though the text may seem larger. You can edit an embedded worksheet at any time by double-clicking the worksheet object to open it in Excel. You can remove the object by selecting it once to display the container border and then pressing Delete.

In this exercise, you will insert an Excel worksheet in a PowerPoint presentation. In some ways the worksheet is like a table; in other ways it differs. You will notice the differences as you work through the exercise.

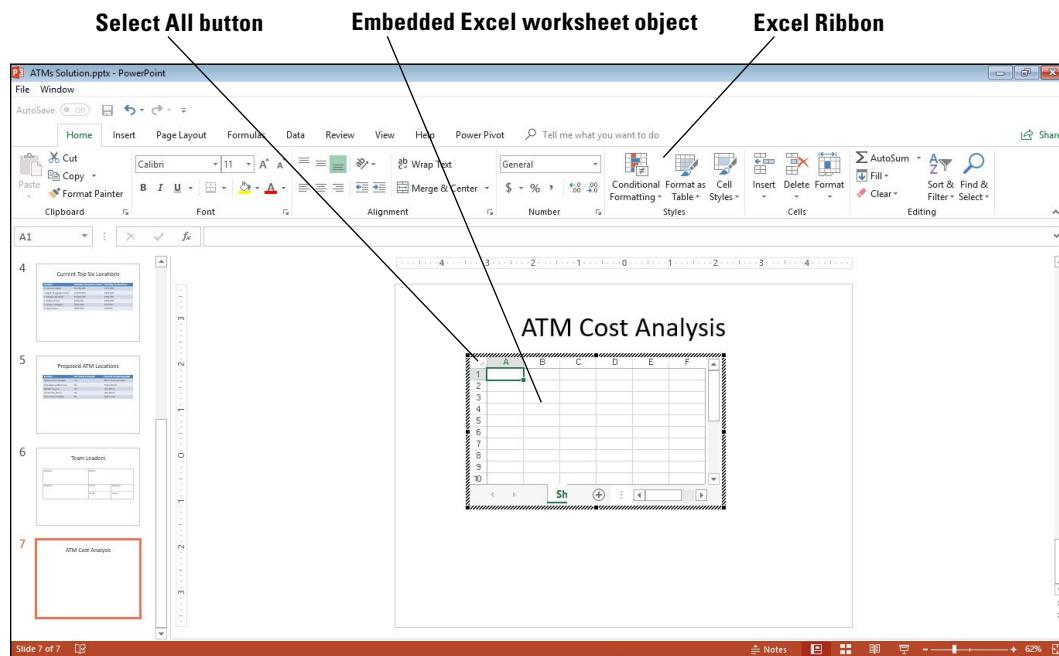
**STEP BY STEP****Insert an Excel Worksheet**

**GET READY. USE** the *ATMs Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Insert a new slide at the end of the presentation with the **Title Only** layout.
2. Type the slide title **ATM Cost Analysis**.
3. Click away from the title text box, select the **Insert** tab, select the **Table** button, and then select **Excel Spreadsheet**. PowerPoint creates a small Excel worksheet on the slide. Note that the Excel Ribbon replaces the PowerPoint Ribbon, but the title bar still displays *ATMs Solution.pptx*.
4. Resize the worksheet object by dragging the lower-right corner handle diagonally, down and to the right, to display columns A through F and rows 1 through 10 (Figure 5-7).

**Figure 5-7**

A new Excel worksheet object on a slide

**Take Note**

When an Excel worksheet is open on the slide, you are actually working in Excel. To return to PowerPoint, click outside the worksheet object.

5. Select the **Select All** button in the upper-left corner of the worksheet, where the column headers and row headers intersect. The entire worksheet is selected.
6. On the Home tab, select the Font Size **drop-down arrow** and select **16**.
7. Type data in the worksheet cells, as shown in Figure 5-8. To move between cells, use the arrow keys on the keyboard or press **Tab**. To adjust column widths, position the pointer on the border between column headings so the pointer turns into a two-headed arrow and drag to the right until all data appears in the column. The overall size of the embedded Excel spreadsheet expands as needed when you widen the columns.
8. Select cell **F5** and type the following formula: **=E5-SUM(B5:D5)**. This formula sums the values in B5, C5, and D5 and then subtracts that total from the value in E5.
9. Press **Enter** to complete the formula.
10. Select cell **F5** and then the **Copy** button on the Home tab. Select cells **F6** through **F9**, and then choose the **Paste** button on the Home tab to paste the formula in each selected cell. Press **Esc** to cancel the marquee in cell F5.

**Figure 5-8**

Type the data as shown

### ATM Cost Analysis

|    | A              | B            | C           | D     | E          | F        |
|----|----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|------------|----------|
| 1  | Woodgrove Bank |              |             |       |            |          |
| 2  | Cost Analysis  |              |             |       |            |          |
| 3  |                |              |             |       |            |          |
| 4  | Model          | Installation | Maintenance | Lease | Revenue    | Net Cost |
| 5  | 501            | 32000        | 8000        | 3000  | \$ 450,000 |          |
| 6  | 601            | 39000        | 9100        | 4200  | \$ 613,000 |          |
| 7  | 701            | 45000        | 11000       | 5400  | \$ 765,000 |          |
| 8  | 801            | 51000        | 13500       | 7200  | \$ 986,000 |          |
| 9  | 901            | 56000        | 15000       | 12000 | \$ 170,000 |          |
| 10 |                |              |             |       |            |          |

Sheet1

11. Click and drag over the range **B5:F9** to select those cells. Then select the **Accounting Number Format** button in the Number group on the Home tab to apply a currency format to the selected cells. (Do not worry if some of the cells fill up with # signs.)
12. With B5:F9 still selected, choose the **Decrease Decimal** button in the Number group twice to remove the decimal points and trailing zeros for the numbers.
13. Widen the columns as needed so that there are no ##### entries in any of the cells.
14. Select cell **A1** and change the font size to **20**.
15. Click outside the worksheet to return to PowerPoint. Your slide should resemble Figure 5-9. You may need to resize and/or reposition the object to center it on the slide.

**Figure 5-9**

The completed Excel worksheet embedded on a slide

**ATM Cost Analysis**

20-point text      Values in this column were calculated by functions

| Woodgrove Bank |       |              |             |           |            |            |
|----------------|-------|--------------|-------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| Cost Analysis  |       |              |             |           |            |            |
|                | Model | Installation | Maintenance | Lease     | Revenue    | Net Cost   |
|                | 501   | \$ 32,000    | \$ 8,000    | \$ 3,000  | \$ 450,000 | \$ 407,000 |
|                | 601   | \$ 39,000    | \$ 9,100    | \$ 4,200  | \$ 613,000 | \$ 560,700 |
|                | 701   | \$ 45,000    | \$ 11,000   | \$ 5,400  | \$ 765,000 | \$ 703,600 |
|                | 801   | \$ 51,000    | \$ 13,500   | \$ 7,200  | \$ 986,000 | \$ 914,300 |
|                | 901   | \$ 56,000    | \$ 15,000   | \$ 12,000 | \$ 170,000 | \$ 87,000  |

Accounting format with no decimal places

16. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

#### Take Note

You know a worksheet is open and ready to edit in Excel when it displays the heavy hatched border and the Excel Ribbon, as shown in Figure 5-7.

**STEP BY STEP****Paste Tables from Excel and Word**

**GET READY. USE** the **ATMs Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Insert a new slide at the end of the presentation with the **Title Only** layout.
2. Type the slide title **ATM Total Transactions**.
3. Click away from the title text box.
4. **LAUNCH** Word and **OPEN** the **ATM Total Transactions.docx** document from the data files for this lesson.
5. Press **Ctrl+A** to select all of the text in the Word document. Select the **Copy** button on the Home tab.
6. Switch to the **ATMs Solution** presentation and select the **Paste** button on the Home tab. The table from Microsoft Word is inserted into the PowerPoint presentation using the current theme formatting.
7. Select **Undo** in the Quick Access Toolbar (or press **Ctrl+Z**) to remove the table you just inserted.
8. **LAUNCH** Excel and **OPEN** the **ATM Total Transactions.xlsx** workbook from the data files for this lesson.
9. Select cells **A1:D7**. Select the **Copy** button on the Home tab.
10. Switch to the **ATMs Solution** presentation and select the **Paste** button on the Home tab. The table from Microsoft Excel is inserted into the PowerPoint presentation. Note that the theme's formatting isn't applied in this case.
11. **SAVE** the presentation. **CLOSE** Word and Excel.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**MODIFYING TABLE LAYOUT**

It is often necessary to modify the layout as you work with a table. For example, you may need to add or delete rows or columns, move data in the table, adjust column widths, or merge or split table cells.

**Take Note**

The steps described in this section may not work the same on tables inserted using the Excel spreadsheet function.

**Adding Rows and Columns**

One of the most common reasons to change a table's structure is to add data to or remove data from the table. You will learn in this exercise that you can easily insert rows and columns in PowerPoint tables to keep data accurate and up to date. In the following exercise, you will add a row and a column to a table.

**STEP BY STEP****Add a Row and a Column**

**GET READY. USE** the **ATMs Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 6** (the *Team Leaders* slide).
2. Select at the end of the word **Mullins** in the last cell and press **Tab**. A new row appears.
3. In the new row, type **Western** in the first column, **Emil** in the second column, and **Montez** in the third column.
4. Select in the cell containing **Eastern**. Select the **Table Tools Layout** tab, and then in the Rows & Columns group, select **Insert Above**. A new blank row appears above that cell's row.

5. Drag the lower border of the first row upward, decreasing that row's height as much as possible. (The text within that row prevents the height from being smaller than will accommodate that text.)
6. In the new row, type **Northern** in the first column, **Kristie** in the second column, and **Walters** in the third column. Your results should resemble Figure 5-10.

The screenshot shows a Microsoft PowerPoint slide titled "Team Leaders". The table has three columns: "Division", "Name", and "Name". A new row has been inserted above the first row, which now contains "Northern", "Kristie", and "Walters". The "Insert Above" button is highlighted in the ribbon. The table structure is as follows:

| Division | Name    | Name    |
|----------|---------|---------|
| Northern | Kristie | Walters |
| Eastern  | Jesus   | Santoro |
|          | Lily    | Mullins |
| Western  | Emil    | Montez  |

**Figure 5-10**

Adding a row between two existing rows

7. Click and drag across all the cells in the Division column to select that column. You can also place your cursor above the column until it becomes an arrow to select the whole column.
8. On the Table Tools Layout tab, select **Insert Right**. A new blank column appears.
9. In the new column, type the data shown in Figure 5-11. If the table becomes so tall that it overruns the bottom of the slide, move the table upward on the slide as needed by dragging its outer border.

The screenshot shows the same "Team Leaders" table as Figure 5-10, but with an additional column "States" added to the right of the "Division" column. The table structure is as follows:

| Division | States   | Name    | Name    |
|----------|--|---------|---------|
| Northern | Michigan<br>Nebraska<br>North Dakota<br>Wisconsin  | Kristie | Walters |
| Eastern  | Connecticut<br>Maine<br>New Hampshire<br>New Jersey<br>New York<br>Rhode Island<br>Vermont | Jesus   | Santoro |
|          |  | Lily    | Mullins |
| Western  | Arizona<br>California<br>New Mexico  | Emil    | Montez  |

**Figure 5-11**

Adding a new column

**10. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

To add a new row at the bottom of a table, simply move into the last cell of the table (bottom right) and press Tab. Alternatively, the commands in the Rows & Columns group on the Table Tools Layout tab make it easy to insert new rows and columns exactly where you want them in the table. Select in a cell near where you want to add the row or column and then select the appropriate button on the tab.

## Deleting Rows or Columns

When you delete rows and columns, the table automatically resizes to account for the removal of the data. Note, however, that columns do not automatically resize to fill the area previously occupied by a column. After removing columns, you may need to resize the remaining columns in the table to adjust space. In this exercise, you will delete a column and a row.

### STEP BY STEP

### Delete Rows or Columns

**GET READY. USE** the *ATMs Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On slide 6, select in the upper-left cell (*Division*).
2. On the Table Tools Layout tab, in the Rows & Columns group, select the **Delete** button and then select **Delete Columns**. The first column is deleted.
3. Select the **Undo** button on the Quick Access Toolbar to undo the Delete operation.
4. Select in the lower-left cell (*Western*).
5. On the Table Tools Layout tab, select the **Delete** button and then select **Delete Rows**. The bottom row is deleted.
6. Select the **Undo** button on the Quick Access Toolbar to undo the Delete operation.
7. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## Moving Rows and Columns

Move rows and columns when you need to reorder data. You can use drag and drop or the Cut and Paste commands to move row or column data into a new, blank row or column. In this exercise, you will insert a new column and then move content into it.

### STEP BY STEP

### Move a Column

**GET READY. USE** the *ATMs Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 4**, select in the second column, and on the Table Tools Layout tab, select **Insert Left**. A new column is inserted between the first and second columns.
2. Drag across all the cells in the rightmost column to select them.
3. Drag the selected column and drop it on top of the first cell in the blank column you inserted in step 1. The data from the selected column is moved to the new column, and a blank column remains in the data's previous location.
4. With the second column still selected, press **Ctrl+X** to cut the column's data to the Clipboard. The column disappears entirely. When you use the **Ctrl+X** command to cut all data from a column, a blank column is not left behind as with drag and drop.
5. Select in the first row of the empty column on the right side of the table and press **Ctrl+V** to paste the data into that column. The data is placed into the empty column, and the table returns to having only three columns.
6. Drag the table's frame to re-center it on the slide if needed. (It may be slightly skewed to the left.)

7. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Resizing and Distributing Rows and Columns

Row heights and column widths can be easily resized by dragging or double-clicking cell borders.

Adjust column widths or row heights to eliminate unused space or add space to make table text more readable. Dragging allows you to “eyeball” column widths or row heights so that they are attractive on the slide. Double-clicking on the divider bar between columns allows you to immediately set a column to the width of its widest line. Double-clicking does not adjust row height, however. To resize a row that has been enlarged, drag its bottom border. To make all the rows or columns the same width, you can use the Distribute Rows or Distribute Columns buttons.

In this exercise, you will resize rows and columns in two different ways and distribute the column widths evenly.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Resize and Distribute Rows and Columns

**GET READY. USE** the *ATMs Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 6**. Double-click the vertical border between the first and second columns of the table.
- Take Note      Double-clicking a column border adjusts column width to fit the column’s widest entry.
2. Drag the horizontal border between the Jesus Santoro and Lily Mullins lines in the table upward, so that the Jesus Santoro cells are as short as possible. (If you need to be more precise in resizing, you can use the tools in the Cell Size group on the Table Tools Layout tab to specify exact widths and heights for table cells.)
3. Select in the cell that contains *States*.
4. Select the **Table Tools Layout** tab, and then in the Table Size group, set the value in the Width box to exactly **7"** by selecting the increment arrows or typing over the existing value.
5. In the Cell Size group, set the value in the Width box to exactly **3.1"** by selecting the increment arrows or by typing over the existing value.

**Take Note**      The Width setting in the Table Size group controls the width of the entire table; the Width setting in the Cell Size group controls the width of only the column in which the active cell is located. The active cell is the one containing the insertion point.

6. Drag the outer border of the table to the right as needed to re-center the table beneath the Team Leaders title.
7. Select the entire table by dragging across it.
8. On the Table Tools Layout tab, select the **Distribute Columns** button. Each column becomes the same width.
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Merging and Splitting Table Cells

The Merge Cells and Split Cells commands allow you to adjust how content fits in table cells and to modify the internal structure of a table without increasing or reducing its overall width. By merging cells, you can position content so it spans more than one column or row. When two cells merge, all the content is retained; a paragraph break is inserted between their content.

Use the Split Cells command when you want to divide a single row or column to accommodate additional entries without modifying the remainder of the table. When you split a cell that contains content, the content goes with the leftmost or upper cell; you may choose to move some or all of the content into the new blank cell(s) after the split.

Merging and splitting can modify the internal structure of a table without increasing or reducing its overall width. In this exercise, you will practice merging and splitting table cells.

### STEP BY STEP

### Merge and Split Table Cells

**GET READY. USE** the *ATMs Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 6** and select the two cells containing *Kristie* and *Walters*.
2. On the Table Tools Layout tab, select **Merge Cells**. The two cells become one, and the text from both cells appears in the merged cell separated by a paragraph break.
3. Select at the beginning of the second name (*Walters*) and press **Backspace** to delete the paragraph break between the two names, so they appear on the same line. Press the **Spacebar** once if needed to add a space between the two names.
4. Use the procedures in steps 1-3 to merge each of the other three names (*Jesus Santoro*, *Lily Mullins*, and *Emil Montez*) in the table in the same way.
5. Use the procedures in steps 1-3 to merge the cells containing the two names of the representatives for the Eastern region, and leave each name on a separate line as in Figure 5-12.

**Figure 5-12**

The table after all first and last names have been merged

| Team Leaders |  |                               |
|--------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Division     | States   | Name                          |
| Northern     | Michigan<br>Nebraska<br>North Dakota<br>Wisconsin  | Kristie Walters               |
| Eastern      | Connecticut<br>Maine<br>New Hampshire<br>New Jersey<br>New York<br>Rhode Island<br>Vermont | Jesus Santoro<br>Lily Mullins |
| Western      | Arizona<br>California<br>New Mexico  | Emil Montez                   |

6. Select all three cells that contain state names, and on the Table Tools Layout tab, select **Split Cells**. The Split Cells dialog box opens.
7. In the Number of columns box, type **2** to set the number of columns to 2 if it is not already at that value. In the Number of rows box, type **1** to set the number of rows to 1 if it is not already at that value. Select **OK**.
8. Select the entire table and then select the **Distribute Columns** button on the Table Tools Layout tab to equalize the column widths.
9. For each division, move approximately half of the names from the existing cell to the empty cell to its right (Figure 5-13). You can move the text with either drag and drop or Cut and Paste. Resize the columns as needed to fit the states' names.

**Figure 5-13**

Move some of the state names into the new cells

| Team Leaders |   |                                     |                               |
|--------------|---|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Division     | States  |                                     | Name                          |
| Northern     | Michigan<br>Nebraska                                | North Dakota<br>Wisconsin           | Kristie Walters               |
| Eastern      | Connecticut<br>Maine<br>New Hampshire<br>New Jersey | New York<br>Rhode Island<br>Vermont | Jesus Santoro<br>Lily Mullins |
| Western      | Arizona<br>California                               | New Mexico                          | Emil Montez                   |

Some state names moved to new cells

**10.** **SAVE** the *ATMs Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

## FORMATTING TABLES

PowerPoint provides default formats to all new tables so that they have an appealing appearance. You may want to modify formatting, however, because you do not like the default colors or you want a different appearance. Use the tools on the Table Tools Design and Table Tools Layout tabs to apply new formatting options.

### Changing Table Text Alignment and Orientation

Text can be aligned both vertically and horizontally within a cell. You can also change the text's orientation (rotation) to create visual interest. Use the same tools to align content horizontally in a table cell that you use to align text in a text placeholder. Changing alignment in table cells can improve readability as well as make a table more attractive.

Vertical alignment options control how content appears from the top to the bottom of a cell. The default option is top alignment, but column headings often display better when centered vertically in table cells. When column headings have differing numbers of lines, standard procedure is to align all headings at the bottom.

Use options on the Text Direction menu in the Alignment group of the Table Tools Layout tab to change the orientation of text for a special effect. Vertical text or text that reads from bottom to top makes a unique row header, for example. In this exercise, you will change the text direction and alignment in table cells.

### STEP BY STEP

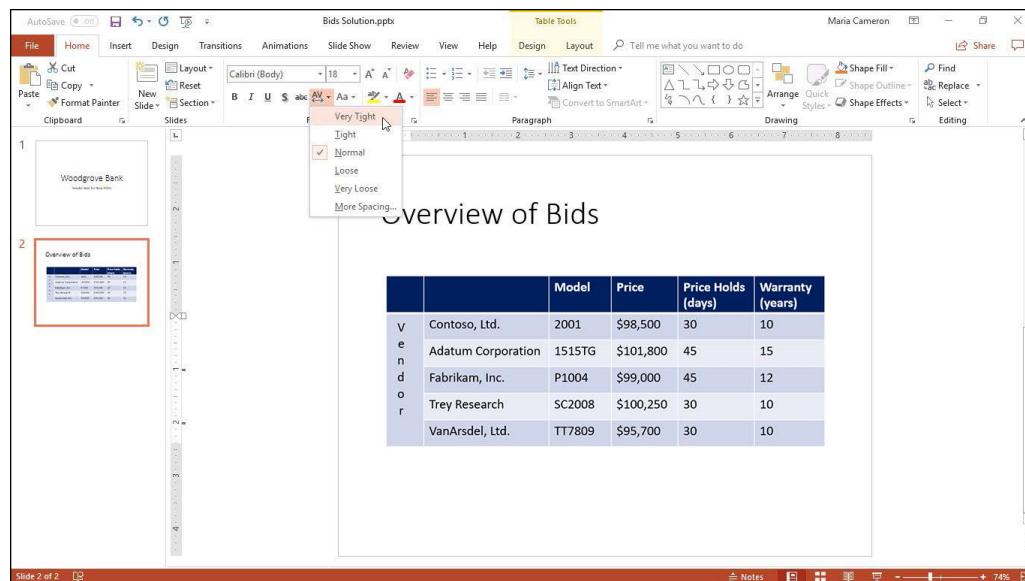
### Align and Orient Text in a Table

**GET READY.** **LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

- 1.** **OPEN** the *Bids* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
- 2.** **SAVE** the presentation as *Bids Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
- 3.** Select **slide 2** and select in the merged cell at the far left of the table.
- 4.** Select the **Table Tools Layout** tab and then select the **Text Direction** button to display a menu of orientation options.
- 5.** Select **Stacked**. This option will stack text with each letter below the previous one.
- 6.** Type **Vendor** in the merged cell. The text stacks in the merged cell.
- 7.** Select the text you just typed. Select the **Home** tab, and then in the Font group, select the **Character Spacing** button and select **Very Tight** (Figure 5-14).

**Figure 5-14**

Stacked text orientation with Very Tight spacing

**Take Note**

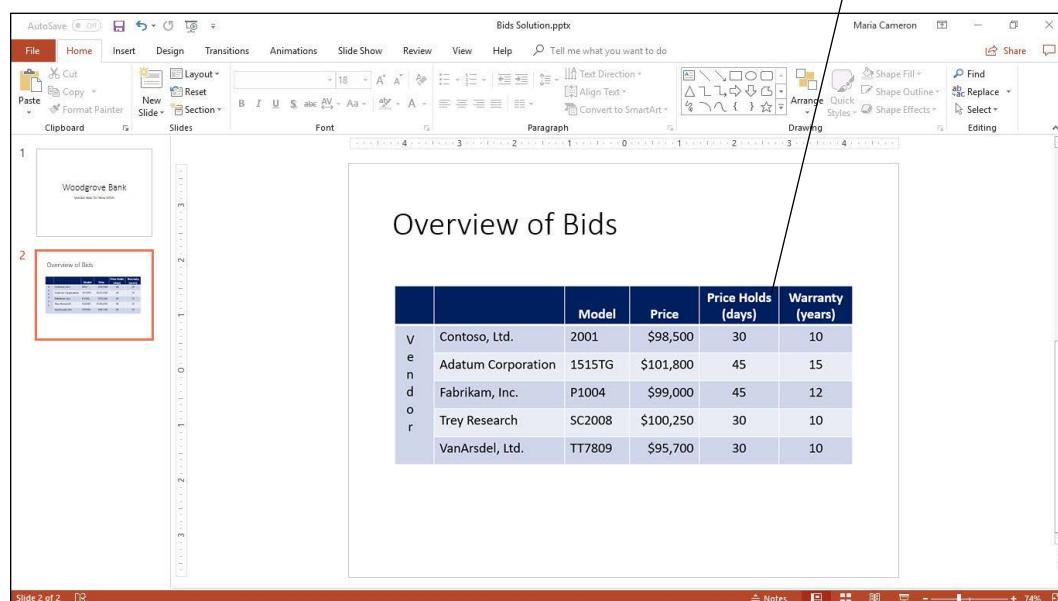
When you move the I-beam pointer over rotated or stacked text, its orientation changes to match the text orientation.

8. With text still selected, select the **Bold** button on the Home tab.
9. Select the cells with numbers in the Price column. Select the **Align Right** button in the Paragraph group to align all numbers in that column along the right side of the cells.
10. Select the cells with numbers in the last two columns. Select the **Center** button on the Home tab to center the contents of those cells.
11. Select all cells in the column header row. Because they have a dark blue fill color, it will not be obvious that they are selected.
12. Select the **Center** button on the Home tab to center the contents of those cells.
13. Select the **Table Tools Layout** tab and then select the **Align Bottom** button in the Alignment group. Click outside of the table to deselect it. All column headings now align at the bottom of the cells (Figure 5-15).

**Figure 5-15**

Set vertical alignment

**Text is bottom-aligned and centered**



14. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Applying a Table Style

PowerPoint tables are formatted by default with a Quick Style based on the current theme colors. You can choose another table style to change color and shading formats. In this exercise, you will apply a table style.

### STEP BY STEP

### Apply a Table Style

**GET READY. USE** the *Bids Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select anywhere in the table on **slide 2** and then select the **Table Tools Design** tab.
2. Select the **More** button in the Table Styles group to display the Table Styles gallery. Note that the table styles are organized into several groups—Best Match for Document, Light, Medium, and Dark.
3. Select the **Themed Style 2 – Accent 6** table style. This style is a colorful alternative, but not exactly what you want.
4. Select the **More** button again and then select the **Medium Style 1 - Accent 6** style, a green and gray combination in the last column of the gallery. Your table should resemble Figure 5-16.

**Figure 5-16**

New style applied to entire table

Overview of Bids

|                            |                    | Model  | Price     | Price Holds (days) | Warranty (years) |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------|-----------|--------------------|------------------|
| V<br>e<br>n<br>d<br>o<br>r | Contoso, Ltd.      | 2001   | \$98,500  | 30                 | 10               |
|                            | Adatum Corporation | 1515TG | \$101,800 | 45                 | 15               |
|                            | Fabrikam, Inc.     | P1004  | \$99,000  | 45                 | 12               |
|                            | Trey Research      | SC2008 | \$100,250 | 30                 | 10               |
|                            | VanArtsdel, Ltd.   | TT7809 | \$95,700  | 30                 | 10               |

5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

Colors available for Table Style formats are controlled by theme. If you apply a Quick Style and then change the theme, the Table Style colors will adjust to those of the new theme.

You may on occasion want to remove all table formatting to present data in a simple grid without shading or border colors. You can remove formatting by selecting Clear Table at the bottom of the Table Styles gallery. Once you have cleared formats, you can reapply them by selecting any table style.

## Turning Table Style Options On or Off

The options in the Table Style Options group on the Table Tools Design tab allow you to adjust what part of a table receives special emphasis. If your table has a row that shows totals of calculations, for example, the Total Row option applies color to that row so it stands out. You can use any number of these options in a single table, or you can deselect all of them for a simpler effect. In this exercise, you will modify the formatting applied by a table style by turning certain options on and off.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Turn Table Style Options On or Off

**GET READY.** USE the *Bids Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Click anywhere in the table to select it if necessary.
2. Select the **Table Tools Design** tab if it is not already displayed.
3. In the Table Style Options group, deselect the **Banded Rows** check box to remove this formatting.
4. Select the **First Column** check box. The first column receives special emphasis.
5. Select the **Banded Columns** check box. Color bands are applied to the columns.
6. **SAVE** the *Bids Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP.** **CLOSE** PowerPoint.

## Knowledge Assessment

### Matching

Match the term in Column 1 to its description in Column 2.

- | Column 1      | Column 2  |
|---------------|---|
| 1. Table      | a. Option you can use to make all rows the same height or all columns the same width          |
| 2. Draw Table | b. Insert data so that it can be edited using its original application                        |
| 3. Merge      | c. An arrangement of columns and rows used to organize data                                   |
| 4. Distribute | d. Option you can use to create a table frame and insert columns and rows where you want them |
| 5. Embed      | e. To combine two or more cells to create a larger cell                                       |

### True/False

Circle **T** if the statement is true or **F** if the statement is false.

- T F** 1. To create a new table, select the Insert Object button and then select the type of table to create.
- T F** 2. By default, a new table is sized to fit the content placeholder in which it was created.
- T F** 3. To edit a worksheet object on a slide, double-click the object to display Excel's tools.
- T F** 4. You must select an entire row before you can insert a new row above or below it.
- T F** 5. Use the Blank Table option to quickly remove all formatting from a table.

## Projects

### Project 5-1: Inserting and Formatting an Excel Table

You are a production manager at Tailspin Toys. You have been asked to give a presentation to senior management about anticipated costs of upgrading machinery in the assembly area. Because you want to sum the costs, you will use an Excel worksheet to present the information.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the *Upgrades* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Upgrades Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2**. Select the **Insert** tab, select the **Table** button, and then select **Excel Spreadsheet**.
4. Drag the lower-right corner handle of the worksheet object to reveal columns A through D and rows 1 through 7. Move the worksheet object below the slide title, centered on the side.
5. Type the following data in the worksheet.

| Machine        | Upgrade         | Cost     | Time Frame |
|----------------|-----------------|----------|------------|
| Conveyor #2    | New belt, drive | \$28,000 | 30 days    |
| Conveyor #3    | Update software | \$5,800  | 14 days    |
| Drill Press #1 | Replace         | \$32,000 | 30 days    |
| Vacuum system  | New pump, lines | \$12,750 | 30 days    |
| Docks #2 - #5  | Doors, motors   | \$14,500 | 10 days    |

6. Select the Excel **Page Layout** tab, select the **Themes** button, and then select **Retrospect** to apply the same theme to the worksheet that your presentation uses.
7. Adjust column widths by dragging or double-clicking column borders to display all data. Widen the overall worksheet object if needed.
8. Select in cell **B7**, type **Total Costs**, and then press **Tab**.
9. Select the **Home** tab, and then in the Editing group, select the **AutoSum** button and press **Enter** to complete the SUM function. The result should be \$93,050.
10. Apply Quick Styles to the worksheet as follows:
  - a. Select the column headings.
  - b. On the Home tab, in the Styles group, select the **Cell Styles** button, and then select the **Accent2** style.
  - c. Select the **Total Costs** cell, select the **Cell Styles** button, and select the **Accent1** style.
  - d. Select the cell that contains the sum of costs, select the **Cell Styles** button, and then select the **Total** style.
  - e. Apply bold formatting to the column headings and the **Total Costs** cell.
11. Select the **Select All** button at the top-left corner of the worksheet object, select the Font Size **drop-down arrow**, and then select **20**. Adjust column widths again if necessary to display all data.
12. Select the entries in the Time Frame column and then select the **Center** button.
13. Click outside the worksheet twice to review your changes. Re-center the table on the slide, if necessary.
14. **SAVE** the *Upgrades Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

## Project 5-2: Inserting a Table

You are an operations manager for Fabrikam, Inc. You have been asked to give a presentation to department heads about scheduled maintenance of power substations around the city. In this project, you will use a table to present the maintenance schedule.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the *Power* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Power Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 3**. Insert a table with two columns and seven rows. Move the table below the slide title, centered on the side.
4. Apply the **Themed Style 2 - Accent 6** table style to the table.
5. Type the following information in the table:

| Substation | Week of     |
|------------|-------------|
| Eastland   | July 11     |
| Downtown   | October 3   |
| Uptown     | June 6      |
| Parkland   | May 23      |
| Midtown    | July 25     |
| Broadway   | December 11 |

6. In the Table Style Options group, select the **First Column** check box.
7. Select the **Design** tab, and then in the Variants group, select the **More** button, point to **Fonts**, and select **Calibri**.
8. Delete the last row of the table.
9. Rearrange the rows so that the dates in the second column are in chronological order. Re-center the table on the slide, if necessary.

**Take Note** Create a new blank row, and use it as a temporary holding area when moving rows and then delete the blank row when you are finished.

10. **SAVE** the *Power Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

# Using Charts in a Presentation

# 6

## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

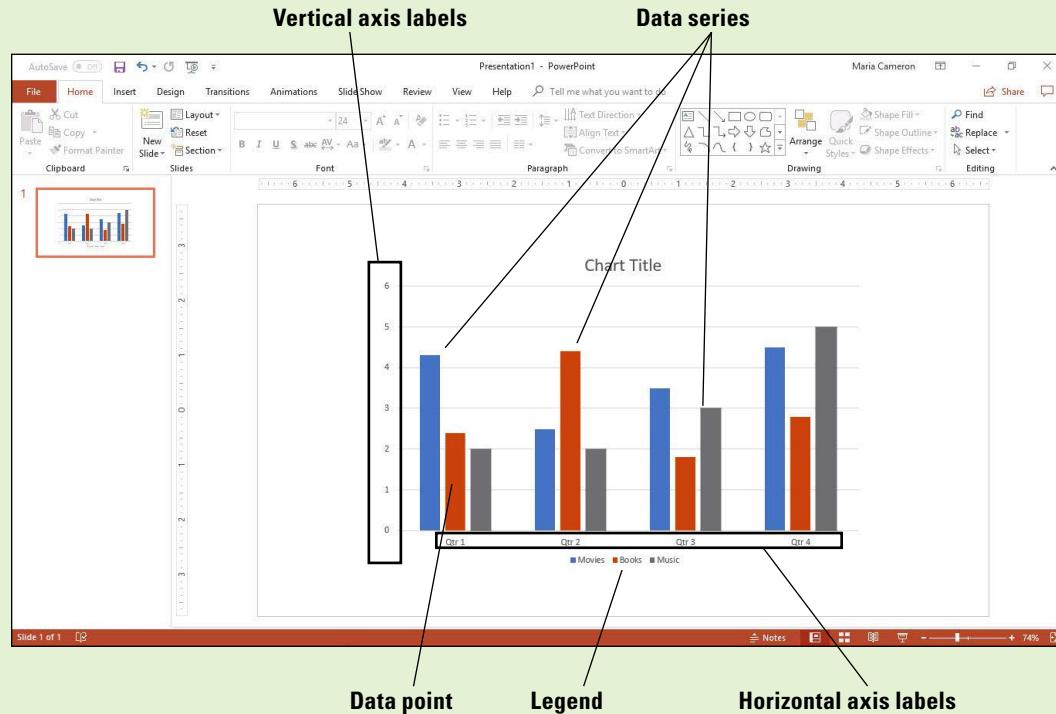
| Skill                             | Exam Objective                    | Objective Number |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| Building Charts                   | Create a chart<br>Import a chart  | 3.2.1<br>3.2.2   |
| Modifying the Chart Type and Data | Change the Chart Type             | 3.2.3            |
| Modifying Chart Elements          | Add a legend to a chart           | 3.2.4            |
| Formatting a Chart                | Change the chart style of a chart | 3.2.5            |

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### A PowerPoint Chart

Charts can help your audience understand relationships among numerical values. Figure 6-1 shows a sample PowerPoint chart with some standard chart features labeled.

**Figure 6-1**  
Components of a chart



A chart can compare multiple data series (Figure 6-1) with each series represented by a different color or pattern. A **legend** explains what each color represents. Category axis labels explain what the groupings of bars represent (on the horizontal axis) and vertical axis labels explain the meaning of the numeric values (on the vertical axis). Optional elements such as gridlines behind the chart help make the chart more readable.

## BUILDING CHARTS

**Charts** are visual representations of numerical data. Chart features such as columns, bars, lines, or pie slices make it easy to understand trends or compare values. Once you have created a chart in PowerPoint, you can easily modify the data on which the chart is based, choose a different type of chart to display the data, change the layout of the chart, and modify its formats.

### Inserting a Chart from a Content Placeholder

Excel opens when you create a chart in PowerPoint and you enter the data in Excel that you want to plot on the chart. Then when you return to PowerPoint, the chart appears with the data presented. As with tables and other objects, such as diagrams and pictures, the easiest way to insert a chart is to select the Insert Chart icon in any content placeholder. PowerPoint guides you the rest of the way to complete the chart. In the following exercise, you will place a chart on a slide using a content placeholder.

#### STEP BY STEP

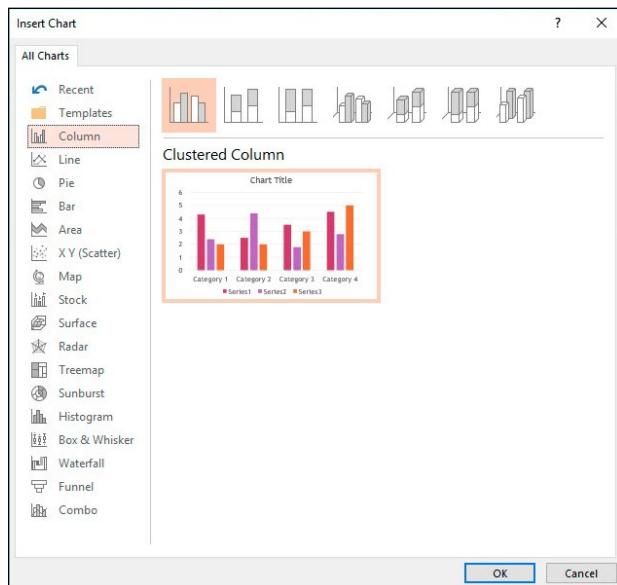
#### Insert a Chart

GET READY. LAUNCH PowerPoint 2016.

1. OPEN the *Revenues* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. SAVE the presentation as *Revenues Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 3**. Select the **Insert Chart** icon at the top center of the content placeholder. The Insert Chart dialog box opens (Figure 6-2), showing chart types and subtypes.

**Figure 6-2**

Select a chart type and subtype



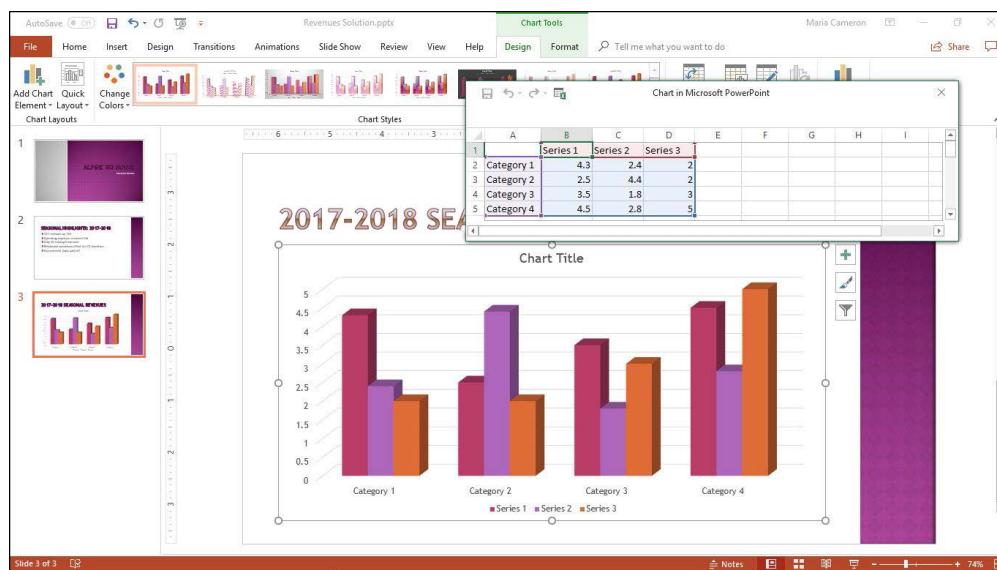
#### Take Note

PowerPoint 2016 offers six new chart types that you can use to help visualize data: Treemap, Sunburst, Histogram, Box & Whisker, Waterfall, and Funnel.

4. Select the **3-D Clustered Column** chart subtype (the fourth from the left in the row of icons across the top of the dialog box).
5. Select **OK**. A Chart in Microsoft PowerPoint window opens on top of the PowerPoint window containing the sample data on which the chart is based (Figure 6-3). It is similar to an Excel worksheet. Notice the bright-blue border that surrounds the data range. This range border is used to indicate the data series being charted.

**Figure 6-3**

A worksheet opens for entering the data for the chart



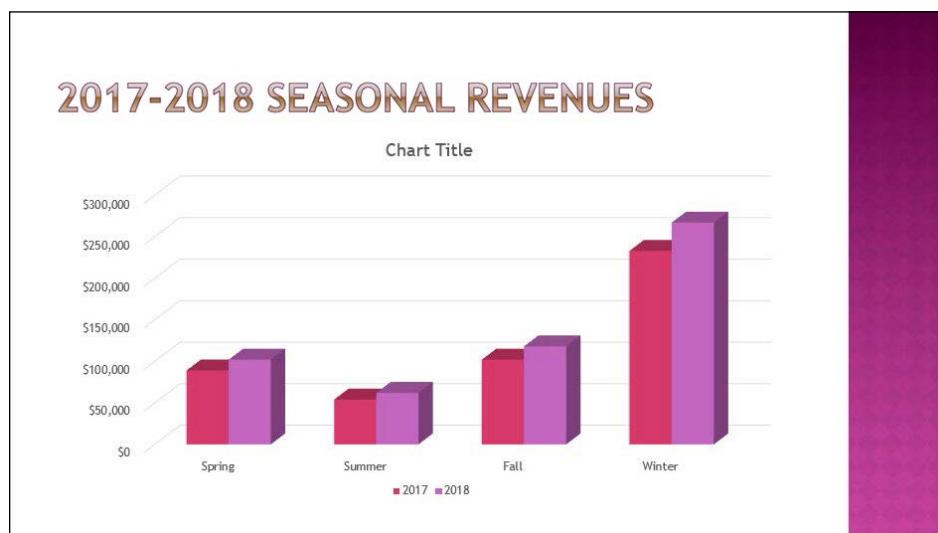
6. Drag the marker in the bottom-right corner of the range border so that the range includes only cells **A1:C5**.
7. Select **Column D**, right-click, and then select **Delete** in the shortcut menu to clear the selected cells. (If you just press Delete, it leaves a placeholder for the Column, which appears in your chart.)
8. Select cell **B1** and type **2017**, replacing the current entry. Then press **Tab** to move to cell **C1**. Type **2018** and press **Enter**.
9. Beginning in cell **A2**, type the following data in the worksheet window to complete the chart:

|               |                  |                  |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Spring</b> | <b>\$89,000</b>  | <b>\$102,000</b> |
| <b>Summer</b> | <b>\$54,000</b>  | <b>\$62,000</b>  |
| <b>Fall</b>   | <b>\$102,000</b> | <b>\$118,000</b> |
| <b>Winter</b> | <b>\$233,000</b> | <b>\$267,000</b> |

10. **CLOSE** the worksheet window and click away from the chart. The chart appears with the data you entered (Figure 6-4).

**Figure 6-4**

The completed chart



11. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

As you saw in the previous exercise, a worksheet window opens to allow you to insert the data that creates the chart. You can edit the worksheet data any time you want by selecting the Edit Data button on PowerPoint's Chart Tools Design tab (which appears when a chart is selected). When you select Edit Data in the Data group, a menu appears with options for you to edit the data in PowerPoint (Edit Data) or in Excel (Edit Data in Excel).

If you want to use data from an existing Excel workbook, open that workbook and Copy and Paste the data into the sheet created for the chart's data. Adjust the range border as needed.

## Importing a Chart from Excel

You can create the chart in Excel and then Copy the completed chart to PowerPoint using the Clipboard. Excel's charting tools are virtually identical to those in PowerPoint, so there is little reason to create the chart in Excel first, but if the chart already exists in Excel, copying it to PowerPoint can save some time.

You can also paste charts from Microsoft Word. If you have a chart in Word that you want to use, just Copy and Paste the chart into PowerPoint. The data will transfer with the chart. In addition, you can Copy and Paste the data from the Word sheet into the sheet created for the chart's data in PowerPoint.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Import an Excel Chart

**GET READY.** USE the **Revenues Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. With slide 3 selected, select **New Slide** on the Home tab. A new slide appears at the end of the presentation.
2. **LAUNCH** Microsoft Excel and then **OPEN** the **Beverages.xlsx** workbook from the data files for this lesson. Select the **chart** and press **Ctrl+C** to copy it to the Clipboard.
3. Switch to the **Revenues Solution** presentation and select the outer frame of the content placeholder box on slide 4. Click twice on it to make sure the placeholder box itself is selected.
4. Press **Ctrl+V** to paste the chart into the placeholder.
5. Select in the slide's title placeholder box and type **Beverage Sales**.
6. Select the text **Beverage Sales** inside the chart so handles display around it. Press **Delete**. The chart title is deleted and the pie chart increases in size a little.
7. Switch to Excel and **CLOSE** Excel.
8. In PowerPoint, **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## Resizing and Moving a Chart

In addition to moving the individual elements within a chart, you can move and resize the chart itself. The white circles on the chart's border are sizing handles. You can resize any object by dragging a side or corner handle of its container. Note that if you drag a side handle, you may "stretch" the container, distorting its contents. Hold down Shift and drag a corner handle to maintain the height-width ratio (the aspect ratio). You can move any object, including a chart, by dragging it by its border. When the four-headed pointer displays, just click and drag. In this exercise, you will resize and move a chart.

**STEP BY STEP****Resize and Move a Chart**

**GET READY.** USE the *Revenues Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and select the **chart**.
2. Position the pointer on the lower-right corner of the chart's frame, so the mouse pointer becomes a double-headed arrow.
3. Drag inward to decrease the size of the chart by about 2" in width.

**Take Note**

Optionally, you can hold down Shift while resizing to maintain the aspect ratio.

4. Position the pointer anywhere on the chart's frame except on one of the sizing handles. The mouse pointer becomes a four-headed arrow.
5. Drag to reposition the chart so that it is centered attractively on the slide. Click outside of the chart.
6. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**MODIFYING THE CHART TYPE AND DATA**

It is not uncommon to have to modify a chart after you have created it. You can change the data on which the chart is based at any time or change the way the data is plotted. You can also add or remove chart elements as desired to customize your chart.

**Choosing a Different Chart Type**

After creating a chart, you may choose to change its type and/or its layout. If you decide that the chart type you have chosen does not display the data the way you want, you can choose a different chart type or subtype.

Different chart types display the data series differently. A **data series** consists of all the data points for a particular category, such as all the points for each season's 2017 values. A data point, sometimes called a **data marker**, is one point in a series. The default chart type is a Column chart. In this exercise, you will change a chart's type.

**STEP BY STEP****Choose a Different Chart Type**

**GET READY.** USE the *Revenues Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On slide 3, select the **chart**. Select the **Chart Tools Design** tab and then in the Type group, select the **Change Chart Type** button. The Change Chart Type dialog box opens showing the same chart types that appeared when you first created the chart.
2. In the list of chart types on the left, select **Bar**.
3. Select the **3-D Clustered Bar** subtype and then select **OK**. The columns change to horizontal bars (Figure 6-5).

**Figure 6-5**

A new chart type applied



4. **SAVE** the *Revenues Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.



### Troubleshooting

Changing from a 2-D chart type to a 3-D chart type can yield unexpected results. For some chart types, PowerPoint may display the new chart type in a rotated perspective view that you might not like. It is best to decide when you create the original chart whether you want it to use 2-D or 3-D and then stick with those dimensions when making any change to the chart type.

### Editing a Chart's Data

Chart data remains “live” as long as the chart remains on the slide. You can reopen the chart worksheet at any time to adjust the data. Changes you make to the chart worksheet window are immediately reflected on the PowerPoint chart. Use the Edit Data button to reactivate the worksheet window and make your changes there. You can also use the Switch Row/Column button to plot the data on different axes.

Before you can edit chart data, you must select it. To select an individual cell in the data sheet, select that cell. To select ranges of cells, drag across them, or select a column or row header to select the entire row or column. In the following exercise, you will practice editing chart data, including selecting individual cells and entire columns.

### STEP BY STEP

### Edit a Chart's Data

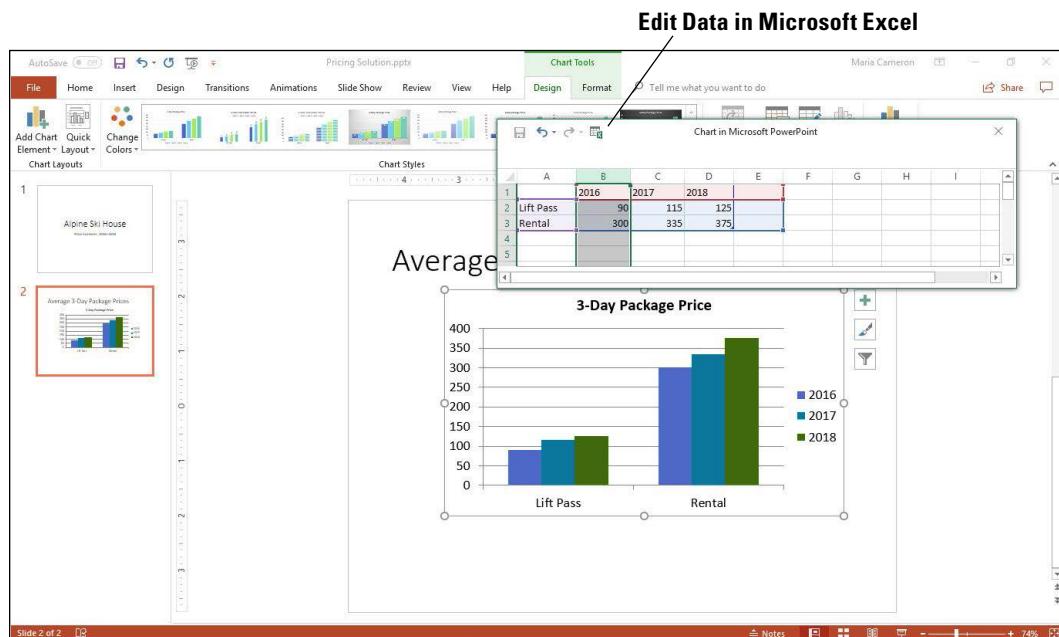
**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the *Pricing* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Pricing Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.  
Examine the information on the slides and notice that the years on the title slide do not match up with the four years displayed on the chart.
3. Select the chart in **slide 2**.

4. Select the **Chart Tools Design** tab and then select the **Edit Data** button in the Data group. The worksheet window opens.
5. Select cell **B1** and type **2015**, replacing the current entry there. Then press **Tab** to move to cell **C1** and type **2016**, replacing the current entry. Repeat the process for **D1 (2017)** and **E1 (2018)**.
6. Select the **column B** column header (for 2015 data) to select the entire column and then right-click the column and select **Delete**. The data in the worksheet should now resemble Figure 6-6.

**Figure 6-6**

The edited data for the chart



7. Select the **Edit Data in Microsoft Excel** icon on the worksheet window's toolbar (refer to Figure 6-6). The data opens in Excel.
8. Select cell **A3** and type **Equipment Rental**, replacing the current entry there.
9. **CLOSE** the Excel window and return to PowerPoint. Select the chart again if it is not already selected.
10. If the **Switch Row/Column** button is available on the Chart Tools Design tab, select it to switch rows and columns and then continue to step 14. If the button is not available, do the following to switch rows and columns:
  11. On the Chart Tools Design tab, select the **Select Data** button. The Select Data Source dialog box opens.
  12. Select the **Switch Row/Column** button in the dialog box.
  13. Select **OK**.
14. On the Chart Tools Design tab, select the **Switch Row/Column** button to switch the rows and columns back to their original settings. (Even if the button was unavailable in step 10, it will be available now.)
15. **CLOSE** the worksheet window if it is open.
16. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## MODIFYING CHART ELEMENTS

**Chart elements** are the optional parts of a chart, such as the legend, title, data labels, data table, axes, axis labels, and so on. You can apply Quick Layouts that apply preset combinations of these elements and you can turn each element type on or off individually and apply different options to it.

### Applying and Modifying a Quick Layout

PowerPoint supplies several preformatted chart layouts that you can apply quickly to modify the default layout. These layouts may adjust the position of features, such as the legend, or add chart components such as titles and data labels. In this exercise, you will choose a different chart layout.

PowerPoint charts can be customized in a variety of ways by adding and removing chart elements such as titles, labels, and gridlines. If you do not want to take the time to add elements, PowerPoint's quick layouts can provide you with some standard appearance options to choose from. You will learn how to add elements yourself later in this lesson.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Apply and Modify a Quick Layout

**GET READY.** USE the *Pricing Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

- With the chart on slide 2 selected, choose the **Quick Layout** button on the Chart Tools Design tab. The Chart Layout gallery displays.

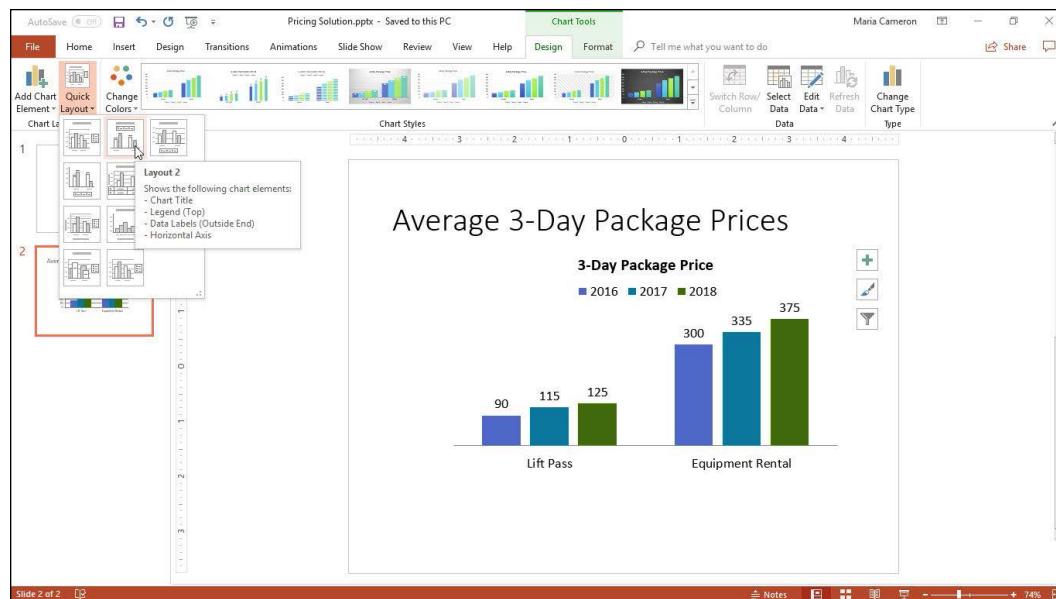
#### Take Note

The thumbnails in the Chart Layout gallery show in miniature the new layout and elements of the chart.

- Point to **Layout 2** in the gallery to display a preview of this layout in the chart (Figure 6-7). Point to other layouts to display their preview in the chart; then select **Layout 2**. The layout is modified to place the legend above the chart and add data labels to each of the bars.

**Figure 6-7**

The chart with Layout 2 applied to it



- On the Chart Tools Design tab, select the **Add Chart Element** button, point to **Chart Title**, and then select **None**. The chart title is removed. (It is not necessary because the slide itself provides a title.)
- SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Working with a Legend

A *legend* is a key that tells what each color or pattern in a chart represents. There are many options available for adding, positioning, and customizing legends.

A legend is a very important chart element, because without it, the audience has no way of knowing what each colored bar, dot, line, or pie slice represents. In this exercise, you will practice adding, modifying, and moving a legend.

### STEP BY STEP

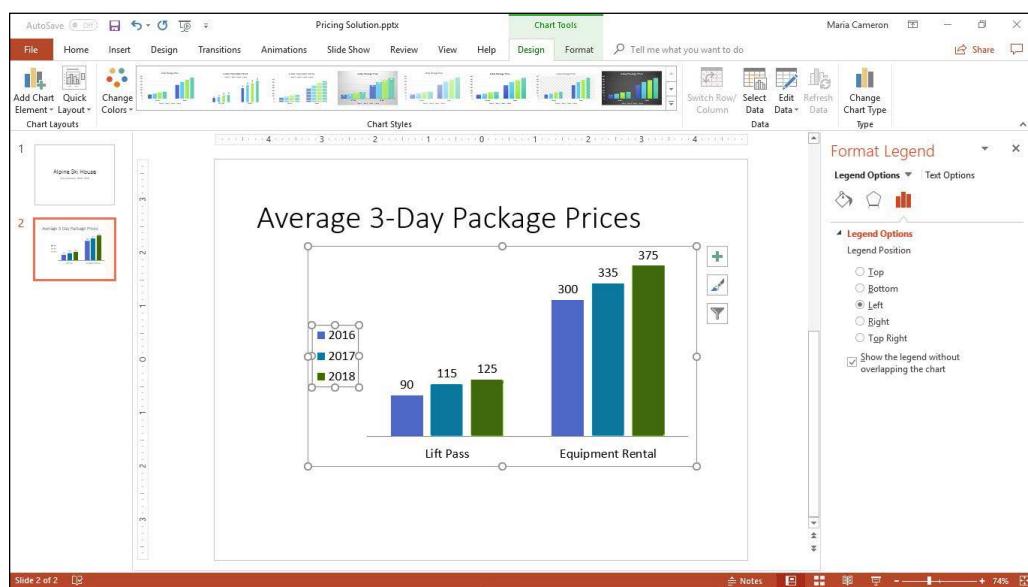
### Work with a Legend

**GET READY.** USE the *Pricing Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

- With the chart on slide 2 selected, choose the **Chart Elements** button (the plus sign) near the upper-right corner of the chart. The Chart Elements list appears.
- Deselect the **Legend** check box. The legend disappears.
- Select the **Legend** check box. The legend reappears to the right of the chart.
- An arrow appears to the right of the **Legend** option in the Chart Elements list. Select the **arrow** to display a submenu and then select **Bottom**. The legend moves below the chart.
- Select the arrow next to **Legend** to redisplay the submenu and then select **More Options**. The Format Legend task pane opens.
- Under **Legend Position**, select **Left**. The legend moves to the left of the chart area (Figure 6-8).

**Figure 6-8**

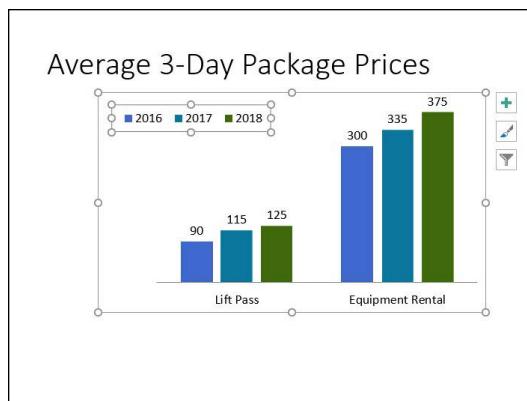
Position the legend to the left using the Format Legend task pane



- CLOSE** the task pane.
- Position the mouse pointer over the border of the legend and drag it to place it in the empty space above the Lift Pass bars.
- Drag the left side selection handle on the legend's frame to widen the legend so that all its content fits on a single line and drag the bottom selection handle to decrease the legend height. Reposition the legend as shown in Figure 6-9.

**Figure 6-9**

Resize the legend frame so the legend appears horizontally



10. On the Chart Tools Design tab, select **Add Chart Element**, point to **Legend**, and then select **Bottom** to move the legend below the chart.
11. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Adding and Deleting Other Chart Elements

Elements such as axis labels, a chart title, and data labels make your chart more informative. Use the tools on the Chart Tools Design tab to turn chart elements on or off or adjust settings for a particular element. The controls for these elements are very similar to the controls for the legend that you learned about in the preceding exercise.

As you saw in the preceding exercise, the Chart Tools Design tab has an Add Chart Element button that opens a menu for controlling chart elements of many different types. Each element of that menu opens a submenu that includes several basic choices (including None) plus a More command that opens a task pane for controlling that element.

You can remove chart elements by choosing None from their submenu, or in some cases by simply selecting the item within the chart to select it and then pressing Delete. In this exercise, you will practice adding and deleting chart elements.

### STEP BY STEP

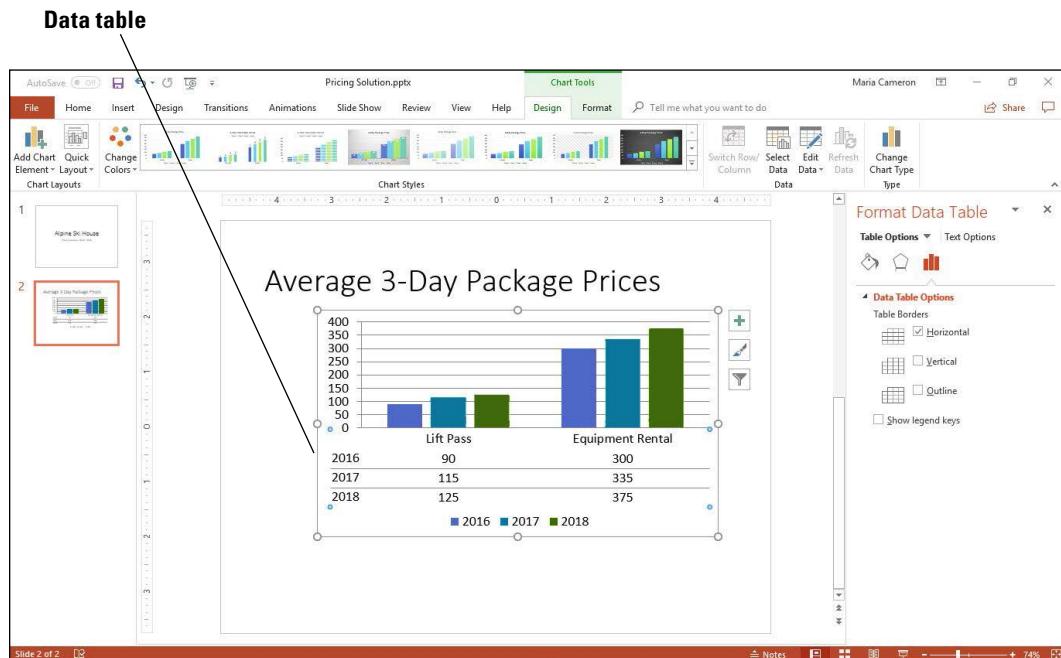
### Add and Delete Chart Elements

**GET READY.** USE the *Pricing Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the chart on slide 2, if it is not already selected and then select the **Chart Tools Design** tab.
2. Select the **Add Chart Element** button, point to **Gridlines**, and then select **Primary Major Horizontal**. Horizontal gridlines are added to the chart.
3. Select the **Add Chart Element** button, point to **Data Labels**, and then select **None**. The data labels disappear from the chart.
4. Click the chart's outer frame to select the entire chart again, if it is not already selected.
5. Select the **Add Chart Element** button, point to **Axes**, and then select **Primary Vertical**. Numbers appear along the vertical axis.
6. Select the **Add Chart Element** button, point to **Data Table**, and then select **More Data Table Options**. The Format Data Table task pane opens.
7. Clear the **Show legend keys** check box.
8. Clear the **Vertical** and **Outline** check boxes (Figure 6-10).

**Figure 6-10**

Customize the data table options



**9. CLOSE** the task pane.

**10.** Drag the bottom selection handle on the chart frame downward to increase the chart's height by approximately 1", so that it is less cluttered.

**11. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## FORMATTING A CHART

Once you have final data and have added the elements you want to include in the chart, you can make final adjustments to the size and position of the chart and its elements and apply final formatting. Use the tools on the Chart Tools Format tab to apply formats to any part of a chart, including the entire chart area, the data series markers, the legend, and the chart's labels and titles.

### Applying Chart Styles

Chart styles provide instant formatting to change the appearance of a chart. A style can change colors and borders of data markers, apply effects to the data markers, and apply color to the chart or plot area. You can use a style to format a chart if you do not have time to adjust formatting of chart elements such as data series or the individual data points in a series. In this exercise, you will apply a style to a chart and then modify it.

#### STEP BY STEP

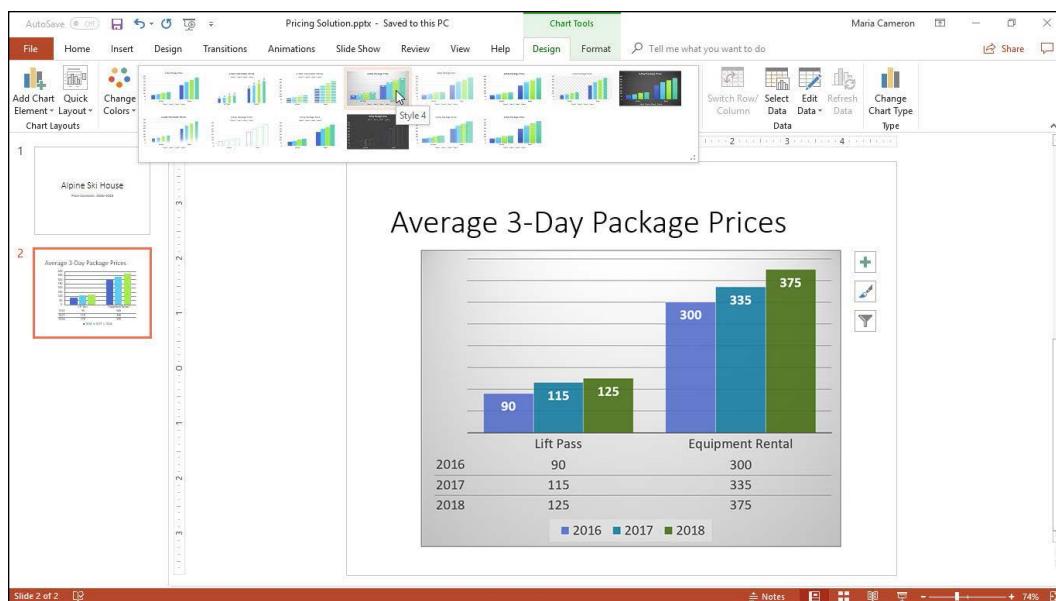
#### Apply and Modify a Chart Style

**GET READY.** **USE** the *Pricing Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the chart on **slide 2**, if it is not already selected.
2. On the Chart Tools Design tab, select the **More** button in the Chart Styles group. The Chart Styles gallery appears.
3. Point to **Style 4** in the gallery to display a preview of this style in the chart (Figure 6-11). Point to other chart styles to display their preview in the chart; then select **Style 4**. This style applies a new theme color and a different chart background color.

**Figure 6-11**

The chart is more interesting with the new Chart Style applied



**4. SAVE** the *Pricing Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

## Knowledge Assessment

### Fill in the Blank

Fill in each blank with the term or phrase that best completes the statement.

- On a bar chart, the bars that share a common color are a data \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you want to change a column chart to a line chart, select the \_\_\_\_\_ button on the Chart Tools Design tab.
- A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a visual depiction of numeric data.
- A chart's \_\_\_\_\_ provides a key to the information plotted on the chart.
- Hold the \_\_\_\_\_ key as you drag a chart's corner handle to resize it and maintain its aspect ratio.

### Multiple Choice

Circle the correct answer.

- PowerPoint's charting feature includes a worksheet window that is similar to which other Office application?
  - Microsoft Word
  - Microsoft Excel
  - Microsoft Equation
  - Microsoft Chart
- What is the default PowerPoint chart type?
  - Column chart
  - Bar chart
  - Line chart
  - Pie chart

3. How can you move a chart on a slide?
  - a. By dragging its border
  - b. By cutting from one location and pasting elsewhere on the slide
  - c. By dragging a sizing handle
  - d. By issuing the Move command
4. \_\_\_\_\_ enables you to quickly format a chart with different colors, effects, and background.
  - a. WordArt
  - b. A chart style
  - c. Master themes
  - d. SmartArt
5. Text that identifies information about the values on an axis is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. Legend
  - b. Chart title
  - c. Plot title
  - d. Axis label

## Projects

### Project 6-1: Creating a Line Chart

You are a member of the Center City Board of Elections. You have been asked to create a presentation to deliver to the Board showing how turnout has varied in the city over the past four presidential elections. In this project, you will create a line chart to display this data clearly.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the **Turnout** presentation from the data files in this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Turnout Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2**, select the **Insert Chart** icon in the content placeholder, and then select **Line**. Select **OK** to accept the default subtype.
4. Starting in cell A1, type the following data in the Excel worksheet:

| Year | Turnout |
|------|---------|
| 2004 | 0.62    |
| 2008 | 0.74    |
| 2012 | 0.49    |
| 2016 | 0.40    |
5. Adjust the range border to include only the data you typed and then delete all extra data on the sheet.
6. **CLOSE** the worksheet window.
7. In the Quick Layout gallery, select **Layout 9**.
8. In the Chart Styles gallery, select **Style 9**.
9. Select the legend in the chart, and then press **Delete**.
10. Select the **Add Chart Element** button, point to **Data Labels**, and then select **Above**.
11. Right-click one of the data labels and select **Format Data Labels**.
12. In the Format Data Labels pane, select the **Label Options** icon.
13. In the Number section, change the Category to **Percentage** with **0** decimal places.
14. **SAVE** the **Turnout Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

# 7 Creating SmartArt Graphics

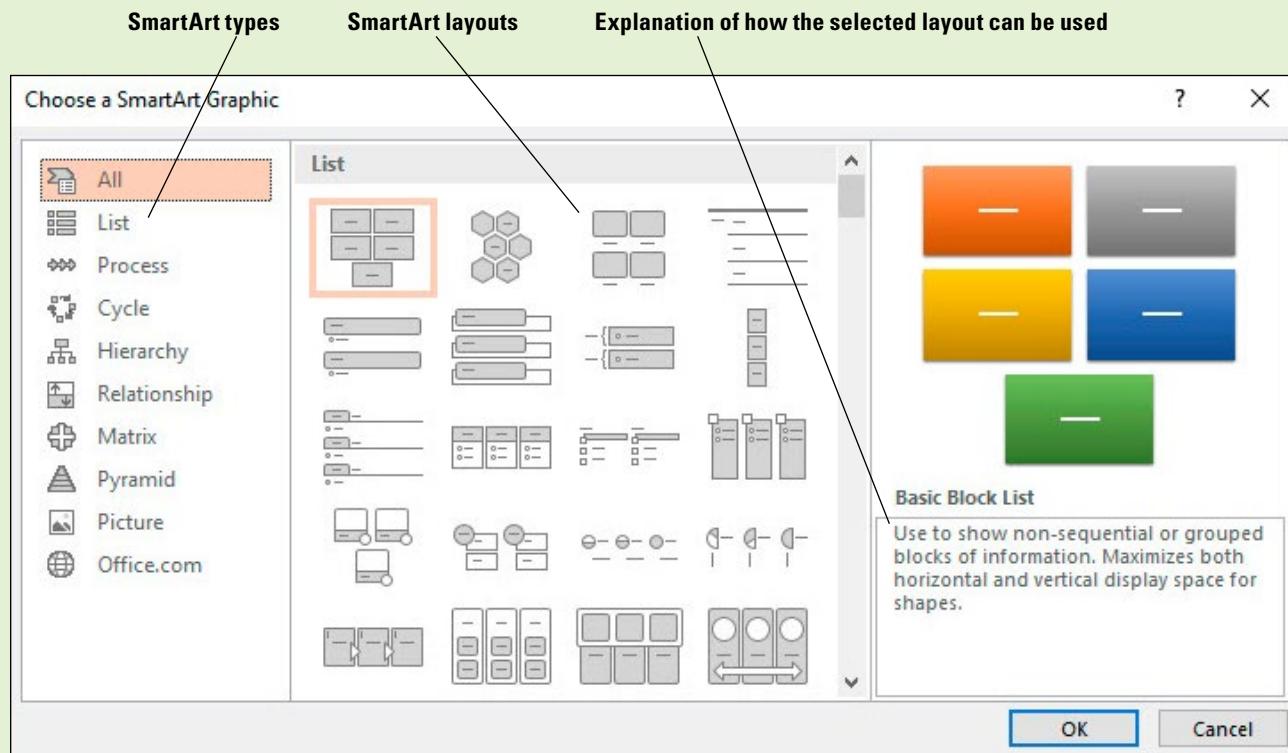
## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill                      | Exam Objective   | Objective Number                 |
|----------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| Adding SmartArt to a Slide | Create SmartArt graphics<br>Convert lists to SmartArt graphics   | 3.3.1<br>3.3.2                   |
| Modifying SmartArt         | Apply styles to shapes and text boxes<br>Change the color of SmartArt graphics<br>Add shapes to SmartArt graphics<br>Reorder shapes in SmartArt graphics | 2.2.5<br>3.3.5<br>3.3.3<br>3.3.4 |

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### Choosing a SmartArt Graphic

PowerPoint offers eight different types of SmartArt with many layouts for each type. Figure 7-1 shows the dialog box that appears when you choose to insert a SmartArt graphic.



**Figure 7-1**

The Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box

When you select a layout, the right pane of the dialog box shows you a preview of the selected layout and provides information on how to use the layout. This description can help you decide whether the layout will be appropriate for your information.

## ADDING SMARTART TO A SLIDE

Use the Insert a SmartArt Graphic icon in any content placeholder to insert a new SmartArt graphic. After you have selected a type and a layout, you can add text to the SmartArt graphic. PowerPoint also lets you use existing bullet items to create SmartArt.

### Inserting a SmartArt Graphic

**SmartArt graphics** (also called *SmartArt diagrams*, or just *SmartArt*) are visual representations of information you want to communicate. SmartArt shows items of related information in a graphical way that makes their relationships easy to understand. You can use SmartArt to present text information in a more visually interesting way than the usual bulleted or numbered formats. An **organization chart** is a type of SmartArt that shows the relationships among personnel or departments in an organization. Organization charts are included in the Hierarchy layouts. In this exercise, you will insert an organization chart.

#### STEP BY STEP

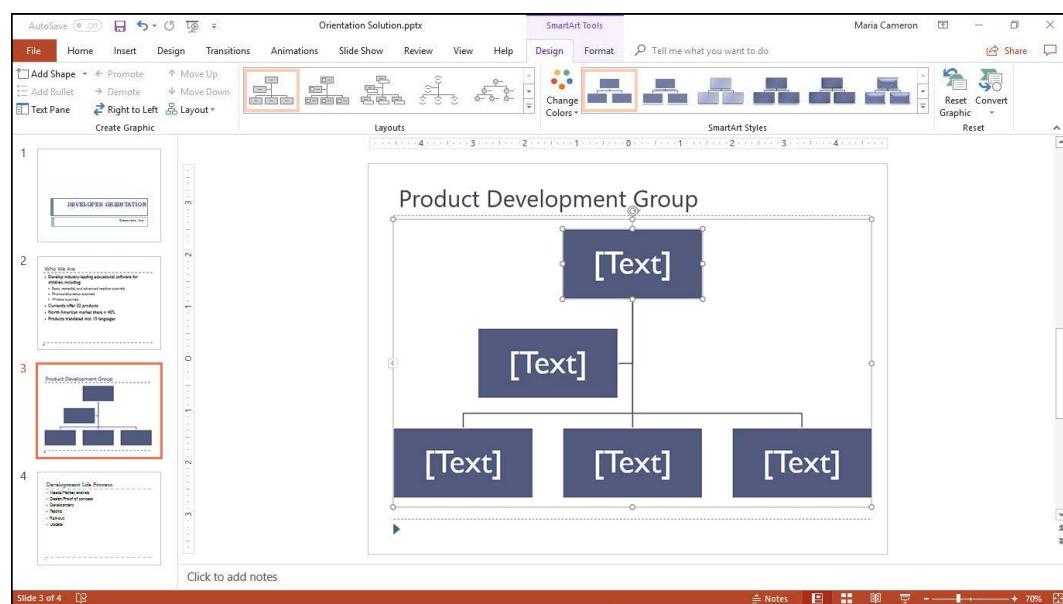
#### Insert a SmartArt Graphic

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint 2016.

1. **OPEN** the *Orientation* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Orientation Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 3** and select the **Insert a SmartArt Graphic** icon in the center of the content placeholder. The Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box opens.
4. Select **Hierarchy** in the type list in the left pane of the dialog box. The layouts for the Hierarchy type are displayed.
5. Select the first layout in the first row, the **Organization Chart**. Read the description of the Organization Chart layout in the right pane of the dialog box.
6. Select **OK** to insert the SmartArt graphic. The diagram appears on the slide (Figure 7-2).

**Figure 7-2**

A new, blank organization chart



7. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Adding Text to SmartArt

A new SmartArt graphic appears on the slide with empty shapes to which you add text (and in some cases, pictures) to create the final version. The appearance and position of these shapes are guided by the layout you chose; shape color is controlled by the current theme. As you enter text, PowerPoint resizes the shapes to accommodate the longest line of text. Font size is also adjusted for the best fit and PowerPoint keeps the font size the same for all shapes. In this exercise, you will learn how to add text to the organizational chart that you created in the previous exercise.

An organization chart, such as the one you create in this section, has some special terminology and layout requirements. In an organization chart, there can be only one **top-level shape**, which is typically occupied by the name of the person or department at the head of the organization. Persons or departments who report to the top-level entity are **subordinates**. An **assistant** is a person who reports directly to a staff member and usually appears on a separate level.

### STEP BY STEP

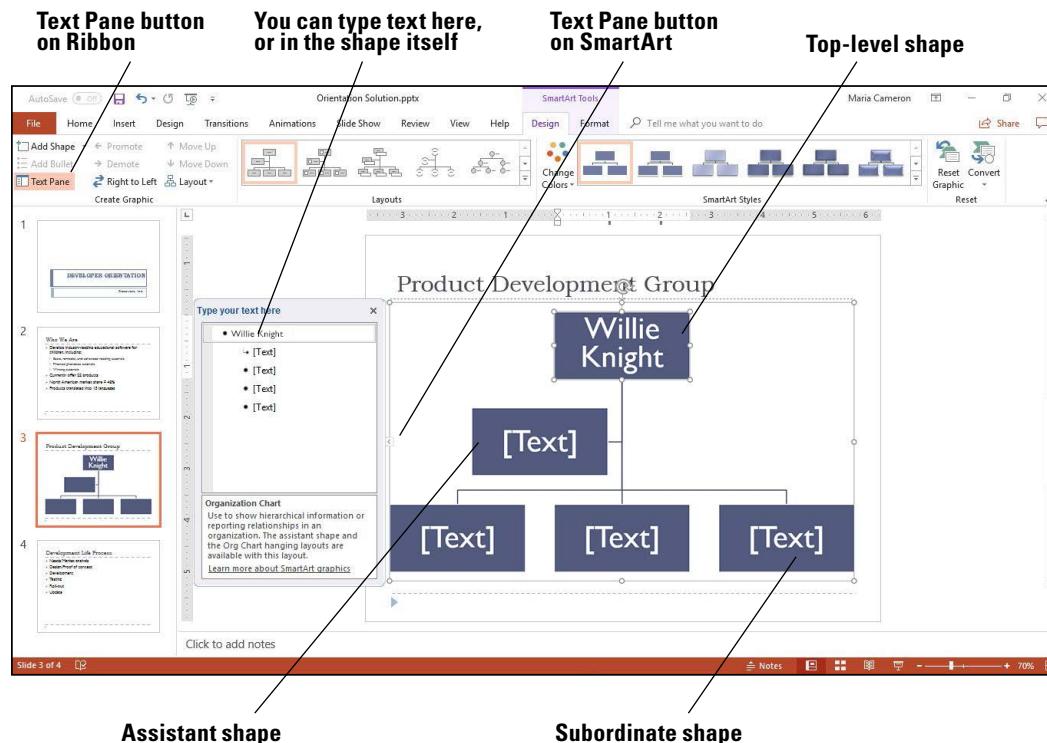
### Add Text to SmartArt

**GET READY. USE** the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the SmartArt Tools Design tab, in the Create Graphic group, select the **Text Pane** button if it is not already selected. This action opens the Text pane. You can also select the arrow on the far left of the SmartArt graphic's border to open the Text pane.
2. At the top of the Text pane, type **Willie Knight** to enter the name in the top-level shape. Notice that as you type the text in the Text pane, it appears in the top shape (Figure 7-3) and the text automatically resizes to fit in the shape.

**Figure 7-3**

Type a name in the top-level shape



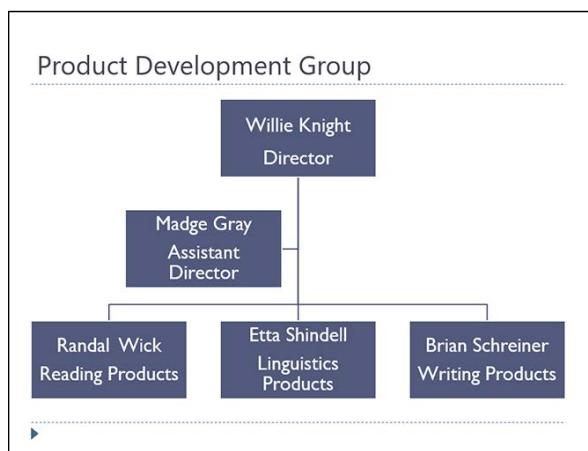
3. Select in the bullet item below Willie Knight in the Text pane and then type **Madge Gray**. Madge Gray is an assistant to Willie Knight, and as such, she has an assistant shape on a level between the top-level shape and the subordinate shapes.
4. Select in the next bullet item in the Text pane and type **Randal Wick**. Randal Wick is a subordinate to **Willie Knight**.

**Take Note** Do not press Enter after typing the names because that inserts a new shape. If you accidentally do so, select the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar to undo the addition.

5. Select the next bullet item and type **Etta Shindell**.
6. Select the last bullet item and type **Brian Schreiner**.
7. Select the **Close** button (X) in the Text pane to hide it. You will complete the text entry by typing directly in the shapes.
8. Select just to the right of the name **Knight** in the top-level shape, press **Enter** and type **Director**. Notice that the text size adjusts in all the shapes to account for the additional entry in the top-level shape.
9. Select after the name **Gray** in the assistant shape, press **Enter**, and then type **Assistant Director**.
10. Use the same process to type the title **Reading Products** for Randal Wick, **Linguistics Products** for Etta Shindell, and **Writing Products** for Brian Schreiner.
11. Click away from the SmartArt to deselect it. Your slide should resemble Figure 7-4.

**Figure 7-4**

The completed organization chart



12. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Take Note** If you need to edit text you have entered in a shape, you can select the text to activate it and then edit the text as necessary.

### Converting Text or WordArt to SmartArt

As you work with slide text, you may realize that the information would work well as a SmartArt graphic. In this situation, you do not have to retype the text in the SmartArt shapes. Simply convert the bulleted list to a SmartArt graphic. You can create SmartArt from any bulleted list on a slide or any WordArt object. You can choose one of the common layouts in the Convert to SmartArt gallery, or you can access the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box to choose any type or layout. In this exercise, you will learn how to convert a list into a SmartArt Cycle graphic and you will convert WordArt text into a single SmartArt object.

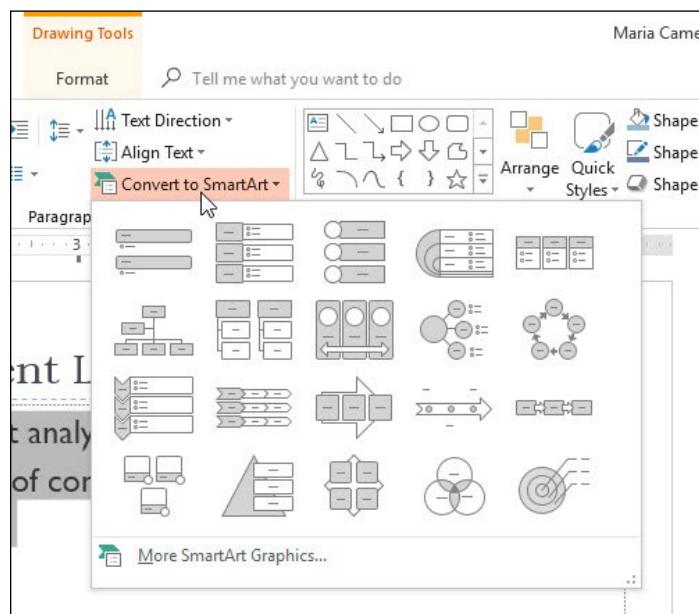
**STEP BY STEP****Convert Text or WordArt to a SmartArt Graphic**

**GET READY.** USE the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 4** and drag over the text in the bulleted list to select it.
2. On the Home tab, in the Paragraph group, select the **Convert to SmartArt** button. PowerPoint displays the Convert to SmartArt gallery (Figure 7-5).

**Figure 7-5**

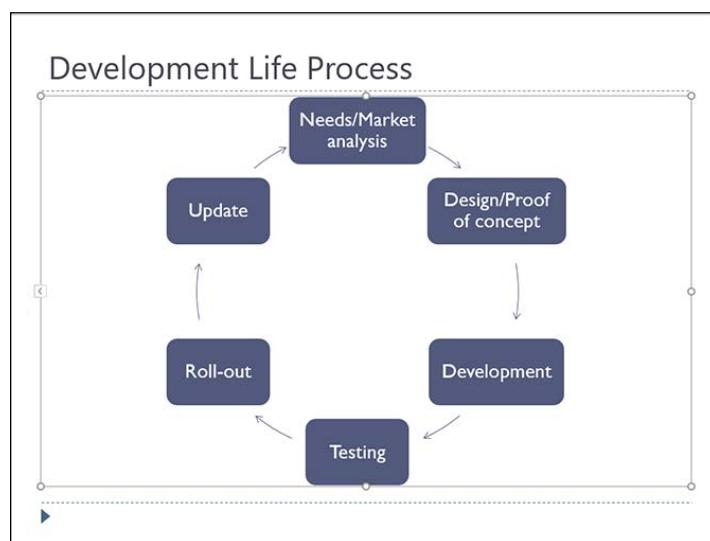
The Convert to SmartArt gallery



3. Select **More SmartArt Graphics** at the bottom of the gallery. The Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box opens.
4. Select **Cycle** in the left pane and then select the **Block Cycle** layout (the third layout in the first row). Read the description of how best to use the Block Cycle layout.
5. Select **OK**. The bulleted list is converted to a cycle graphic (Figure 7-6).

**Figure 7-6**

Bulleted list converted to a Cycle graphic



6. Select **slide 1** and triple-click the **Developer Orientation** WordArt object to select it.
7. On the Home tab, select **Convert to SmartArt** and then select **Vertical Bullet List** (the first layout in the first row). The WordArt text is converted to a single-item SmartArt object.
8. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## MODIFYING SMARTART

Although a SmartArt graphic makes an interesting visual statement on a slide in its default state, you will probably want to make some changes to the graphic to customize it for your use. You can apply a wide variety of formatting changes to modify appearance and you can also change layout or orientation and add or remove shapes. You can even change the SmartArt type to another that better fits your data.

### Applying a Style to SmartArt

Like other graphic objects, SmartArt can be quickly and easily formatted by applying a SmartArt style. Styles apply fills, borders, and effects to improve the appearance of the graphic's shapes. In this exercise, you will apply a style.

#### STEP BY STEP

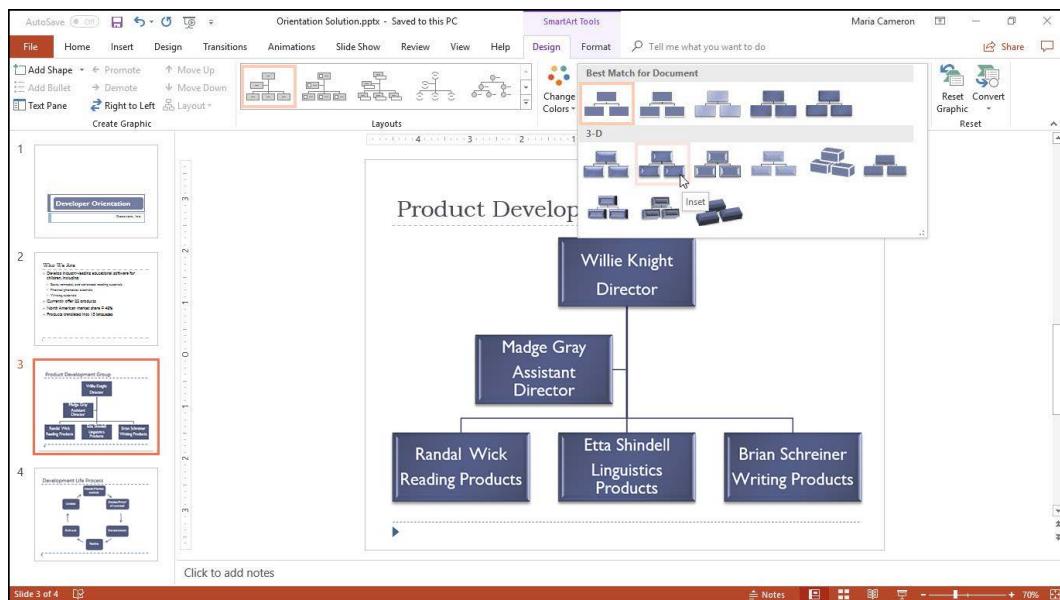
#### Apply a Style to SmartArt

**GET READY. USE** the **Orientation Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and select the SmartArt graphic. Take care to select the SmartArt itself; don't select a particular shape within it.
2. Select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab to activate it.
3. Select the **More** button in the SmartArt Styles group. The SmartArt Styles gallery appears (Figure 7-7).

**Figure 7-7**

The SmartArt Styles gallery



4. Select the **Inset** style. (It is the second style in the first row of the 3-D section.) PowerPoint applies the style.
5. Select **slide 1**, select the SmartArt object, and then repeat steps 2-4 to apply the same style.

6. Select **slide 4**, select the SmartArt object, and then repeat steps 2-4 to apply the same style.
7. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## Selecting a Color Theme for SmartArt

By default, SmartArt uses variants of a single theme color. Use the Change Colors gallery to apply a different theme color. In this exercise, you will apply a different color theme to a SmartArt graphic.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Apply a Color Theme to a SmartArt Graphic

**GET READY. USE** the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and then select the SmartArt graphic.
2. Select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab, and then in the SmartArt Styles group, select the **Change Colors** button. The Change Colors gallery opens.
3. Select the fourth style in the Colorful section, **Colorful Range – Accent Colors 4 to 5**. PowerPoint applies theme colors differentiated by level.

**Take Note** Differentiating levels or processes by color gives your audience further visual cues that help them understand the SmartArt graphic.

4. Select **slide 4** and then select the SmartArt graphic.
5. Select the **Change Colors** button, and then select the first style in the Colorful section of the Change Colors gallery, **Colorful - Accent Colors**. PowerPoint uses theme colors to apply different colors to each shape.
6. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## Changing a SmartArt Graphic's Layout

If you decide a particular layout does not present your data as you like, you can easily choose a new layout. A different layout can dramatically change the way the data appears. Different layouts may be more or less suited to your data, so you may want to try several different layouts to find the best match. In this exercise, you will change a SmartArt graphic to a different layout.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Change a SmartArt Layout

**GET READY. USE** the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

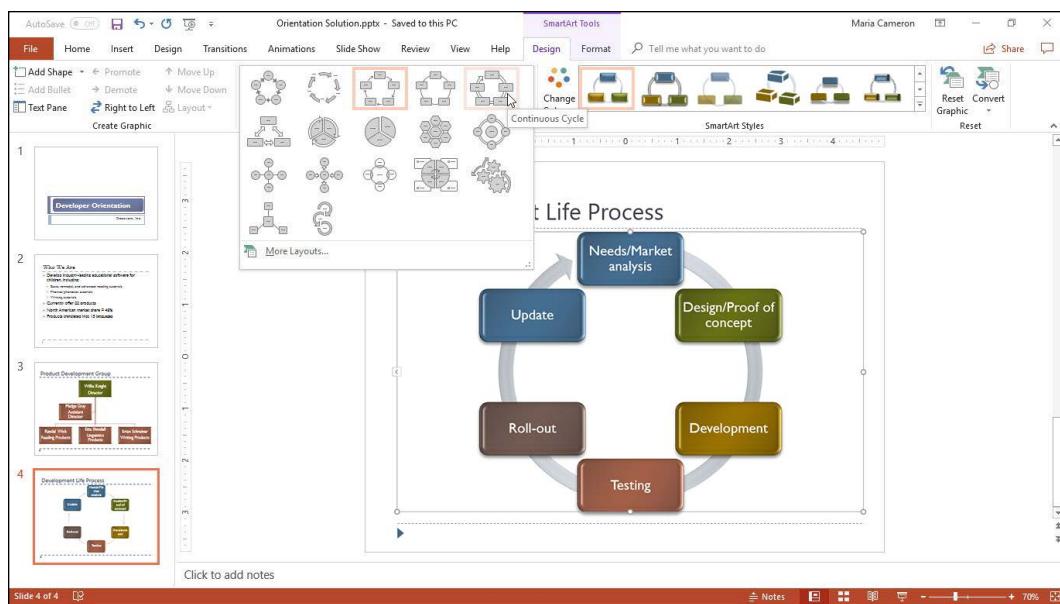
1. Select the SmartArt graphic on slide 4. Make sure you select the outer frame of the graphic—not an individual shape.
2. On the SmartArt Tools Design tab, in the Layouts group, select the **More** button to display the Layouts gallery.

**Take Note** The Layouts gallery displays alternative layouts for the current type.

3. Select **Continuous Cycle** (Figure 7-8). PowerPoint applies the new cycle layout to the current chart.

**Figure 7-8**

The Layouts gallery for the Cycle type



#### 4. SAVE the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Take Note** It is also possible to convert a diagram from one type (category) of SmartArt to another.

### Adding a New Shape to a SmartArt Graphic

As you work with SmartArt, you may need to add shapes to accommodate your information. Use the Add Shape button to choose what kind of shape to add and where to insert it in the graphic. Adding a new shape to a graphic causes all the existing shapes to resize or reposition to make room for the new shape.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Add a Shape to a SmartArt Graphic

**GET READY. USE** the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and then select the SmartArt graphic. Make sure you select the graphic's outer frame; don't select a specific shape within it.
2. Select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab.
3. Select the last shape in the last row (**Brian Schreiner**).
4. On the SmartArt Tools Design tab, in the Create Graphic group, select the Add Shape **drop-down arrow**. PowerPoint displays a menu of options for adding a shape relative to the current shape. (You can also right-click the shape and select Add Shape.)
5. Select **Add Shape Below**. PowerPoint adds a subordinate shape to the Brian Schreiner shape.

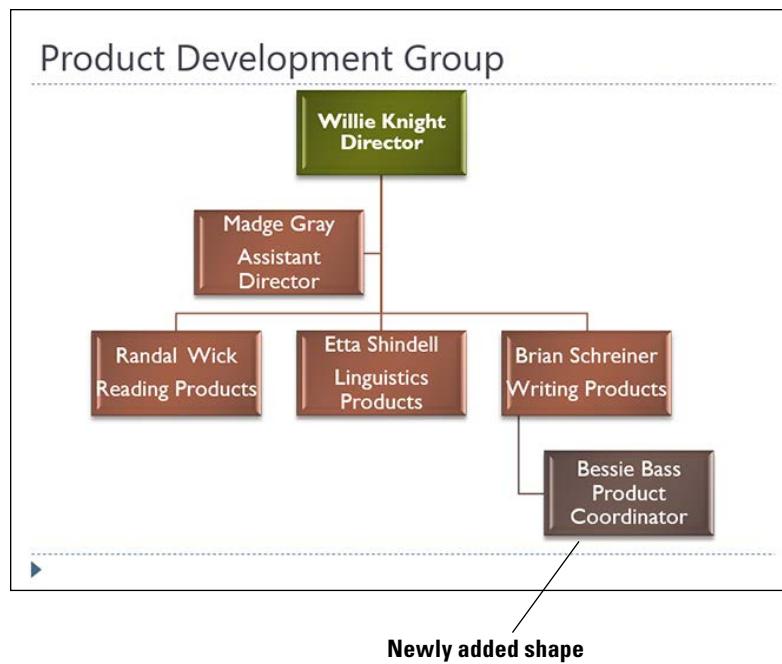
**Take Note**

Notice that the new shape, which is on a new level, has a different theme color to differentiate it from the level above.

6. Type **Bessie Bass** in the new shape, press **Enter**, and then type **Product Coordinator**. Then click away from the graphic to deselect it. The slide should resemble Figure 7-9.

**Figure 7-9**

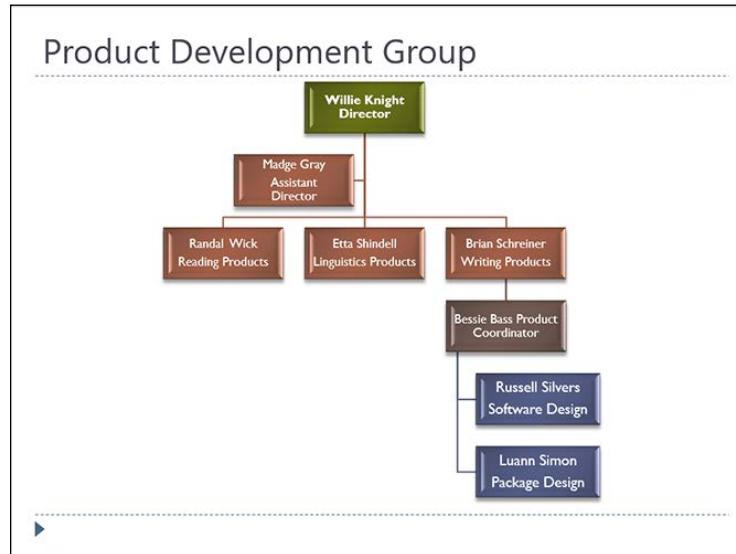
A new shape has been added



7. Select Bessie Bass' shape. On the SmartArt Tools Design tab, select the Add Shape **drop-down arrow** and then select **Add Shape Below**. PowerPoint adds a subordinate shape.
8. Type **Russell Silvers** into the new shape, press **Enter**, and then type **Software Design**.
9. With Russell Silvers' shape still selected, select the Add Shape **drop-down arrow** and then select **Add Shape After**. PowerPoint adds a shape on the same level.
10. Type **Luann Simon** in the new shape, press **Enter**, and then type **Package Design**.
11. Click away from the graphic to deselect it. Your slide should resemble Figure 7-10.

**Figure 7-10**

New subordinate shapes have been added



12. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Removing a Shape from a SmartArt Graphic

You can easily delete shapes you do not need. When you remove a shape, PowerPoint resizes the other shapes to take advantage of the increased space in the SmartArt container. Font sizes usually increase accordingly, too. For this reason, you should not do any manual formatting of text and shape size until you have finalized the number of shapes.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Remove a Shape from a SmartArt Graphic

**GET READY.** USE the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 4** and then select the SmartArt graphic.
2. Select the **Update** shape. Make sure you select the shape and not the text within it.
3. Press **Delete**. PowerPoint removes the shape and reconfigures the SmartArt graphic.
4. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** LEAVE the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Reversing the Direction of Shapes

You can change the look of a SmartArt graphic by modifying the way shapes are positioned. You can use the Right to Left and Layout buttons to adjust the orientation. In this exercise, you will reverse a graphic's direction and change the layout of a section of an organization chart.

### STEP BY STEP

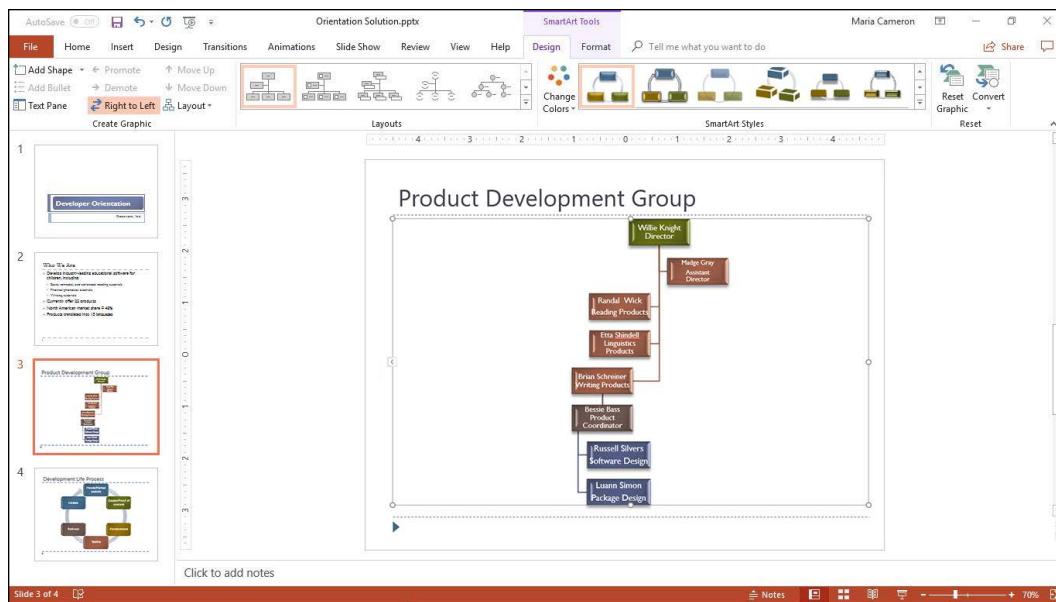
#### Reverse the Direction of Shapes

**GET READY.** USE the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and then select the SmartArt graphic. Make sure you select the entire graphic.
2. Select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab if it is not already displayed.
3. Select the **Right to Left** button in the Create Graphic group. PowerPoint flips the graphic horizontally so that shapes on the right side are now on the left side.
4. Select in the top-level shape (Willie Knight). Make sure you select the shape; don't select the text within it.
5. Select the **Layout** button in the Create Graphic group. PowerPoint displays options for positioning the shapes relative to the top-level shape.
6. Select **Left Hanging**. The subordinate shapes are arranged vertically below the top-level shape, rather than horizontally (Figure 7-11).
7. Select the **Layout** button and then select **Standard** to restore the previous layout.
8. Select the **Bessie Bass** shape, select the **Layout** button, and then select **Both**. The subordinate shapes display horizontally rather than vertically.

**Figure 7-11**

The subordinate shapes appear vertically



### 9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Reordering Shapes

In addition to changing the SmartArt graphic's entire orientation, you can also reorder the individual shapes by using the Move Up and Move Down buttons. Be aware, however, that the directions "up" and "down" are relative and, depending on the position of the shape, may not correspond to the actual direction being moved. In this exercise, you will move a shape to a different location in a SmartArt graphic.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Move a SmartArt Shape

**GET READY. USE** the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 4** and then select the SmartArt graphic.
2. Select the **Testing** shape.
3. On the SmartArt Tools Design tab, select **Move Down**. The shape moves one position in a clockwise direction. Note that in this example, Move Down actually moves the shape upward in the graphic.
4. Select **Move Up**. The shape moves one position in a counter-clockwise direction.
5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Promoting and Demoting Shapes

You can add, remove, or modify shapes by promoting or demoting text. When you **promote** an item, you move it up a level. When you **demote** an item, you make it subordinate to the item above it in the hierarchy. This procedure is similar to changing the indent level of items in a bulleted list. In the following exercise, you will learn how to promote a shape.

**STEP BY STEP****Promote a Shape**

**GET READY.** USE the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and then select the SmartArt graphic.
2. Select the **Text Pane** button on the SmartArt Tools Design tab.
3. In the Text pane, select the **Bessie Bass** bulleted item. Notice in the Text pane that this item is indented below the Brian Schreine bulleted item.
4. Select the **Promote** button in the Create Graphic group. Bessie Bass' shape jumps up one level and her two subordinates are also promoted.
5. Select the **Text Pane** button to hide the Text pane again.
6. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Choosing a Different SmartArt Type**

Sometimes the hardest part about working with SmartArt is selecting the type and layout that will best display your data. Fortunately, you can easily change the type even after you have created and formatted a SmartArt graphic. Some types of SmartArt will convert very well to a different type, while others will not fit the shape layout of the new type at all. You may need to retype information to display it properly in a different type. The following exercise shows how to select a different type and layout.

**STEP BY STEP****Choose a Different SmartArt Type and Layout**

**GET READY.** USE the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 4** and then select the SmartArt graphic.
2. Select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab, and then in the Layouts group, select the **More** button. Select **More Layouts** at the bottom of the gallery to open the Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box.
3. Select the **Process** type in the left pane, then scroll down and select the **Upward Arrow** layout in the center pane (in the third row from the bottom).
4. Select **OK**. PowerPoint converts the SmartArt graphic to the Upward Arrow layout.
5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Changing Shape Appearance**

Final adjustments to a SmartArt graphic include tweaking the size of shapes and modifying text formatting. PowerPoint formats shapes so that all will fit comfortably in the placeholder. If you have only a few shapes, you might find that these adjustments result in a graphic where shapes are much larger than they need to be to hold their text. Conversely, you may want to increase shape size to draw attention to one specific shape. These types of appearance changes can improve the look of a graphic and make it easier to read. In this exercise, you will learn how to change the size of a shape.

**STEP BY STEP****Change Shape Size**

**GET READY. USE** the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the SmartArt graphic on slide 4 if it is not already selected and then select the **Needs/Market Analysis** circle (the circle nearest the thin end of the arrow graphic). Make sure you select the circle, not the text.
2. Select the **SmartArt Tools Format** tab.
3. In the Shapes group, click the **Larger** button twice to increase the size of the smallest circle.
4. Select the **Design/Proof of Concept** circle shape and then click the **Larger** button once to increase the shape's size.
5. Select the **Roll-out** circle shape and then click the **Smaller** button in the Shapes group once to decrease the shape size. Then click away from the graphic to deselect it.

**Take Note** If you select the text box rather than the shape, click outside the text box to deselect it and then try again by selecting the left edge of the shape with the four-headed pointer.

6. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Take Note** You can also change shape appearance by selecting a completely new shape: right-click a shape, select Change Shape, and then select the desired shape from the Shapes gallery.

**Changing Text Formatting**

PowerPoint automatically adjusts font sizes to fit in or around shapes. If you do not find the size or color of text in a SmartArt graphic attractive or easy to read, you can use the Home tab formatting options to adjust font formats such as size, color, or style. You can also adjust alignment in shapes just as you would in any PowerPoint placeholder.

If you modify text formats with the SmartArt graphic selected, all text within the graphic will display the new format. To apply a new text format to a single shape, select that shape first. Text placeholders are selected the same way as other slide placeholders are. In this exercise, you will format the text in a SmartArt graphic.

**STEP BY STEP****Change Text Formatting**

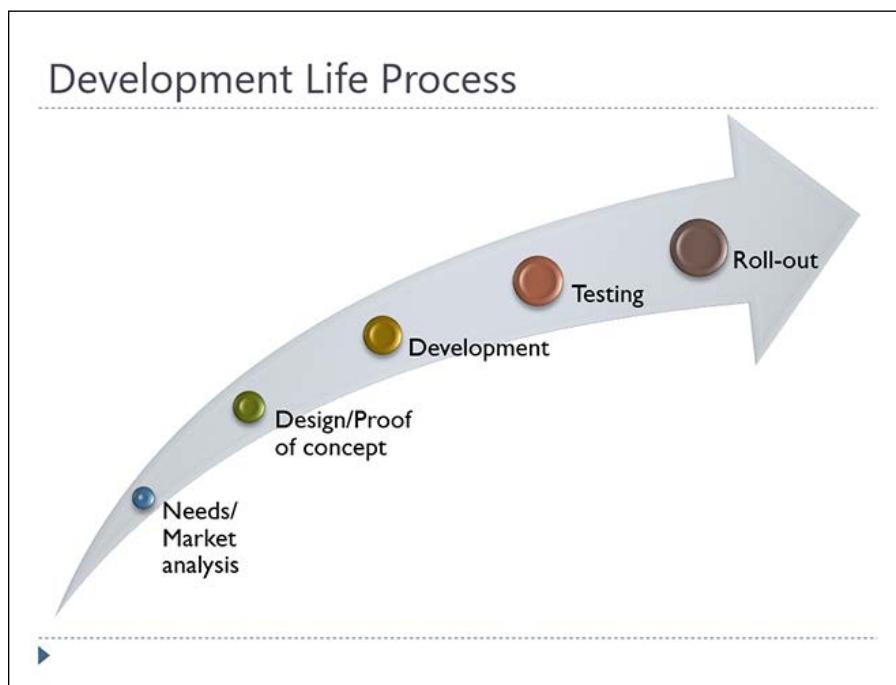
**GET READY. USE** the *Orientation Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On slide 4, click the outer frame of the SmartArt graphic (not a specific shape within it).
2. On the Home tab, select the Font Size **drop-down arrow** and then select **20**. PowerPoint changes the size of all text in the graphic to 20 pt.
3. Select the **Needs/Market analysis** text box and drag its border to reduce its width slightly so that the word *Market* moves completely to the second line.
4. Select the **Design/Proof of concept** text box and expand its width so that the word *Proof* displays completely on the first line.
5. With the **Design/Proof of concept** text box still selected, press the **right arrow** key on the keyboard three times to move the text box slightly to the right so its text does not overlap the circle shape.
6. Widen the **Development** text box so the word fits on a single line and then move the text box to the right slightly, as you did in step 5. Then click away from the graphic to deselect it.

7. Move the **Testing** text box to the right slightly. The completed slide is shown in Figure 7-12.

**Figure 7-12**

The completed process chart



8. Select **slide 3** and then select the SmartArt graphic.
9. Click the outside edge of the Willie Knight shape.
10. Select the Font Color **drop-down arrow** on the Home tab and then select **Black, Text 1**. The text in that shape is now easier to read against the light green fill.
11. Select the **Bold** button on the Home tab. All text in the shape is bolded. Then click away from the graphic to deselect it.
12. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Converting SmartArt

When you convert SmartArt to text, the text in the SmartArt object changes to a bulleted list. Top-level shape text becomes top-level bullet points and subordinate shapes become subordinate bullets. When you convert SmartArt to shapes, the diagram changes to a set of drawn shapes and lines, like the ones you might draw yourself using the Shapes button on the Insert tab. In this exercise, you will convert SmartArt diagrams to text and graphics.

### STEP BY STEP

### Convert SmartArt

**GET READY. USE** the **Orientation Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 4** and select the SmartArt object.
2. Select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab, and then in the Reset group, select the **Convert** button and then select **Convert to Text**. The SmartArt is converted to a bulleted list.
3. Select the **Undo** button in the Quick Access Toolbar to reverse the change and return to the SmartArt graphic.
4. Select **slide 3** and select the SmartArt object.

5. Select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab, and then in the Reset group, select the **Convert** button and then select **Convert to Shapes**. The diagram changes to a set of shapes.
6. Select inside the diagram to confirm that the SmartArt tabs on the Ribbon do not appear.
7. Select one of the diagram's shapes. Notice that the Drawing Tools Format tab becomes available, indicating it is a drawn shape object.
8. **SAVE** the *Orientation Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

## Knowledge Assessment

### Matching

Match the term in Column 1 to its description in Column 2.

**Column 1**

1. Promote
2. SmartArt
3. Top-level shape
4. Text pane
5. Subordinate

**Column 2**

- a. Holds the name of the person or department at the head of the organization
- b. Panel in which you can type SmartArt graphic text
- c. Increases the level of the item in the hierarchy
- d. Visual representation of information
- e. Someone who reports to the head of the organization

### True/False

Circle **T** if the statement is true or **F** if the statement is false.

- T F** 1. Text in a SmartArt graphic can appear either in a shape or in a bulleted list.
- T F** 2. The Standard Colors gallery allows you to apply variations of theme colors to a SmartArt graphic.
- T F** 3. The Add Shape Below option inserts a subordinate shape.
- T F** 4. To remove a shape, select it and press the Delete key on the keyboard.
- T F** 5. You have to retype text if you change from one SmartArt layout to another.

## Projects

### Project 7-1: Using SmartArt to Show Company Reorganization

In this project, you are the director of operations at Fabrikam, Inc., a company that develops fabric treatments for use in the textile industry. Your company is undergoing reorganization and you need to prepare a presentation that shows how groups will be aligned in the new structure. You can use a SmartArt graphic to show the new organization.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the *Reorganization* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Reorganization Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 2** and select the **Insert a SmartArt Graphic** icon in the content placeholder.
4. Select the **Hierarchy** type, select the **Hierarchy** layout, and then select **OK**.
5. Select in the top-level shape and type **Operations**.

6. Select in the first second-level shape and type **Production**.
7. Select in the second second-level shape and type **R & D**.
8. Select in the first third-level shape and type **Manufacturing**.
9. Delete the other third-level shape under Production.
10. Select in the remaining third-level shape (under R & D) and type **Quality Assurance**.
11. Select the **Manufacturing** shape to select it. Then select the Add Shape **drop-down arrow** and select **Add Shape Below**.
12. Type **Fulfillment** in the new shape. Then click away from the new shape.
13. Display the SmartArt Styles gallery and select the **Polished** style (the first style under 3-D).
14. Select the **Change Colors** button and then select **Colorful Range – Accent Colors 3 to 4**.
15. Display the Layouts gallery and select the **Horizontal Hierarchy** layout.
16. **SAVE** the **Reorganization Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

---

### Project 7-2: Using SmartArt to Improve a Presentation

In this project, you work for the city manager of Center City. She has asked you to create an agenda to display at an upcoming meeting of the city's department heads. She has supplied the bulleted text on an existing slide. You can use this text to make the agenda appear more interesting.

**GET READY.** **LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **Meeting Agenda** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Meeting Agenda Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select in the content placeholder. On the Home tab, in the Paragraph group, select the **Convert to SmartArt** button and then select **More SmartArt Graphics**.
4. Select the **List** category in the left pane, select the **Vertical Box List** layout, and then select **OK**.
5. Select the first shape, then the Add Shape **drop-down arrow**, and then select **Add Shape After**.
6. Type **Budget Cuts** in the new shape.
7. Display the Layouts gallery and select the **Vertical Bullet List** layout.
8. Display the Change Colors gallery and under the Accent 2 heading, select the **Transparent Gradient Range – Accent 2** option.
9. **SAVE** the **Meeting Agenda Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP.** **CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

# 8 Adding Graphics to a Presentation

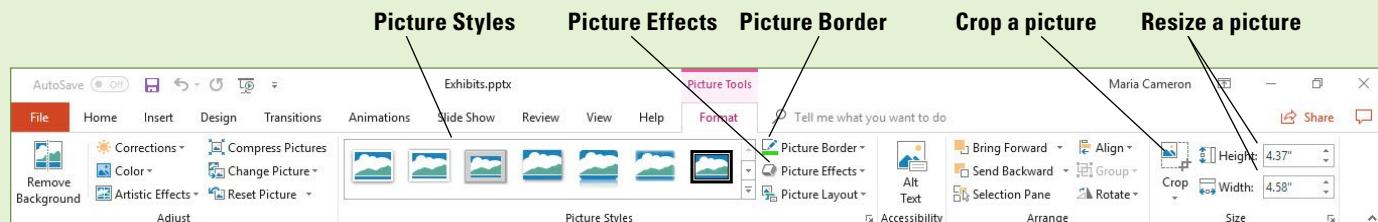
## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill                           | Exam Objective  | Objective Number                          |
|---------------------------------|---|---|
| Inserting and Formatting Images | Insert images<br>Display alignment tools<br>Resize and crop images<br>Apply styles and effects<br>Preserve presentation content | 2.3.1<br>2.4.4<br>2.3.2<br>2.3.3<br>5.2.4 |
| Adding Shapes to Slides         | Insert or replace shapes<br>Resize shapes and text boxes<br>Format shapes and text boxes  | 2.2.1<br>2.2.3<br>2.2.4                   |
| Ordering and Grouping Shapes    | Order objects<br>Align objects<br>Group objects   | 2.4.1<br>2.4.2<br>2.4.3                   |

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### Picture Tools

The Picture Tools Format tab (Figure 8-1) enables you to apply formatting effects to images. After selecting the picture, apply formatting by selecting a button on this tab.



**Figure 8-1**

The Picture Tools Format tab

You can use the tools on the Picture Tools Format tab to apply picture styles, to add or remove a picture border, and to apply special effects like shadow, reflection, and 3-D rotation. You can also crop and size the picture, correct the colors, and add artistic effects.

## INSERTING AND FORMATTING IMAGES

You can use images to illustrate a slide's content or provide visual interest to help hold the audience's attention. You can insert images from a Bing image search, or you can insert a picture that you have created yourself or acquired from some other source. PowerPoint provides many options for improving the appearance of images after you have inserted them. You can reposition and resize them, rotate them, apply special effects such as Quick Styles, adjust brightness and contrast, and even recolor a picture for a special effect. If you do not like formatting changes you have made, you can reset an image to its original appearance.

## Inserting Images from the Web

In PowerPoint 2016, Microsoft has done away with the Office.com Clip Art gallery option. Instead, you search for the images you want using Bing. By default, this image search automatically displays images that are tagged with Creative Commons licenses. These are images that you can use royalty-free in your presentations, although you should always review the license before using the image. To find an appropriate image for your presentation, you search by keyword using Bing in PowerPoint. A **keyword** is a descriptor of an image's content, such as tree, or flower. Each image has multiple keywords assigned to it, and so it can be found using a variety of keyword searches.

Some of the images are photographs, whereas others are clip art illustrations. **Clip art** illustrations are drawings composed of mathematically generated lines and shapes, similar to the lines and shapes users can create using PowerPoint's own drawing tools. Clip art illustrations increase the size of the presentation file less than photographs do, but they are less realistic-looking. PowerPoint 2016 does not distinguish between clip art and photographs when it searches the Web, and so your search results will likely contain a mixture of image types. To search specifically for clip art, simply include the words "clip art" after your search term.

### Take Note

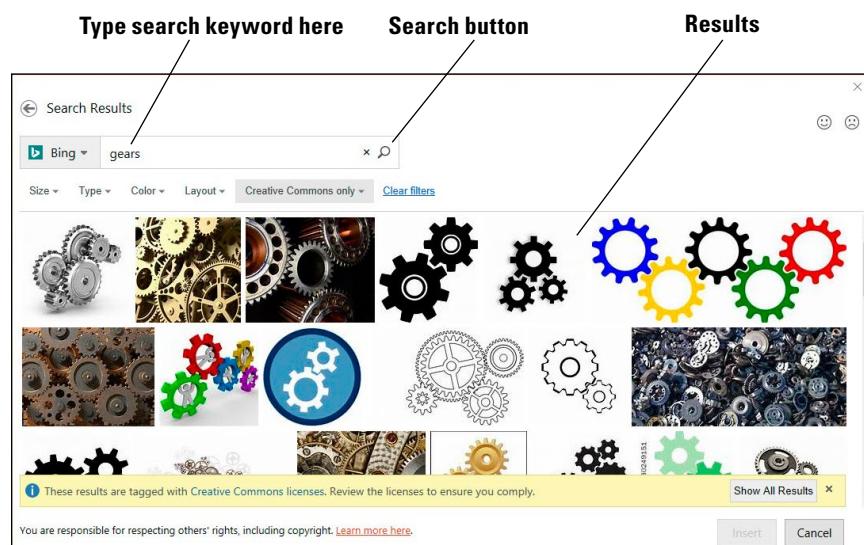
Office 2016 uses the terms image and picture interchangeably. For example, the exam objectives reference images but those images are inserted using the Pictures and Online Pictures commands in the applications. The term illustration refers to drawn artwork such as clip art, and the term photograph refers to an image that was originally captured with a digital camera or scanned with a scanner.

### STEP BY STEP

### Insert an Image from the Web

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint 2016.

1. OPEN the **Exhibits** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. SAVE the presentation as **Exhibits Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 4** and then select the **Online Pictures** icon in the empty content placeholder. The Online Pictures dialog box opens.
4. Select in the **Bing** text box and type **gears**.
5. Press **Enter** or select the **Search** icon (the magnifying glass). PowerPoint searches for images that match the keyword and displays them in the dialog box (Figure 8-2).
6. Scroll down through the results and select a picture of gears that you think will look good in the presentation.



**Figure 8-2**

Search for images with the keyword "gears"

**Take Note** The number of results change depending on how you word your search. For example, by typing *gears*, you get pictures of mechanical gears. If you type *gear photo*, you get many more results, some showing camping gear, the word gear, and other random images.

7. Select **Insert**. The image is inserted in the content placeholder. (If an error message displays after you select Insert, select OK to close the message. Then repeat the previous steps, beginning with step 3, and select a different image in step 6.)
8. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

### Inserting a Picture from a File

You can download many pictures for free on the Internet or create your own picture files using a digital camera. In this exercise, you will insert a picture from a file that has already been created.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Insert a Picture from a File

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3**. Select the **Insert** tab and then select the **Pictures** button. The Insert Picture dialog box opens.
2. Navigate to the location of the data files for this lesson, select *Astronomy.jpg* and then select **Insert**.
3. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

### Changing a Picture

After inserting a picture, if it is not what you want, you can easily delete it and insert a different one—either from an online source or from another file. However, if you have applied formatting to the picture, as you will learn to do later in this lesson, you might not want to lose the formatting and start over. In situations such as this, you can use the Change Picture command to swap out the picture without losing any of the formatting you have applied to the previous picture.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Change a Picture

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 4**.
2. Right-click the picture you inserted in a previous exercise, point to **Change Picture**, and then select **From a File**. The Insert Picture dialog box opens.
3. Navigate to the folder containing the data files for this lesson and select *Gears.jpg*.
4. Select **Insert**. The picture is replaced.
5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## Using the Ruler, Gridlines, and Guides

In Normal, Outline, and Notes Page views, you can turn on PowerPoint's horizontal and vertical **rulers**, which help you measure the size of an object on the slide, as well as the amount of space between objects. **Smart Guides** appear automatically as you drag objects on a slide to help you line them up with other content on the slide. If you want guide lines that stay visible, turn on the Guides feature. These drawing **guides** are movable, vertical and horizontal non-printing lines that you can use when positioning objects on a slide. PowerPoint also provides **gridlines**, a set of dotted horizontal and vertical lines that overlay the entire slide. In this exercise, you will learn how to use the ruler, guides, and gridlines to position objects so that they align with other objects on a slide and appear consistently throughout a presentation.

### STEP BY STEP

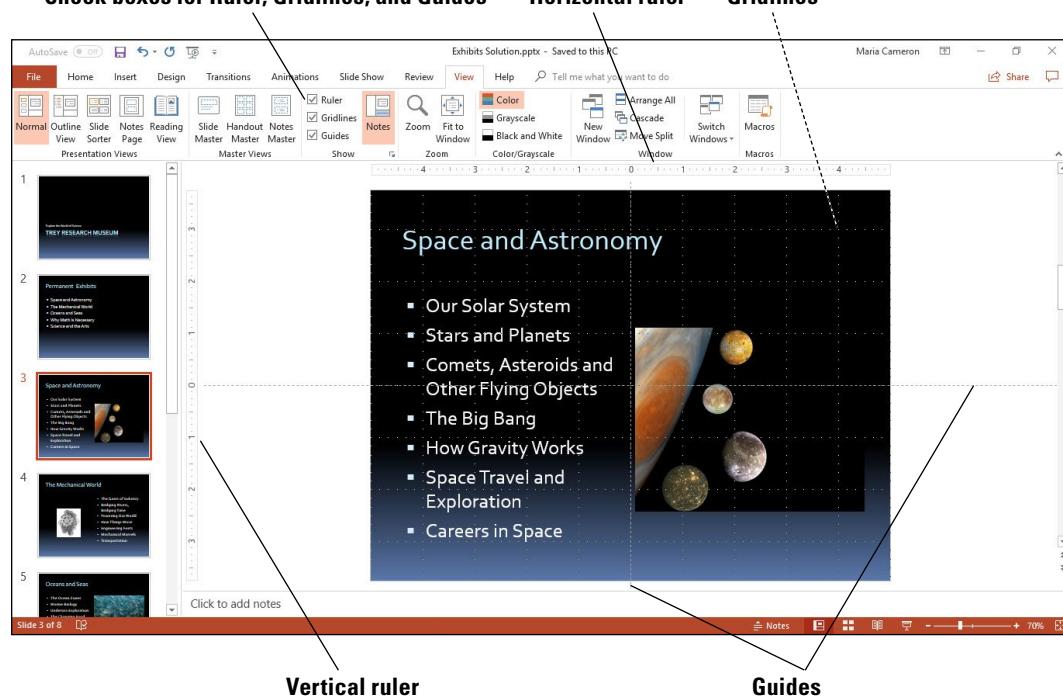
### Use the Ruler, Gridlines, and Guides

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3**. On the View tab, in the Show group, select **Ruler** if this option is not already selected. The vertical and horizontal rulers appear in the Slide pane.
2. Select the **Gridlines** check box. A grid of regularly spaced dots overlays the slide.
3. Select the **Guides** check box. The default vertical and horizontal drawing guides display, intersecting at the center of the slide, as shown in Figure 8-3.

**Figure 8-3**

Rulers, gridlines, and guides

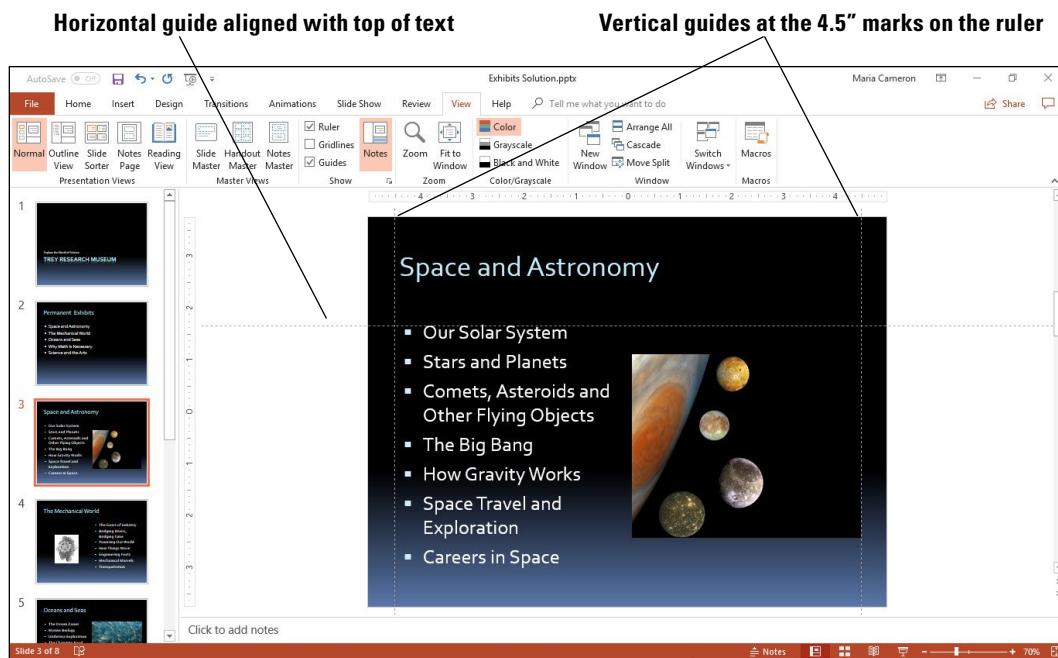


4. The guides will be more useful for positioning pictures in this presentation, so you can turn off the gridlines. On the View tab, select **Gridlines** to remove the check mark and hide the gridlines.
5. Select the text box on slide 3 that contains the bulleted list to activate it. Be sure to select the text box; don't select the text. You will use the text box's border to help you position guides.
6. Select the vertical guide near the top of the slide (above the slide title). As you hold down the mouse button, a ScreenTip appears that shows the current position of the guide—**0.00**, indicating the guide is at the 0-inch mark on the horizontal ruler.

7. Select and drag the guide to the left until it aligns on the left border of the text placeholder. The ScreenTip should read approximately **4.50** with a left-pointing arrow. Release the mouse button to drop the guide at that location.
8. Select the horizontal guide to the right of the planet picture and drag upward until the ScreenTip reads **1.67** with an upward-pointing arrow. Drop the guide. It should align with the top of the capital letters in the first line of the text placeholder.
9. Select the vertical guide you positioned near the left edge of the slide, hold down **Ctrl**, and drag a copy of the guide to the right until the ScreenTip reads **4.50** with a right-pointing arrow. Drop the guide by first releasing the mouse button and then releasing the **Ctrl** key. Your slide should resemble Figure 8-4.

**Figure 8-4**

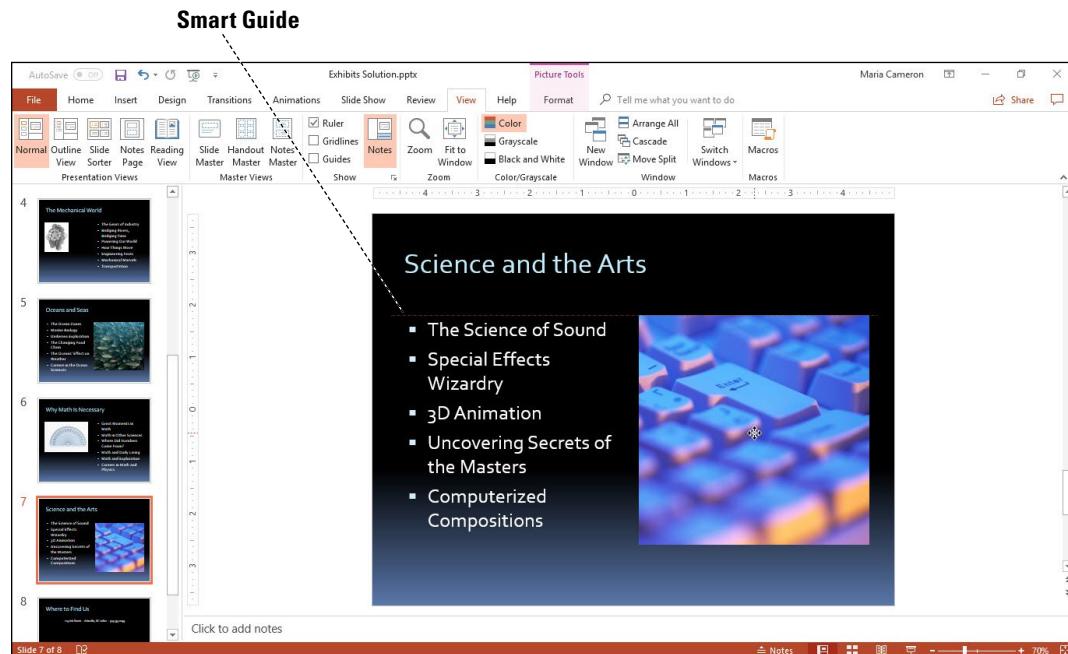
Drawing guides positioned on the slide



10. Select **slide 4**, choose the gear picture, and drag it until the upper-left corner of the picture snaps to the intersection of the vertical and horizontal guides.
11. Select **slide 5** and drag the picture down and to the left so its upper-right corner snaps to the intersection of the guides.
12. Select **slide 6** and drag the picture up and to the left to snap to the intersection of the two guides.
13. On the View tab, clear the **Guides** check box to turn off the guides.
14. Select **slide 7** and drag the picture up on the slide until a faint red dotted horizontal line displays at its top. This Smart Guide indicates that the picture is at the same vertical position as the text box to its left (Figure 8-5). Release the mouse button to drop the picture in the new location.

**Figure 8-5**

Smart Guides can help you position objects without using traditional guides

**Take Note**

If you do not like the Smart Guides feature, you can turn it off. Right-click an empty area of the slide, point to Grid and Guides, and select Smart Guides. Repeat that same procedure to re-enable the feature.

**15. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Rotating and Flipping an Image

You can rotate or flip pictures to change their orientation on a slide. Rotating spins the picture around its center; flipping creates a mirror image of it. Rotating and flipping can provide additional visual interest for a graphic or fit it more attractively on a slide.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Rotate and Flip an Image

**GET READY. USE** the **Exhibits Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. **SAVE** the presentation as **Exhibits Solution 2** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
2. Select the picture in **slide 3**.
3. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab, and then in the Arrange group, select **Rotate** and then select **Flip Horizontal**. The picture reverses its orientation so the planet is on the right and its moons are on the left.
4. Drag the picture up into the upper-right corner of the slide, so that the top and right edges of the picture align with the top and right edges of the slide. Click away from the image and compare your slide with Figure 8-6.

**Figure 8-6**

The picture has been flipped horizontally and moved to the top-right corner of the slide

**Space and Astronomy**

- Our Solar System
- Stars and Planets
- Comets, Asteroids and Other Flying Objects
- The Big Bang
- How Gravity Works
- Space Travel and Exploration
- Careers in Space

The background of the slide features a dark blue gradient at the bottom transitioning to black at the top. In the top right corner, there is a small image of several celestial bodies, including a large orange planet (Jupiter) and several smaller, colorful planets and moons.

5. Select **slide 4** and then select the picture.
6. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab, select **Rotate**, and then select **Rotate Left 90°**.
7. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Cropping an Image

You have several options for adjusting the size of a picture or other graphic object. You can crop an object to remove part of the object, drag a side or corner, specify exact measurements for an object, or scale it to a percentage of its original size. When you **crop** a picture, you remove a portion of the graphic that you think is unnecessary in order to focus attention on the most important part of a picture. The portion of the picture you cropped is not deleted. You can restore the cropped material by using the crop pointer to drag outward to reveal the material that was previously hidden.

#### STEP BY STEP

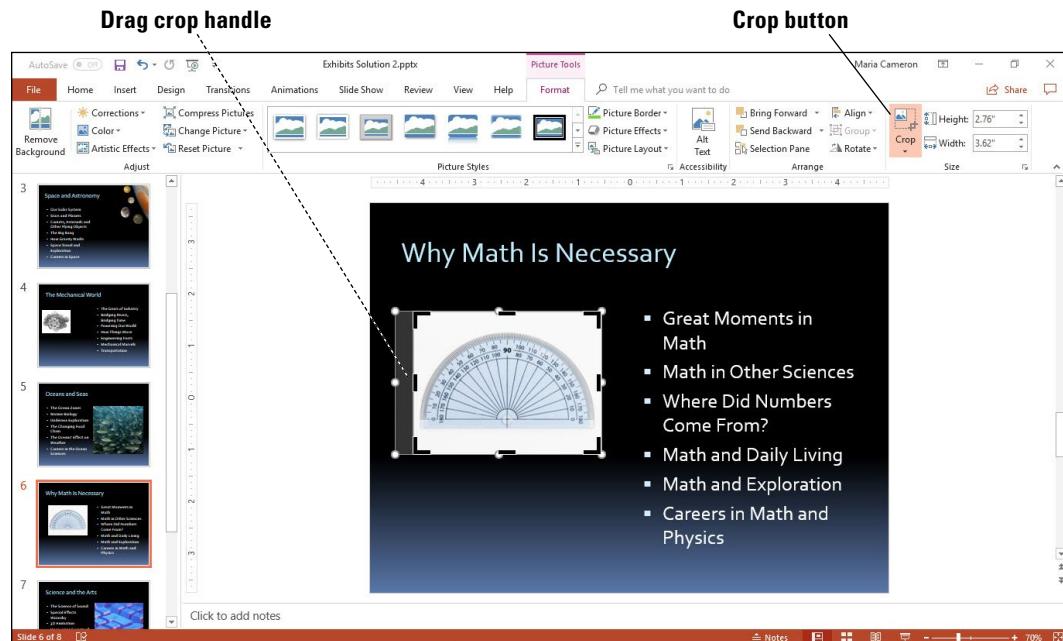
#### Crop an Image

**GET READY. USE** the **Exhibits Solution 2** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 6** and then select the picture.
2. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab.
3. In the Size group, select the **Crop** button. (Place an insertion point to the upper part of the button, not the arrow below it.) The pointer changes to a crop pointer and crop handles appear around the edges of the picture.
4. Click to position the pointer on the left side crop handle and drag inward to crop the picture so that there is an approximately equal amount of white space to the left of the protractor and to the right of it (Figure 8-7).
5. Release the mouse button and then select the **Crop** button again to complete the crop.
6. On the View tab, mark the **Guides** check box to turn the guides back on.
7. Click and drag the cropped picture back to the intersection of the two guides.
8. On the View tab, clear the **Guides** check box to turn the guides off.

**Figure 8-7**

Drag the crop handle inward to remove a portion of the picture



#### 9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Resizing an Image

In this exercise, you will learn three ways to adjust the size of a picture: by simply dragging a corner, by setting measurements in the Size and Position controls in the Format Picture task pane, and by setting a measurement in the Size group on the Picture Tools Format tab. You can use these options to resize any object on a slide.

Generally, you will want to maintain a picture's **aspect ratio** when you resize it. The aspect ratio is the relationship of width to height. By default, a change to the width of a picture is also applied to the height to maintain aspect ratio. In some instances, you may want to distort a picture on purpose by changing one dimension more than the other. To do so, you must deselect the Lock aspect ratio check box in the Size section of the Format Picture task pane. You are then free to change width and height independently. Alternatively, you can drag a side selection handle on the object (not a corner); this action allows you to adjust each dimension separately.

In the following exercise, you will resize an object and change its aspect ratio.

#### STEP BY STEP

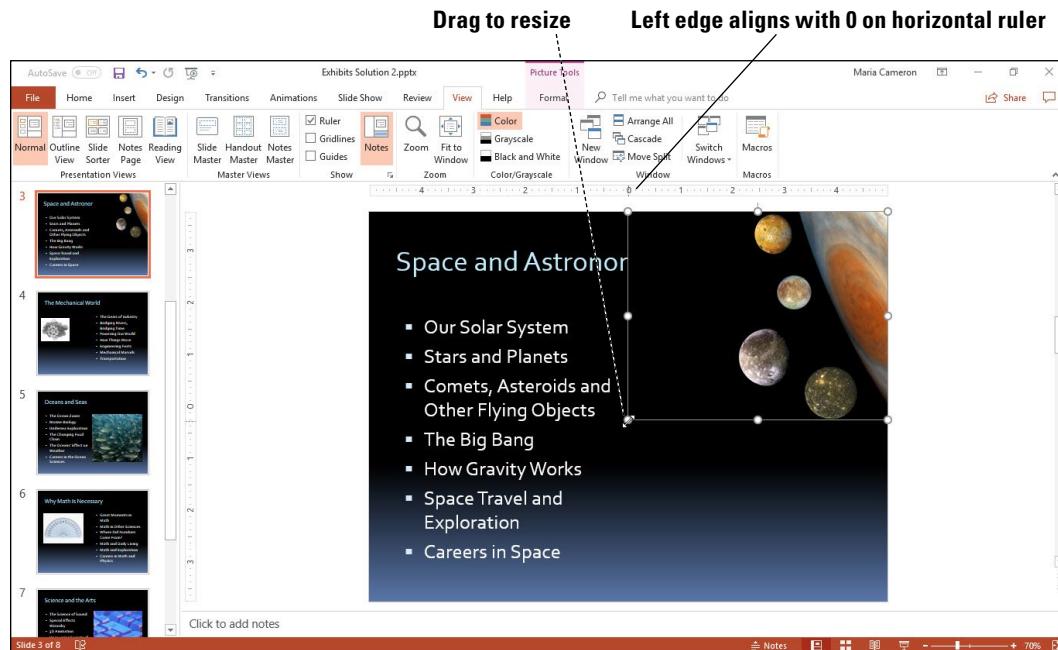
#### Resize an Image

**GET READY. USE** the **Exhibits Solution 2** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and then select the picture.
2. Click and drag the lower-left corner of the picture diagonally until the left edge of the picture aligns with the 0 mark on the horizontal ruler (Figure 8-8). (Do not worry that the slide title is partially covered; you will fix this in a later exercise.)

**Figure 8-8**

Resize a picture by dragging a corner



### Take Note

If you have difficulty getting the size right because Smart Guides pop up to snap the image into alignment with other objects on the slide, turn off Smart Guides temporarily. Right-click an empty area of the slide, point to Grid and Guides, and select Smart Guides. Repeat that same procedure to re-enable the feature.

3. Select **slide 4** and then select the picture.
4. Right-click the picture and then select **Size and Position** from the shortcut menu. The Format Picture task pane appears.
5. Click the **Lock aspect ratio** check box to deselect this option. You can now specify the height and width independently.
6. In the Size area of the task pane, select the **Reset** button to remove previous modifications made to this picture (rotation) from an earlier exercise.
7. Select the **Height** up arrow until the height is **3.7** inches. Select the **Width** up arrow until the width is **3** inches. (Alternatively, you can type the numbers.)
8. Expand the **Position** heading in the task pane and then set the Vertical position to **2.1**. This action is an alternate way of moving a picture.
9. **CLOSE** the task pane.
10. Select **slide 5** and then select the picture.
11. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab, and then in the Size group, type **4.2** in the Width box.
12. Turn the guides back on and then drag the picture to align its upper-right corner with the intersection of the two guides near the right edge of the slide. Then turn the guides off again.
13. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Applying a Style to an Image

PowerPoint provides a number of styles you can use to apply borders and other effects to images. You can easily apply styles with heavy borders, shadow and reflection effects, and different shapes such as ovals and rounded corners. Use styles to dress up your images or format them consistently throughout a presentation.

### STEP BY STEP

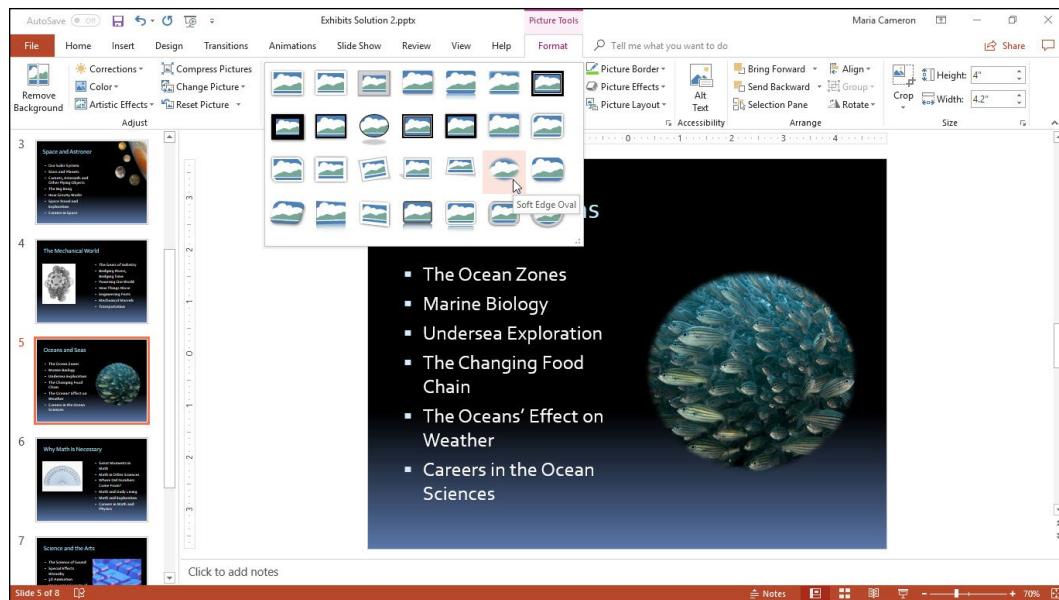
### Apply a Style to an Image

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 5** and then select the picture.
2. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab, and then in the Picture Styles group, select the **More** button. The Picture Styles gallery appears.
3. Select the **Soft Edge Oval** style. Your picture should resemble Figure 8-9.

**Figure 8-9**

The Soft Edge Oval style gives the picture a different appearance



4. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Correcting Brightness and Sharpness

You may need to modify a picture's appearance to make it show up well on a slide. This action can be particularly important with pictures you insert from files, which may not have been photographed using the optimal settings. The Brightness, Contrast, and Sharpness/Softness settings are all controlled from the same section of the Format Picture task pane. For presets, you can select from the Corrections button's menu. For precise amounts, you can use the task pane.

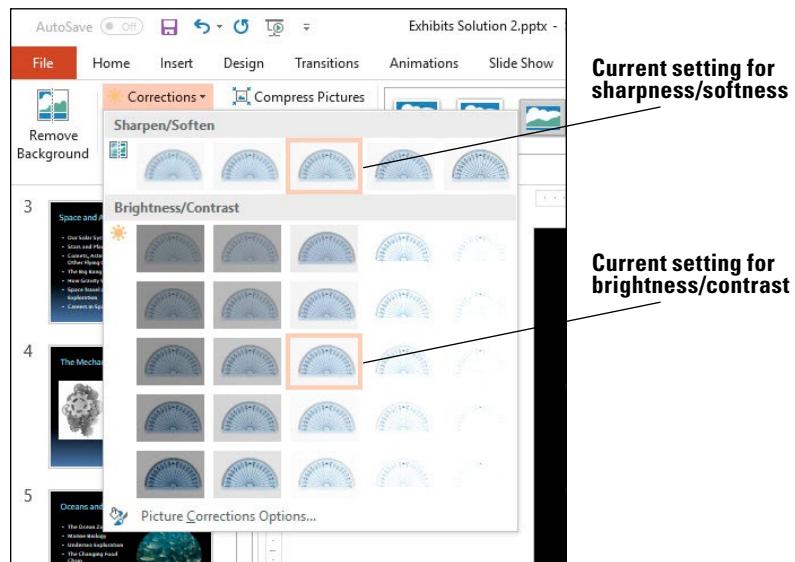
**STEP BY STEP****Adjust a Picture's Brightness and Sharpness**

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 6** and then select the picture, which is a bit 'too bright'.
2. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab.
3. In the Adjust group, select **Corrections**. A palette of corrections appears (Figure 8-10). Notice that there are two sections: Sharpen/Softening and Brightness/Contrast. The center selection in each section is the current setting.

**Figure 8-10**

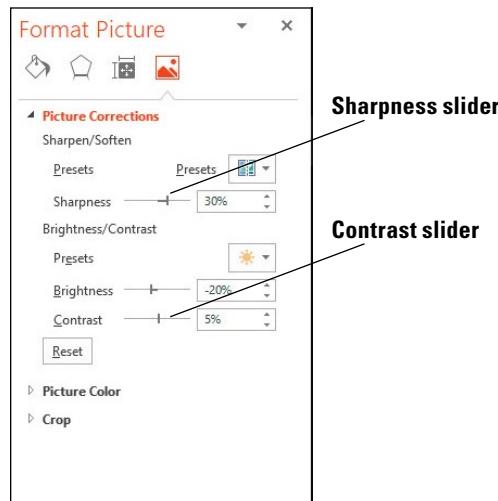
Select from the Corrections button's palette



4. In the Brightness/Contrast section, select the **Brightness: -20% Contrast: 0% (Normal)** setting.
5. Select the **Corrections** button again, reopening the menu.
6. In the Sharpen/Soften section, select **Sharpen: 25%**.
7. Select the **Corrections** button again, and then select **Picture Corrections Options**. The Format Picture task pane opens.
8. Drag the Sharpness slider to **30%** and drag the Contrast slider to **5%** (Figure 8-11).

**Figure 8-11**

Correct a picture from the Format Picture task pane



9. CLOSE the task pane.
10. SAVE the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Applying Color Adjustments

Color adjustments enable you to correct minor exposure or color problems in an image without having to open it in a third-party photo editing program. You can improve the appearance of a picture by making subtle adjustments, or apply dramatic adjustments that distort the image for a special effect.

Each of the three sections on the Color button's palette controls a different aspect of the color. Color **Saturation** determines the intensity of the color, ranging from 0% (grayscale, no color) to 400% (extremely vivid color). Color **Tone** refers to the subtle tint of the image's color, ranging from cooler shades (more blue) to warmer shades (more red). **Recolor** enables you to select a color wash to place over the image or to set it to grayscale, black and white, or washout. In this exercise, you will make some color corrections on a photo.

### STEP BY STEP

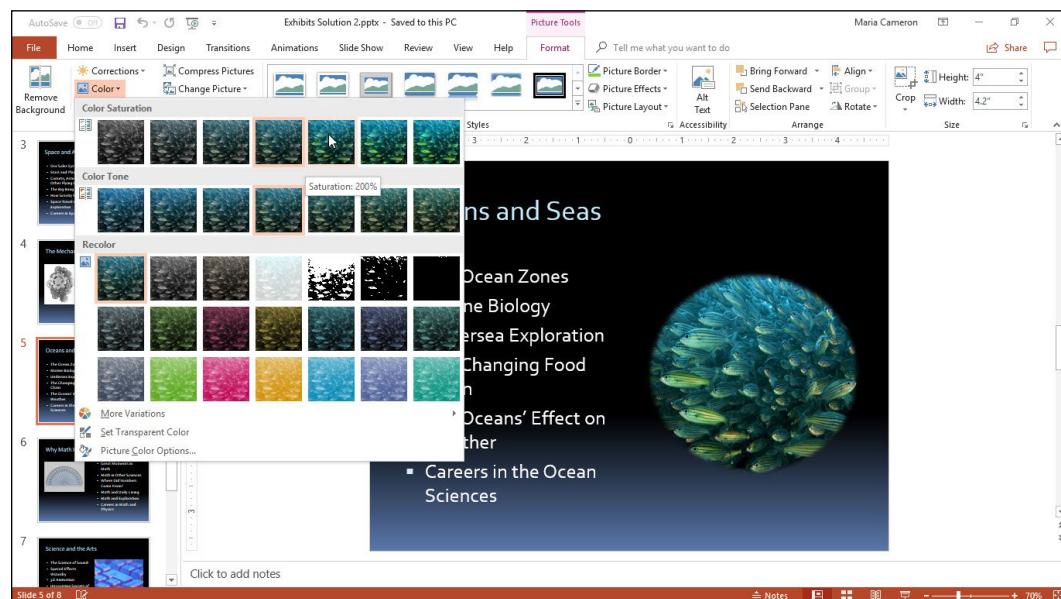
### Apply Color Adjustments

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 5** and then select the picture.
2. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab.
3. In the **Adjust** group, select **Color**. A palette of color choices appears.
4. In the **Color Saturation** section, select **Saturation 200%** (Figure 8-12).

**Figure 8-12**

Select a color correction preset for the picture



5. Select **Color** again to reopen the palette, point to **More Variations**, and then under Standard Colors, point to **Light Green** to display the preview applied to the picture. Click away from the menu to close the menu without making a selection.
6. Select **Color** again to reopen the palette, and then select **Picture Color Options**. The Format Picture task pane opens.

7. In the Picture Color section under Color Tone, type **7,000** in the Temperature text box to change the temperature value.
8. **CLOSE** the task pane.
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Adding Effects to an Image

There are two types of effects that you can apply to a picture: picture effects (such as Glow, Shadow, and Bevel), which affect the outer edges of the picture, and artistic effects (such as Chalk Sketch or Line Drawing), which affect the picture itself.

### Adding Picture Effects

Picture effects apply to the edges of a picture; they don't apply to the picture itself. For example, you can apply a beveled frame to a picture, or make its edges fuzzy. In the following exercise, you will apply a bevel and a glow effect.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Add Picture Effects to an Image

**GET READY. USE** the **Exhibits Solution 2** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 4** and then select the picture.
2. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab.
3. In the Picture Styles group, select the **Picture Effects** button, point to **Preset**, and then select **Preset 2**. A preset formatting effect is applied.
4. Select the **Picture Effects** button, point to **Bevel**, and then select **Round Convex** (the last option). A different bevel is applied.
5. Select the **Picture Effects** button, point to **Glow**, and then select **Glow: 8 point; Periwinkle, Accent color 5**. An 8-point periwinkle blue glow is placed around the picture.
6. Click away from the picture to deselect it so the changes display more clearly. The slide should resemble Figure 8-13.

**Figure 8-13**

The slide after picture effects have been applied to the picture

The slide has a dark blue background. At the top center, the title 'The Mechanical World' is displayed in a light blue font. Below the title is a white rectangular placeholder for an image, which contains a complex arrangement of interlocking metal gears of various sizes. To the right of the image is a bulleted list of seven items, each preceded by a small square bullet point:

- The Gears of Industry
- Bridging Rivers, Bridging Time
- Powering Our World
- How Things Move
- Engineering Feats
- Mechanical Marvels
- Transportation

7. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Adding Artistic Effects

Artistic effects enable you to transform the picture itself, not just the outer edges. Some of the effects, such as the Paint Strokes effect you apply in this exercise, can even make the picture appear less like a photograph and more like a hand-drawn work of art.

### STEP BY STEP

### Add Artistic Effects to an Image

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 7** and then select the picture.
2. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab.
3. In the Adjust group, select **Artistic Effects** to open the Artistic Effects gallery, and then point to several different settings in the gallery. Observe their effect on the image behind the open palette.
4. Select **Paint Strokes** (the second option in the second row).
5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Removing an Image Background

Some graphic file formats allow a photo to have a transparent background, but most photos do not use transparency. If you want to make areas of a certain color transparent in the copy of the photo you use in your presentation, you can do so with the Remove Background command. You will learn how to use the Remove Background command in this exercise.

### STEP BY STEP

### Remove an Image Background

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 3** and then select the picture.
2. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab and then select **Remove Background**. The Background Removal tab appears on the Ribbon and the picture turns purple except for one of the planet's moons. The purple areas are the parts that will be removed.
3. Zoom in to **100%** zoom using the Zoom slider in the bottom right corner of the PowerPoint window and then adjust the display so the photo displays clearly.
4. Notice that inside the picture is a rectangular border with selection handles. Only content within this rectangle will be kept. Drag the corner selection handles of that rectangle so that the entire picture is inside that area.
5. On the Background Removal tab, select **Mark Areas to Keep**.
6. Click and drag to draw across one of the moons. If the entire moon does not turn back to its original color with a single click and drag action, continue selecting different parts of it until the entire planet appears in its original color. Zoom in further if needed.



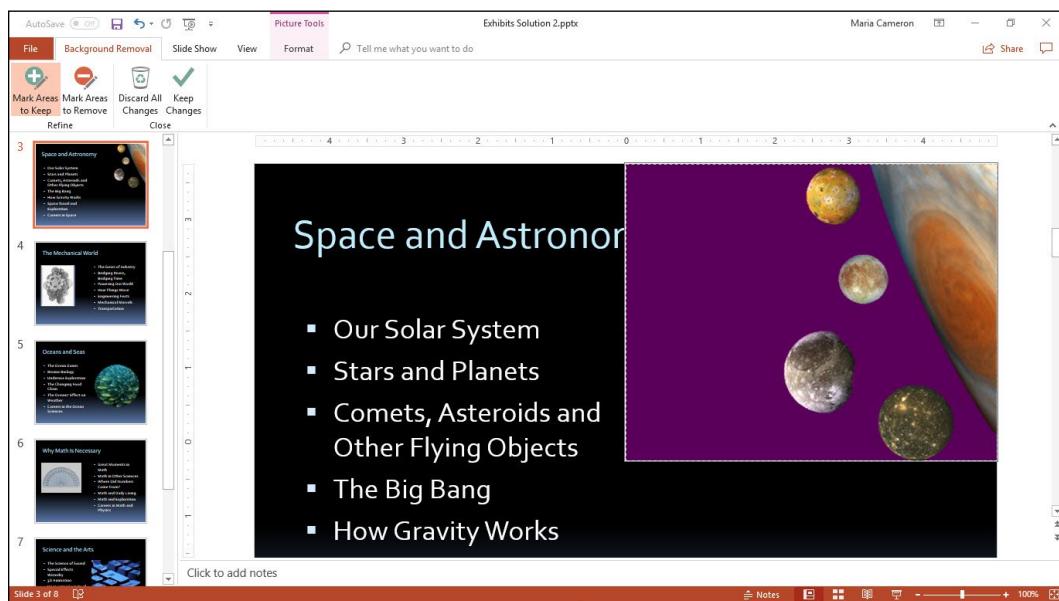
### Troubleshooting

If you make a mistake and select too much, and the entire background turns black, press **Ctrl+Z** to undo your last action and try again.

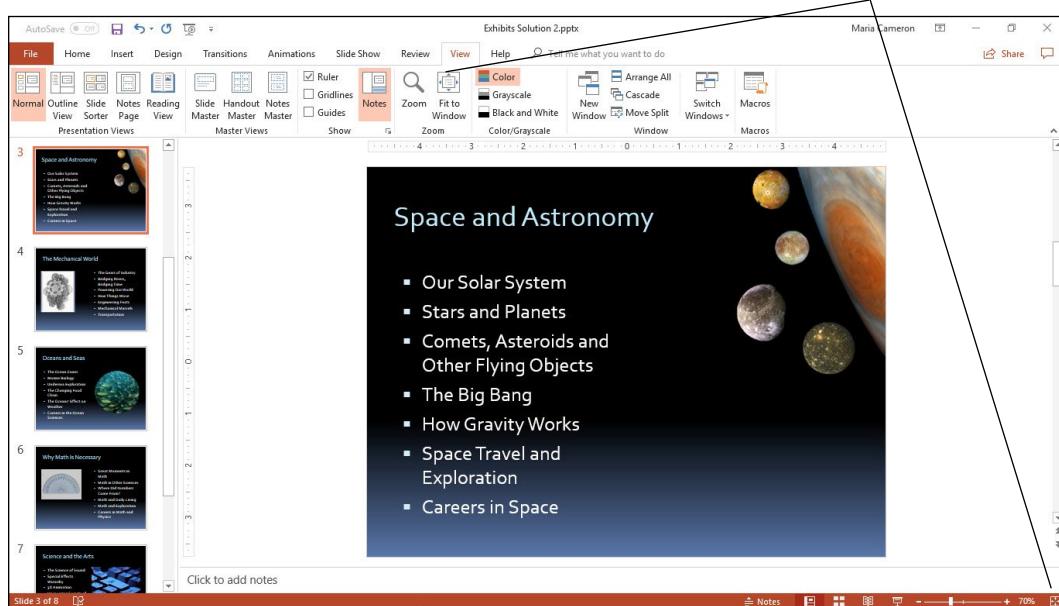
7. Repeat step 6 until only the background is purple and the planet and all moons appear in their original colors (Figure 8-14).

**Figure 8-14**

Adjust the areas to keep



8. On the Background Removal tab, select **Keep Changes** to finalize the background removal. Now that the background is removed, the slide title is no longer partly obscured.
9. Click away from the image to deselect it.
10. Select **Fit Slide to Current Window** in the status bar at the bottom of the PowerPoint window to reset the slide's zoom (Figure 8-15). You can also select Fit to Window on the View tab.

**Fit Slide to Current Window buttons****Figure 8-15**

The completed slide with the background removed from the photo

**11. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

It is easy to make a mistake when marking areas for background removal. The Undo command (Ctrl+Z) easily reverses your last action and can be used when a particular marked area does not turn out as you expect. You can also use the Mark Areas to Remove command on the Background Removal tab to mark areas that have erroneously been marked for keeping.

## Compressing the Images in a Presentation

When adding pictures to a presentation, you might need to consider the ultimate size of the presentation. Pictures will add considerably to the presentation's file size. This increased file size can make a large presentation difficult to store or work with. Compressing images reduces the file size of a presentation by reducing its resolution (dots per inch). This action can make the presentation easier to store and easier to email to others; it also speeds up display if you have to work on a slow projector or computer system.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Compress the Images in a Presentation

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab, and then make a note of the file size under the Properties heading. Then press **Esc** to return to the presentation.
2. Select any picture in the presentation, and then select the **Picture Tools Format** tab.
3. In the Adjust group, select **Compress Pictures**. The Compress Pictures dialog box opens.
4. Select the **Email (96 ppi)** option button.
5. Clear the **Apply only to this picture** check box. If you wanted to compress only the selected picture, you would leave this option checked.
6. Select **OK**.
7. **SAVE** the presentation. PowerPoint applies the compression settings you selected.
8. Repeat step 1 to recheck the presentation's file size. You should notice that the file size is considerably smaller.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## ADDING SHAPES TO SLIDES

PowerPoint offers drawing tools that enable you to create both basic and complex drawings. Use line tools and shapes to construct the drawing. You can easily add text to shapes to identify them and format the drawing using familiar fill, outline, and effects options.

### Drawing Lines

PowerPoint supplies a number of different line tools so you can draw horizontal, vertical, diagonal, or free-form lines.

To draw a line, you select the Line tool, select where you want to begin the line, hold down the mouse button, and then drag to make the shape the desired size.

You can use the Shift key to **constrain** some shapes to a specific appearance. For example, you can hold down Shift while drawing a line to constrain it to a vertical, horizontal, or 45-degree diagonal orientation.

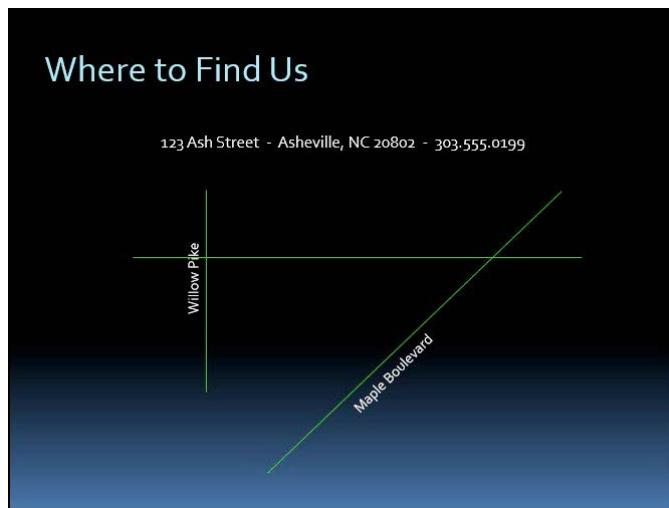
**STEP BY STEP****Draw Lines**

**GET READY. USE** the **Exhibits Solution 2** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. **SAVE** the presentation as **Exhibits Solution 3** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
2. Select **slide 8**. You will create a map on this slide to show potential visitors how to get to the museum. As you work, refer to Figure 8-16 for the position of objects.

**Figure 8-16**

The streets and street names



3. Select the **View** tab and then select **Gridlines** to turn gridlines on.
4. Create the first street for the map as follows:
  - a. Select the **Home** tab, and then in the Drawing group, select the **More** button to display the gallery of drawing shapes.
  - b. In the Lines group, select **Line**. The pointer takes the shape of a crosshair.
  - c. Locate the intersection of vertical and horizontal gridlines below the letter *h* in *Ash*, select at the intersection, and then drag downward to create a vertical line three "blocks" long.

**Take Note** You can also access the Shapes gallery on the Drawing Tools Format tab.

5. Add the street name as follows:
  - a. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the Text group, select **Text Box**. Select anywhere on the slide and then type the text **Willow Pike**.
  - b. Select the outer border of the text box to select all content within the text box and then change the font size to **16**.
  - c. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, select **Rotate**, and then select **Rotate Left 90°**.
  - d. Move the rotated street name just to the left of the vertical line (Figure 8-16).
6. Select the **Line** tool again, hold down **Shift**, and then draw the diagonal line shown in Figure 8-16.

**Take Note** Holding down the Shift key constrains the line to be exactly 45 degrees or exactly vertical or horizontal as you drag.

7. Select the **Line** tool again and draw the horizontal line shown in Figure 8-16.
8. Add the street name for the diagonal street as follows:
  - a. Insert a text box anywhere on the slide and then type **Maple Boulevard**.
  - b. Change the font size to **16**.
  - c. With the text box still selected, on the Home tab, select **Arrange**, point to **Rotate**, and then select **More Rotation Options**. The Format Shape task pane opens.

- d. Type **-45** in the Rotation box and then **CLOSE** the task pane.
- e. Move the rotated text box to the right of the diagonal line (Figure 8-16).
9. On the View tab, clear the **Gridlines** check box to turn off gridlines again.
10. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

Selected shapes have selection handles (also called sizing handles) that you can use to adjust the size of the object. Some complex shapes have yellow diamond adjustment handles that allow you to modify the shape. Drag a selected shape anywhere on a slide to reposition it.

## Drawing and Resizing Shapes

PowerPoint's many shape tools allow you to create multisided, elliptical, and even freeform shapes. The Shapes gallery contains well over 100 different shapes. Just select a shape and then drag on the slide to draw it there, or select on the slide to create a shape with a default size and orientation.

When creating shapes, you can use the rulers or gridlines to help you size, or use the Height and Width settings in the Size group on the Drawing Tools Format tab to scale the objects. Setting precise measurements can help you maintain the same proportions when creating objects of different shapes; for example, when creating circles and triangles that have to be the same height and width. You can also constrain a shape while drawing it by holding down the Shift key to maintain its aspect ratio. In the following exercise, you will draw some basic shapes.

### STEP BY STEP

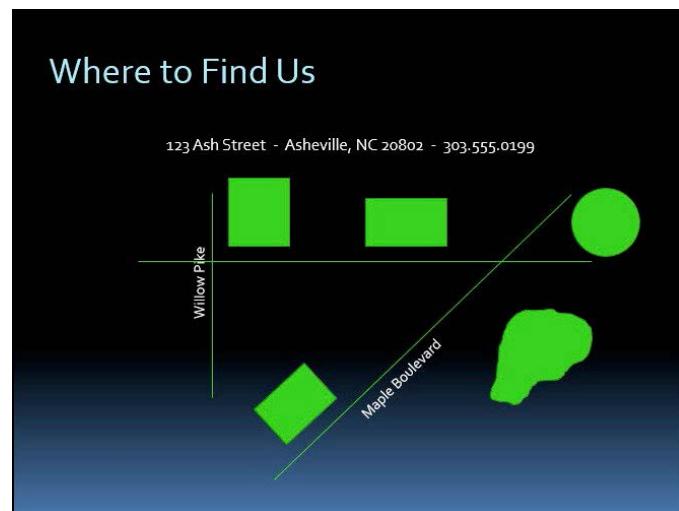
### Draw and Resize Shapes

**GET READY. USE** the **Exhibits Solution 3** presentation that is open from the previous exercise. As you work, refer to Figure 8-17 to help you position and size objects.

1. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the Illustrations group, select **Shapes** and then select the **Rectangle** tool. Hold down the mouse button and drag to create the taller rectangle above the horizontal line (Figure 8-17).

**Figure 8-17**

Basic shapes have been added to the map



2. With the shape still selected, choose the **Drawing Tools Format** tab. Note the measurements in the Size group. If necessary, adjust the size so the shape is **1** inch high by **0.9** inches wide.
3. Select the **Rectangle** tool again and use it to create the wider rectangle shown in Figure 8-17. This shape should be **0.7** inch high by **1.2** inches wide.

4. Select the **Oval** tool, hold down **Shift**, and then draw the circle shown in Figure 8-17. This shape should be **1** inch high and wide.
5. Select the **Rectangle** tool and create a rectangle **0.7** inches high by **1** inch wide near the lower end of the diagonal street.
6. Select the shape's rotation handle and drag to the left to rotate the shape so its bottom side is parallel to the diagonal road (Figure 8-17).
7. Select the **Freeform: Shape** tool in the Lines section in the Shapes gallery. Near the bottom of the slide (so you can easily view the line you are drawing), draw an irregular oval shape to represent a lake. The shape should be about **1.4** inches high and **1.5** inches wide.



### Troubleshooting

When using the Freeform tool, if you return to the exact point at which you started drawing, PowerPoint will automatically close and fill the shape with color. If your shape does not fill, double-click to end it, select Undo, and then start again.

8. Drag the lake shape to the right of the diagonal line (Figure 8-17).
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Adding Text to Shapes

You can often improve a drawing by labeling the shapes to state what they represent. In PowerPoint, you can add text by simply selecting a shape and typing the text. When you add text to a shape, the shape takes the function of a text box. PowerPoint automatically wraps text in the shape as in a text box; if the shape is not large enough to display the text, words will break up or the text will extend above and below the shape. You can solve this problem by resizing the shape or changing the text's size. You can use any text formatting options you like when adding text to shapes, just as when inserting text into a placeholder or text box. To select text in a shape to edit it, drag over it with the I-beam pointer. In the following exercise, you will add some text to shapes.

### STEP BY STEP

### Add Text to Shapes

**GET READY. USE** the **Exhibits Solution 3** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. While still on slide 8, select in the taller rectangle above the horizontal street and then type **Graphic Design Institute**.
2. Select in the wide rectangle shape and then type **Museum**.
3. Select in the circle shape and then type **Oak Arena**.
4. Select in the rotated rectangle and then type **Bellows College**. Note that the text is rotated as well.
5. Select in the freeform lake object and then type **Magnolia Lake**.
6. Adjust the widths of any of the shapes as needed so that the text fits in them.
7. Drag over the *Museum* text to select it and then select the **Bold** button.
8. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Take Note

To adjust the way text appears in a shape, right-click the shape, select Format Shape, select Text Options, select the Textbox icon, and then access the Text Box settings in the Format Shape task pane. For example, you can align the text vertically and horizontally within the shape.

## Formatting Shapes

You can apply many of the same formatting effects to drawn lines and shapes that you apply to other objects in PowerPoint. For example, you can change the fill color or texture, add borders, and use effects such as shadows and bevels. You can also apply Shape Styles to save time by formatting a shape using a preset. In the following exercise, you will format shapes by changing their borders, fills, and effects and by applying Shape Styles.

### STEP BY STEP

### Format Shapes

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the drawing on slide 8, format the Willow Pike line and label as follows:
  - a. Select the vertical line that represents Willow Pike.
  - b. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, and then in the Shape Styles group, select the **Shape Outline** button and then select the **Gold, Accent 3** theme color.

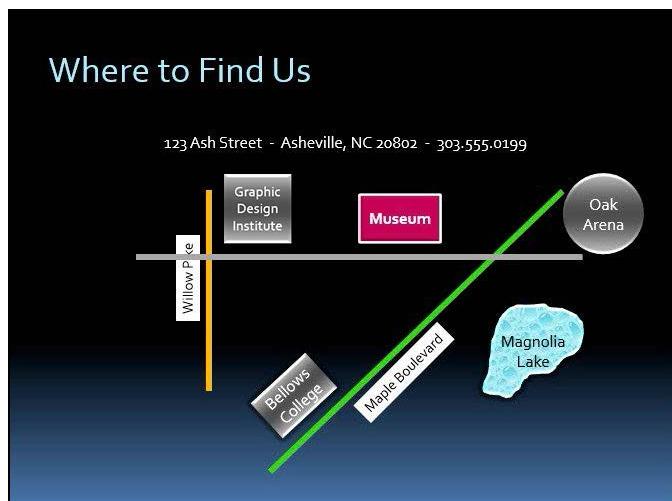
#### Take Note

You can use the **Shape Outline** button in the Drawing group on the Home tab or in the Shape Styles group on the Drawing Tools Format tab.

- c. Select the **Shape Outline** button again, point to **Weight**, and then select **6 pt**.
  - d. Click the outside border of the Willow Pike text box to select all content in the text box. On the Home tab, select the Font Color **drop-down arrow** and select **Black, Background 1**.
  - e. With the text box still selected, choose the **Shape Fill** button and then select **White, Text 1**.
  - f. Drag the text box to the left slightly if needed so that it does not overlap the vertical line.
2. Select the horizontal line and repeat steps 1a-1c to format the line with the **White, Text 1, Darker 35%** theme color and **6 pt** weight. (Do not worry if the street overlaps the *Willow Pike* text box. You will learn to fix this problem in a later exercise.)
3. Select the diagonal Maple Boulevard line, select the **Shape Outline** button, point to **Weight**, and then select **6 pt**.
4. Format the Maple Boulevard text box following steps 1d and 1e to change the text to **Black, Background 1** and the fill to **White, Text 1**. Move the text box to the right so it doesn't overlap the line, if necessary.
5. Format the other shapes as follows:
  - a. Select the Graphic Design Institute shape above the horizontal street, hold down **Shift**, and then select each additional filled shape until all five shapes are selected.(Do *not* select any of the lines or the street name text boxes.)
  - b. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab, select the **Shape Outline** button, and then select **No Outline**. You have removed outlines from the selected shapes.
  - c. Select the **More** button in the Shape Styles group and then select the **Intense Effect - Black, Dark 1** effect (under Theme Styles, the first style in the last row).
  - d. Click away from the shapes to deselect them all and then choose the Museum shape to select it.
  - e. On the Drawing Tools Format tab, select **Shape Fill** and then select **Pink, Accent 2, Darker 25%**.
  - f. Select **Shape Effects**, point to **Preset**, and then select **Preset 1**.
6. Apply a texture to the Magnolia Lake shape by doing the following:
  - a. Select the Magnolia Lake shape.
  - b. On the Drawing Tools Format tab, select **Shape Fill**, point to **Texture**, and then select the **Water droplets** texture.
  - c. Select the **Text Fill** button and then select **Black, Background 1**.
7. Click away from the Magnolia Lake shape to deselect it. Your map should resemble Figure 8-18.

**Figure 8-18**

The map has been formatted



**8. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Creating a Custom Shape

In PowerPoint, you can combine multiple drawn lines and shapes together into more complex shapes. This makes the drawing tools much more useful and flexible. You can overlap two or more shapes and then issue a command that combines them. There are several different commands for creating custom shapes, each of which produces a different combination effect. In this exercise, you will combine several shapes to create a custom shape for use in a logo.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Create a Custom Shape

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 1**. Select the **Insert** tab, select **Shapes**, and then select the **Star: 8 points** shape in the Stars and Banners section.
2. Hold down the **Shift** key and drag on the slide, above the text, to draw a star that is approximately 2" in both height and width.
3. Select the **Insert** tab, select **Shapes**, and then select the crescent moon shape in the Basic Shapes section. Drag to draw it over the 8-point star, and then size and position it as shown in Figure 8-19.

**Figure 8-19**

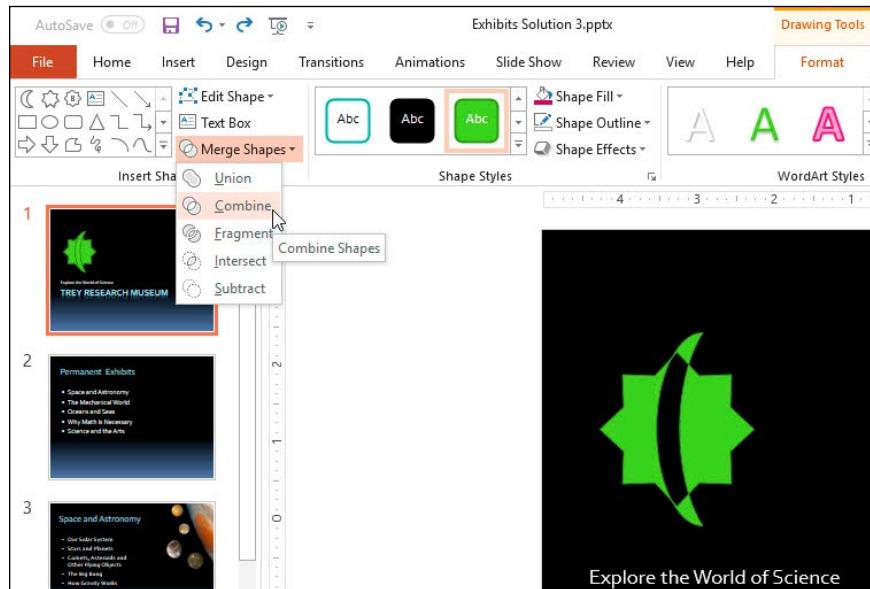
Draw the crescent moon over the 8-point star



4. Select the 8-point star, hold down **Shift**, and then select the crescent moon shape. Both are selected.
5. On the Drawing Tools Format tab, select the **Merge Shapes** button. A menu opens.
6. Point to each of the menu options to display the effect previewed on the shape.
7. Select **Combine** (Figure 8-20). The two shapes are combined such that the area where they overlap is removed.

**Figure 8-20**

The shapes have been combined using the Combine command



8. Select the shape. On the Drawing Tools Format tab, select **Shape Fill** and then select **Light Blue, Text 2, Darker 90%**.
9. Select **Shape Outline** and select **No Outline**.
10. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

As you saw in step 6 in the preceding exercise, there are many options for merging shapes. These options are summarized in Table 8-1.

**Table 8-1**  
Options for Merging Shapes

| Operation | Description  | Example |
|-----------|--|---------|
| Union     | Combines the areas of both shapes and takes on the formatting of the top shape                               |         |
| Combine   | Includes areas where one of the two shapes appear, but excludes areas where both shapes overlap              |         |
| Fragment  | Combines the areas of both shapes, but divides the shapes into multiple pieces where overlap begins and ends |         |
| Intersect | Includes only the areas where the top shape overlaps the bottom shape  |         |
| Subtract  | Includes only the areas where the top shape did not overlap the bottom shape                                 |         |

## ORDERING AND GROUPING SHAPES

It is not uncommon to have to adjust the layout of objects you have added to slides. You may find that objects need to be reordered so they do not obscure other objects, or need to be aligned on the slide to present a neater appearance. You can also group objects together to make it easy to move or resize them all at once.

### Setting Object Order

Objects stack up on a slide in the **order** in which you created them, from bottom to top. If you insert a slide title on a slide, it will be the object at the bottom of the stack. The last item you create or add to the slide will be at the top of the stack. You can envision each object as an invisible layer in the stack. You can adjust the order in which objects stack on the slide by using Arrange commands or the Selection pane.

Some objects can obscure other objects because of the order in which you add them to the slide. You use the Arrange options to reposition objects in the stack:

- **Bring to Front:** Moves the selected object to the front or top of the stack, on top of all other objects.
- **Bring Forward:** Moves an object one layer toward the front or top of the stack. Use this option if you need to position an object above some objects but below others.
- **Send to Back:** Moves an object all the way to the back or bottom of the stack, below all other objects.
- **Send Backward:** Moves an object one layer toward the back or bottom of the stack.

In this exercise, you will arrange some objects by changing their stacking order.

### STEP BY STEP

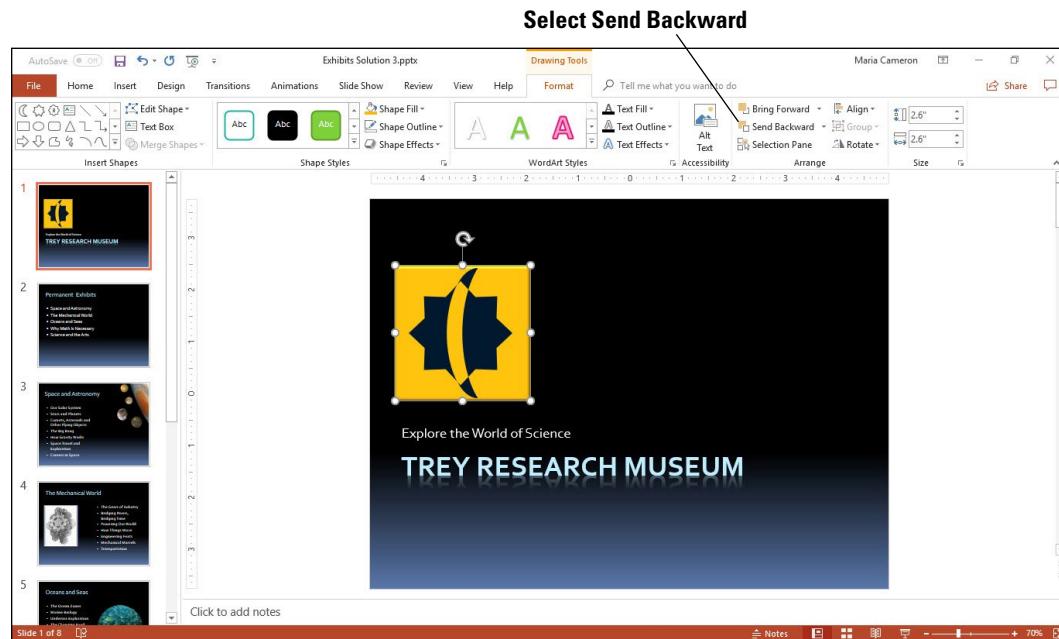
### Set Object Order

**GET READY. USE** the **Exhibits Solution 3** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 1** and draw a new rectangle that covers the logo:
  - a. Select the **Insert** tab, select **Shapes**, and then select **Rectangle**.
  - b. Drag to draw a square over the existing logo. Hold down **Shift** to constrain the rectangle to make it a square.
  - c. On the Drawing Tools Format tab, adjust the **Height** and **Width** of the rectangle so that its height and width are equal and just large enough to cover the logo. (You can also select the square and use handles to resize as necessary. Use the red guidelines to center the square over the shape.)
  - d. Select **Shape Fill** and then select **Gold, Accent 3**.
  - e. Select **Shape Effects**, point to **Bevel**, and then select **Round**.
2. On the Drawing Tools Format tab, select **Send Backward** (Figure 8-21). The rectangle moves behind the star/moon shapes.
3. Select the rectangle and the star/moon shapes and then align them with the left edges of the text. Look for the red guidelines as you move the shapes.
4. Select **slide 8**. On the Home tab, in the Drawing group, select the **Arrange** button and then choose **Selection Pane**. The Selection task pane opens, showing the current slide content in the order in which it was created, from bottom to top. This order is determined by the order in which the objects were added to the slide.

**Figure 8-21**

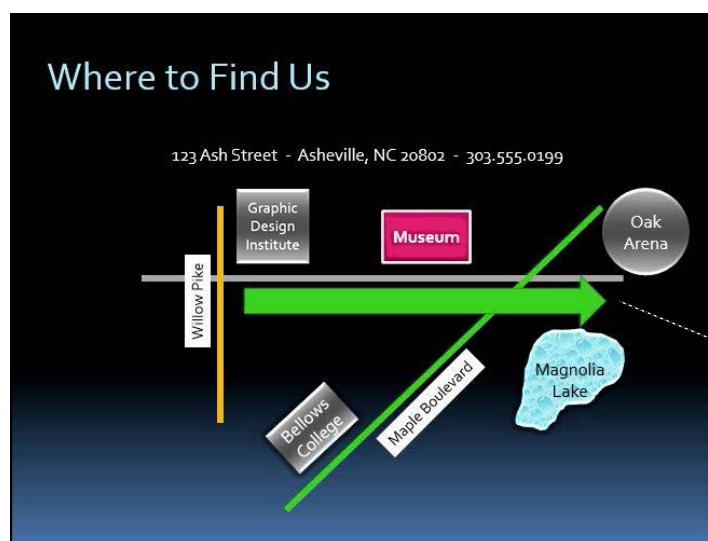
Move the rectangle behind the logo graphic



5. Select the gold Willow Pike street line in the map to view how it is identified in the Selection pane—it will have a name such as *Straight Connector 4* (or some other number). Then select the horizontal street line to display its name.
6. Select the Willow Pike street line again. If that line is not already on top of the horizontal street line, select the **Bring Forward** button (the up arrow) in the Selection task pane until it is.
7. Select the Willow Pike text box and then select the **Bring Forward** button until the text box is on top of the horizontal gray line in the map if was not already so.
8. Select the Maple Boulevard street line and then select the **Bring Forward** arrow until the diagonal street is above the horizontal street in the map if it is not already so. Then **CLOSE** the task pane.
9. You have one more shape to add to the map: an arrow that labels the horizontal street as Ash Street and indicates that the street is one way. Select the **Insert** tab, select **Shapes**, select **Arrow: Right** in the Block Arrows group, and then draw a block arrow (Figure 8-22). The arrow should be about **0.7** inches high and **5** inches wide.

**Figure 8-22**

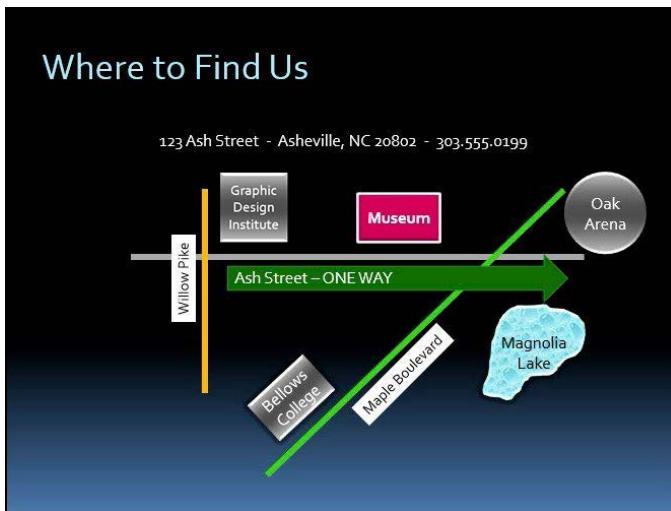
Draw a block arrow



10. In the arrow, type **Ash Street - ONE WAY**.
11. Select the **Home** tab and then select **Align Left** to make the text align on the left side of the arrow.
12. Select the **Shape Fill** button and apply the **Green, Accent 1, Darker 50%** color to the arrow.
13. Right-click a blank area of the block arrow (to the right of the words *ONE WAY*, for example), point to **Send to Back**, and then select **Send to Back**. The arrow moves behind all lines and shapes.
14. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab and then select the **Bring Forward** button until the arrow is in front of the diagonal line representing Maple Boulevard. Figure 8-23 displays the arrow on the map.

**Figure 8-23**

The arrow on the map



15. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Take Note** Arrange options also display on other Ribbon tabs, such as the Picture Tools Format and SmartArt Tools Format tabs.

### Aligning Objects with Each Other

Your drawings will present a more pleasing appearance if similar items are aligned with each other or to the slide. Use PowerPoint's alignment options to position objects neatly.

PowerPoint's alignment options allow you to line up objects on a slide both horizontally and vertically:

- Use Align Left, Align Center, or Align Right to align objects horizontally so that their left edges, vertical centers, or right edges are lined up with each other.
- Use Align Top, Align Middle, or Align Bottom to align objects vertically so that their top edges, horizontal centers, or bottom edges are lined up with each other.

You can also use distribute options to space objects evenly, either vertically or horizontally. This feature can be a great time-saver when you have a number of objects that you want to spread out evenly across a slide.

PowerPoint allows you to align (or distribute) objects either to each other or to the slide. If you select **Align Selected Objects** on the **Align** menu, PowerPoint will adjust only the selected objects. If you select **Align to Slide**, PowerPoint will rearrange objects using the entire slide area.

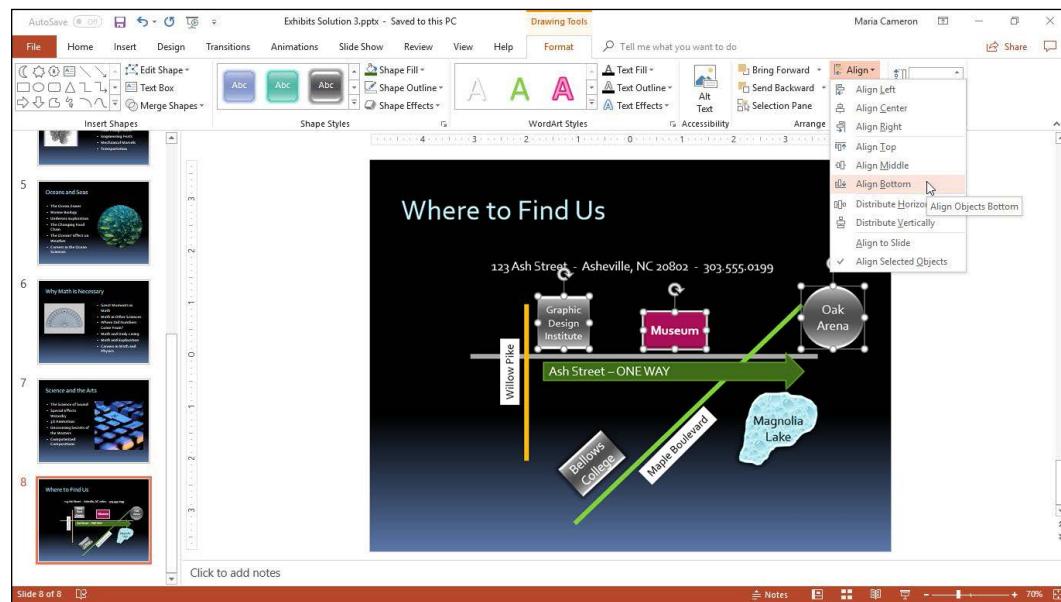
**STEP BY STEP****Align Objects with Each Other**

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On **slide 8**, select the Graphic Design Institute shape, hold down **Shift**, and then select the Museum shape and the Oak Arena shape. These landmarks can be aligned for a neater appearance.
2. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab if necessary and in the Arrange group, select **Align** and then select **Align Bottom** (Figure 8-24). The shapes are now aligned at the bottom so they are the same distance from the horizontal line. (If any of the objects is touching the line, press the up arrow with all three items still selected.)

**Figure 8-24**

Align the selected shapes at their bottoms



3. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Grouping Objects**

When a drawing consists of a number of objects, it can be tedious to move each one if you need to reposition the drawing. Grouping objects allows you to work with a number of objects as one unit. After grouping objects, you can still format an individual object in the group without first ungrouping the objects. In the following exercise, you will group objects into a single unit.

**STEP BY STEP****Group Objects**

**GET READY. USE** the *Exhibits Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. While still on slide 8, click above and to the left of the map (but below the line of text with the address and phone number) and then hold down the left mouse button and drag downward and to the right until you have included the entire map in the selected area. This action is called **lassoing** the shapes.
2. Release the mouse button. All the shapes within the selection lasso are selected.

3. Select the **Drawing Tools Format** tab. Select the **Group** button and then select **Group**. All objects are surrounded by a single selection border.
4. **SAVE** the **Exhibits Solution 3** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

#### Take Note

It is easy to miss an object when selecting parts of a complex drawing to create a group. To check that you have all objects selected, move the group. You will easily notice if one or more objects do not move with the group. Undo the move, select the group, select any other objects that need to belong to the group, and issue the Group command again.

## Knowledge Assessment

### Matching

Match the term in Column 1 to its description in Column 2.

| Column 1 | Column 2 |
|----------|----------|
|----------|----------|

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. Arrange      | a. The relationship of width to height for a picture                            |
| 2. Constrain    | b. Sizing to a percentage of the original size                                  |
| 3. Aspect ratio | c. To force a drawing tool to create a shape such as a perfect square or circle |
| 4. Scaling      | d. To move one object behind or in front of another                             |
| 5. Crop         | e. To remove portions of a picture you do not need                              |

### True/False

Circle T if the statement is true or F if the statement is false.

- T **F** 1. When adding an image to a slide, you are limited to the pictures stored on your computer.
- T **F** 2. The Merge Shapes feature merges two or more overlapping drawn shapes.
- T **F** 3. To add text to a shape, select the shape and begin typing.
- T **F** 4. If you want an object to be at the bottom of a stack of objects, you would use Send to Back.
- T **F** 5. You can format a single object in a group without having to ungroup all objects.

## Projects

### Project 8-1: Inserting and Resizing a Picture

You are a recruiter for Woodgrove Bank, and you have prepared a presentation to be delivered at a local job fair. You need to locate a picture to illustrate one of the presentation's slides. You can use Bing to search online for a suitable picture.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the **Job Fair** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Job Fair Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select **slide 5** and select the **Online Pictures** icon in the right content placeholder.
4. In the Bing text box, type **business person** and then press **Enter**.

5. Review the results to find a photograph of one or more professionally dressed business persons. Select the picture and then select **Insert** to insert it into the placeholder.
6. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab and use the Size options to resize the picture to be **3** inches wide.
7. Select the **View** tab and then select **Gridlines**. Use the gridlines to align the top of the picture with the top of the text in the left placeholder.
8. Select the picture, then the **Picture Tools Format** tab, then **Picture Effects**, point to **Shadow**, and then in the Outer section, select the **Offset: Top Right** shadow effect.
9. Hide the gridlines.
10. **SAVE** the **Job Fair Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

---

### Project 8-2: Formatting a Picture

You have decided you need another picture in the Job Fair Solution presentation. You have a picture file you think will work.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **Job Fair Solution** presentation that you saved in the previous project.
2. Select **slide 2** and then select the **Pictures** icon in the right content placeholder.
3. Navigate to the data files for this lesson, locate **Building.jpg**, select the file, and then select **Insert**.
4. Right-click the picture and select **Size and Position**. In the Format Picture task pane, scale the picture to **90%** of its current height and width.
5. Press **Alt+F9** to display drawing guides. Click the slide title placeholder to display its border and then drag the vertical guide to the right to align with the right border of the slide title text box.
6. Drag the horizontal guide up to align with the top of the capital letter *E* in the first bulleted item in the left content placeholder.
7. Reposition the picture so that its upper-right corner snaps to the intersection of the two guides. Press **Alt+F9** to hide the guides.
8. Select the **Picture Tools Format** tab, and then in the Picture Styles group, select the **More** button and then select the **Drop Shadow Rectangle** picture style.
9. Right-click the picture, select **Format Picture**, select the **Picture** icon in the Format Picture task pane, and then under Picture Corrections, change Brightness to **5%** and Contrast to **10%**.
10. In the Adjust group on the Picture Tools Format tab, select **Compress Pictures** and then select **E-mail (96 ppi)**. Select **OK**.
11. **SAVE** the **Job Fair Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill                                | Exam Objective   | Objective Number                                   |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| Setting Up Slide Transitions         | Insert slide transitions<br>Set transition effect options<br>Set transition effect duration<br>Configure transition start and finish options   | 4.1.1<br>4.1.2<br>4.3.1<br>4.3.2                   |
| Animating Slide Content              | Apply animations to objects<br>Apply animations to text<br>Set animation effect options<br>Reorder animations on a slide<br>Set animation paths  | 4.2.1<br>4.2.2<br>4.2.3<br>4.3.3<br>4.2.4          |
| Adding Media Clips to a Presentation | Insert audio and video clips<br>Configure media playback options<br>Set media timing options<br>Set the video start and stop time<br>Adjust media window size<br>Preserve presentation content | 3.4.1<br>3.4.2<br>3.4.5<br>3.4.4<br>3.4.3<br>5.2.4 |

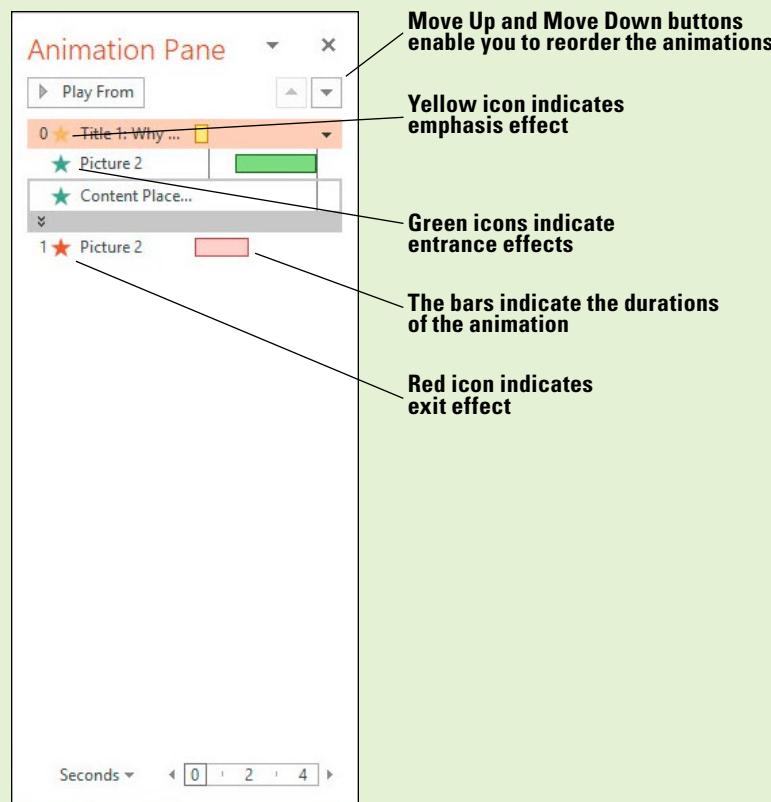
## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### The Animation Pane

The **Animation Pane** (Figure 9-1) enables you to manage all the animation effects on the active slide. Each object can have multiple animation effects, including entrance, exit, emphasis, and motion path effect types.

PowerPoint professionals often use complex sequences of animation effects to add movement and interest to an otherwise static presentation. Animation effects applied to static images can be a cost-effective alternative to creating live motion video.

**Figure 9-1**  
The Animation Pane



## SETTING UP SLIDE TRANSITIONS

**Transitions** are animated effects that occur when you move from one slide to another. They differ from animations in that animations apply to individual items on a slide whereas transitions apply only to entire slides. You can control the effect, its speed, its sound effect (if any), and in some cases other options, such as direction.

### Applying and Modifying a Transition Effect

By default, there are no transitions assigned to slides. When you advance to the next slide, it simply appears in place of the previous one. For more impressive transitions, you can choose one of the preset transition effects that PowerPoint provides and then modify it as needed. In this exercise, you will apply and customize a transition effect.

You can apply any of the transition effects from the Transitions tab, and then modify the chosen transition's options. Some transitions have effect options you can choose from the Effect Options button; if you choose a transition that does not have any, that button is unavailable.

You can assign a sound to a transition if desired. You can select any of the PowerPoint preset sounds from the Sound menu, or choose Other Sound from the menu to open a dialog box from which you can browse for your own sounds.

The Duration setting for a transition is its speed of execution—that is, the number of seconds the effect takes to occur. Each transition has a default duration; increase the duration to slow it down, or decrease the duration to speed it up.

The Apply To All button copies the transition from the active slide to all other slides. To remove the transitions from all slides at once, first set one of the slides to have a transition of None, and then select Apply To All.

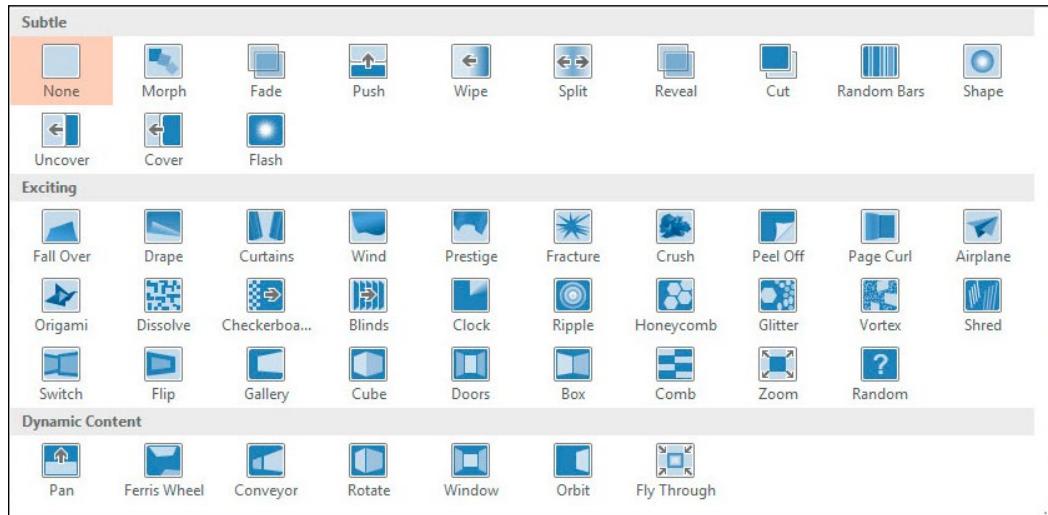
**STEP BY STEP****Apply and Modify a Transition Effect**

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint 2016.

1. **OPEN** the *Lobby* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Lobby Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select the **View** tab, select the **Slide Sorter** button, and then select **slide 2**. Decrease the zoom, if necessary, so that all slides display onscreen.
4. Select the **Transitions** tab, and then in the Transition to This Slide group, select the **More** button. A palette of transition effects opens (Figure 9-2).

**Figure 9-2**

The PowerPoint transition effects



5. Select the **Honeycomb** effect. The effect is previewed immediately on slide 2.

**Take Note**

Notice that there is a small star below the lower-right corner of slide 2. This indicates that a transition or animation has been applied to the slide.

6. On the **Transitions** tab, in the **Timing** group, set the **Duration** to **06.00**. This action sets the transition to execute in 6 seconds.
7. Select the Sound **drop-down arrow** and then select **Camera** (to add the sound of a camera shutter opening and closing at each transition).
8. In the **Preview** group, select the **Preview** button (or select the small **star icon** below slide 2) to display the effect again at the new speed, including the newly assigned sound.

**Take Note**

If you do not hear the sound, try previewing it again. If you still do not hear the sound, make sure your speakers are on or your system's sound is not muted in Windows, and that the volume is turned up.

9. In the **Transition to This Slide** group, select the **More** button again, and in the **Subtle** section, select **Wipe** to apply the Wipe transition to the selected slide.

**Take Note**

Notice that the Duration setting is reset to the default for the newly chosen transition, but the sound (Camera) previously selected remains selected.

10. On the **Transitions** tab, select the **Effect Options** button. A menu of effect options opens.
11. Select **From Left**. The new effect option is previewed on the slide automatically.
12. Select **Apply To All**. The transition effect is copied to all the other slides in the presentation. Now all the slides have small star icons beneath them.
13. Select the **Slide Show** tab, and then in the **Start Slide Show** group, select **From Beginning** and watch the whole presentation from beginning to end, clicking to move to the next slide. When finished, press **Esc** to return to Slide Sorter view.

**14. SAVE** the presentation.**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.**Take Note**

In PowerPoint 2016, there is a new transition called Morph. This transition allows you to move objects from one slide to their new location on another slide. The most effective way to use the Morph transition is to duplicate the slide, move the objects around to their new places, and then apply the Morph transition.

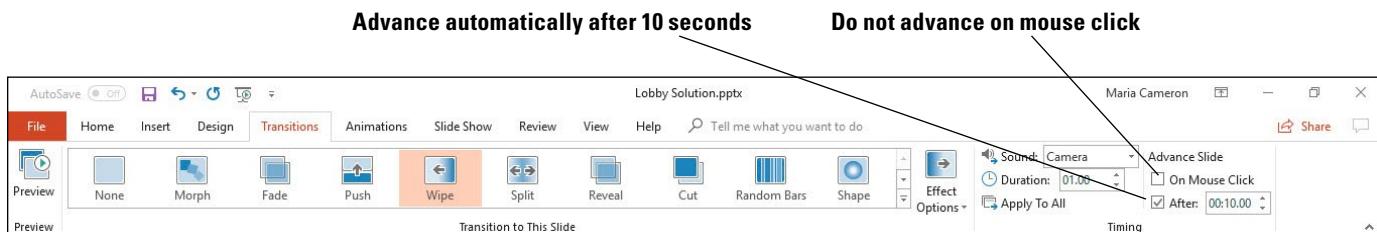
**Determining How Slides Will Advance**

By default, the presentation advances from one slide to the next when you click the mouse. Slides can be set to advance automatically after a certain amount of time, manually upon mouse click (or other signal, such as pressing the Enter key), or both. If both are selected, the slide will advance immediately if you click the mouse, otherwise advance will occur when the allotted time elapses. In this exercise, you will learn how to set slides to advance automatically after a certain amount of time and to advance manually upon a mouse click.

**STEP BY STEP****Set Slides to Advance Manually or Automatically**

**GET READY. USE** the *Lobby Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. In Slide Sorter view, select **slide 1**.
2. Select the **Transitions** tab, and then in the Timing group, select the **After** check box to indicate that the slide should advance manually after a certain amount of time has passed.
3. Select the up increment arrow in the After text box until it reads **00:10.00** (to set the amount of time to 10 seconds).
4. Clear the **On Mouse Click** check box (Figure 9-3). Then select **Apply To All**.

**Figure 9-3**

Choose to advance automatically, but not on mouse click

5. Select the **Slide Show** tab, select **From Beginning**, and then begin watching the presentation. Try clicking the mouse; notice that it does not advance to the next slide.
6. After viewing three slides, press **Esc** to return to Slide Sorter view.
7. Select the **Transitions** tab and then select the **On Mouse Click** check box.
8. Select **Apply To All**. Now all slides will advance automatically after 10 seconds (or earlier, if the mouse is clicked before 10 seconds elapses).
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

When creating a self-running presentation, such as for a lobby display, it is important that nothing be set to happen only with a mouse click, because the audience will have no access to a mouse.

## ANIMATING SLIDE CONTENT

You can animate individual objects on a slide to give the presentation a more active and dynamic feel. Objects can be set to enter or exit the slide in an animated way. For example, a picture could fly onto the slide, stay on the screen for a few seconds, and then fly away again. Text can also be animated; it can be set to appear all at once or one bullet point at a time.

**Animations** are effects applied to placeholders or other content to move the content in unique ways on the slide. Animations can be roughly divided into four types: entrance, emphasis, exit, and motion paths. **Entrance effects** animate an object's entry onto the slide, separately from the entrance of the slide itself. If an object does not have an entrance effect, it enters at the same time as the slide. An **emphasis effect** modifies an object that is already on the slide, calling attention to it by moving it or changing its colors. An **exit effect** causes the object to leave the slide before the slide itself exits. A **motion path** effect moves the object from point A to point B, following along a path that you create for it.

### Applying Animations

Many animation effects are available on the Animations tab for an object's entrance, emphasis, and exit. You can apply them to both graphic objects and text. After applying an animation, you can modify it by changing its options. In this exercise, you will apply an animation effect and then modify it for a custom effect.

#### STEP BY STEP

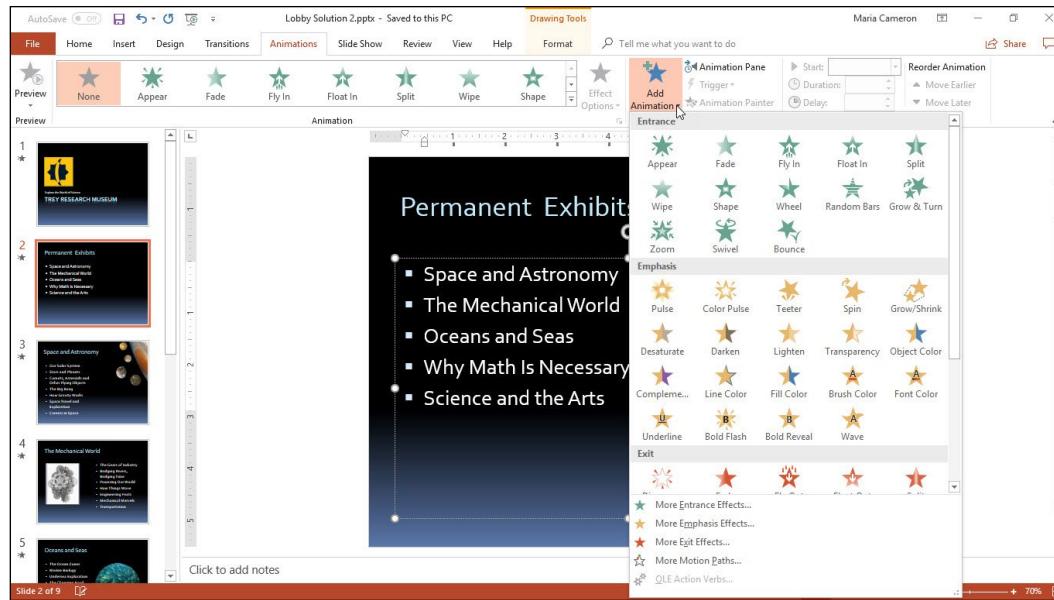
#### Apply and Modify Animations

**GET READY.** USE the *Lobby Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. **SAVE** the presentation as *Lobby Solution 2* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
2. Select the **View** tab, select **Normal** view, and then select **slide 2**.
3. Select in the bulleted list to move the insertion point there.
4. Select the **Animations** tab, and then in the Advanced Animation group, select **Add Animation**. A menu of animation presets appears (Figure 9-4).

**Figure 9-4**

Select an entrance animation preset



5. Select **Fly In**. The animation is previewed on the slide.
6. Select the **Effect Options** button. A menu of options appears.
7. Select **From Top-Left**. The effect is previewed. Notice that each bullet point flies in separately.
8. Select the **Effect Options** button again.
9. Select **All at Once**. The effect is previewed. Notice that all the bullets fly in at once.

**Take Note**

The text options like the one you selected in step 7 are available only when animating text, not graphics.

10. Select **slide 3** and select the graphic in the upper-right corner.
11. On the Animations tab, select the **Add Animation** button and then select **More Emphasis Effects**.
12. In the Add Emphasis Effect dialog box, in the Subtle section, select **Pulse**. The effect is previewed on the graphic.
13. Select **OK** to accept the new effect.
14. On the Animations tab, in the Duration box, select the up increment arrow until the setting is **04.00**.
15. Select the **Preview** button to preview the animation at its new duration setting.
16. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Using Motion Path Animation

Motion paths enable you to set a graphic to move from one place to another. You can start with a preset, as you learn to do in this exercise, and then modify the path to fine-tune it. To modify the path, on the Animations tab, select Effect Options, and then select Edit Points. Then you can drag the individual points that comprise the path. In this exercise, you will apply a motion path animation to a graphic.

**STEP BY STEP**

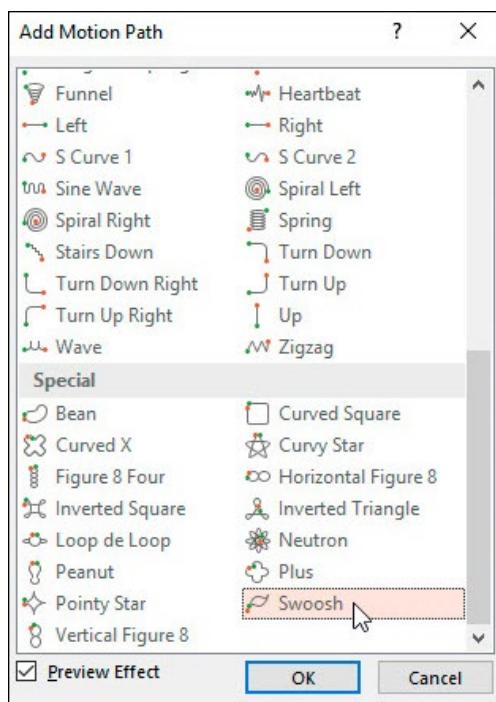
### Use a Motion Path Animation

**GET READY. USE** the **Lobby Solution 2** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 5** and select the graphic.
2. On the Animations tab, select **Add Animation** and then select **More Motion Paths**. The Add Motion Path dialog box appears.
3. In the Add Motion Path dialog box, scroll down to the Special section and select **Swoosh** (Figure 9-5). The animation is previewed on the slide.
4. Select **OK** to apply the animation. A dotted line appears on the graphic, showing the motion path. This dotted line will not appear in Slide Show view.
5. Select **Effect Options** and then select **Reverse Path Direction**. The Swoosh effect is previewed again, this time going in the opposite direction.

**Figure 9-5**

Select a motion path animation



**6. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

The start point is represented by an arrow (or in some motion paths, a circle). If the start and end point is the same spot, only a green arrow or circle displays; however, if the end point is different, it appears as a red arrow or circle. The motion path you applied in the preceding steps has the same starting and ending point, so only a green arrow appears.

### Modifying an Animation's Start Options and Timing

Each animation has its own separate start, duration, and delay settings. The animation's **duration** determines how quickly it will execute. Each animation effect has a default duration, which you can adjust up or down. The **delay** is the amount of time to wait between the previous action and this animation. You might, for example, use a delay to give the audience a chance to read some text on the screen. By setting these properties, you can sequence multiple animation effects to produce the exact appearance you want.

Each animation has its own start options and timing settings, separate from the slide itself. The start options available are On Click (the default), With Previous, and After Previous. **On Click** waits for a mouse click to start the animation; the slide show pauses until the click is received. **With Previous** starts the animation simultaneously with the start of the previous action. If it is the first animation on the slide, the previous action is the entrance of the slide itself; otherwise, the previous action is the previous animation on that slide. **After Previous** starts the animation after the previous action has completed. If the previous action is very quick, you may not notice any difference between With Previous and After Previous.

In this exercise, you will modify the start options and timing for an animation.

**STEP BY STEP****Modify Animation Start Options and Timing**

**GET READY.** USE the *Lobby Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 6** and select the graphic.
2. On the Animations tab, select **Add Animation** and then select **More Entrance Effects**. The Add Entrance Effect dialog box opens.
3. In the Exciting section, select **Pinwheel**.
4. Select **OK**.
5. On the Animations tab, in the Timing group, select the Start **drop-down arrow** and select **After Previous**.
6. In the Duration box, select the up increment arrow until the setting is **03.00**.
7. In the Delay box, select the up increment arrow until the setting is **01.00**. Figure 9-6 shows the settings on the Animations tab. This animation will start one second after the previous event and will last for three seconds.



**Figure 9-6**

Animation settings

8. Select the **Preview** button to check the new settings.
9. With the graphic still selected, choose **Add Animation** and then select **More Exit Effects**. The Add Exit Effect dialog box opens.
10. Select **Pinwheel** and then select **OK**. Notice that there are 0 and 1 icons near the upper-left corner of the graphic on the slide. The 0 represents the first animation effect (the entrance) and the 1 represents the second effect (the exit).
11. Select the **1** icon next to the graphic to make sure that the exit effect animation is selected.
12. On the Animations tab, in the Delay box, select the up increment arrow until the setting is **03.00**.
13. Select the **Preview** button to watch the entire animation sequence.
14. Select in the bulleted list. On the Animations tab, select **Add Animation** and then select **Fade** in the Entrance section. Notice that each bulleted item has a numbered icon to its left.
15. Select the **1** icon to the left of the graphic. On the Animations tab, select **Move Later**. The exit effect moves to position 7 (after the bulleted list completes).
16. Select in the bulleted list again. On the Animations tab, select the Start **drop-down arrow** and select **With Previous**. Then select the **Effect Options** button and select **By Paragraph**.
17. Select the **Preview** button to check the new settings.
18. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Using the Animation Pane

When a slide has multiple animations on it, you might find the Animation Pane helpful in viewing and organizing the animations. The Animation Pane lists each of the animations associated with the active slide's content and enables you to fine-tune them. From the Animation Pane, you can reorder animations, adjust their settings, and view how they overlap and interact with one another. Within the Animation Pane, an animated object that consists of multiple paragraphs appears by

default as a single item, so you can apply the same settings to all paragraphs. You can optionally expand that entry to a list of each individual paragraph, so you can animate them separately if you prefer. In this exercise, you will use the Animation Pane to fine-tune the animation effects on a slide.

In addition to using the controls on the Animations tab on the Ribbon, you can display a dialog box for each animation by opening the animation's menu in the Animation Pane and choosing Effect Options. The name of the dialog box depends on the animation type. Within this dialog box are settings that, among other things, let you associate a sound with an animation and let you reverse the order in which a list appears. To remove an animation from the slide, select the animation either in the Animation Pane or by selecting the numbered icon to the left of the object on the slide, and then press the Delete key on the keyboard.

## STEP BY STEP

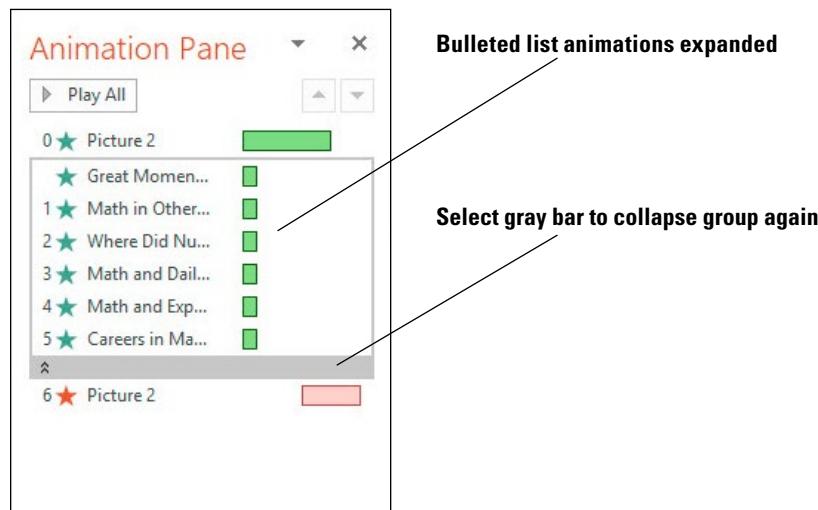
### Use the Animation Pane

**GET READY. USE** the *Lobby Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the Animations tab, select **Animation Pane**. The Animation Pane appears at the right. It lists the three animation items for slide 6.
2. Select the gray bar that separates the second and third animations. The list expands to show each bulleted list item as a separate animation event. Select a blank area of the Animation Pane (Figure 9-7).

**Figure 9-7**

The bulleted list animations are expanded



**Take Note** When the list is expanded, each item is edited separately. If you want to change the settings for the entire list, you should collapse the list again before changing settings.

3. Select the gray bar again to collapse the animations for the bulleted list.
4. In the Animation Pane, select the **Content Placeholder** animation, and then select the **drop-down arrow** to its right to open its menu. On the menu, select **Effect Options**. The Fade dialog box opens.
5. Select the **Text Animation** tab.
6. Select the **In reverse order** check box.
7. Select the **Automatically after** check box and then select the up increment arrow to set the number of seconds to **3**.
8. Select **OK**. Notice that the Start setting on the Animations tab has changed to After Previous.

9. If the animation does not preview automatically, select **Preview** to watch the animation for this slide.
10. Select **slide 1**, click in the slide, and then press **Ctrl+A** to select all objects on the slide.
11. On the Animations tab, select **Add Animation**, and then in the Entrance section, select **Float In**. The same animation effect is applied to all objects.
12. On the Animations tab, select the Start **drop-down arrow** and then select **With Previous**.
13. In the Animation Pane, select the animation for the title (**Title 1**) and press the **Delete** key to remove the animation for that object.
14. Select only the slide's title text box (Trey Research Museum). Select **Add Animation**, and in the Emphasis section, select **Wave**.
15. In the Animation Pane, confirm that the Title object's animation is already selected and then select the **Move Up** button (at the top of the task pane) three times to move the animation to the top of the list, so that it executes first.
16. Select the Start **drop-down arrow** and then select **After Previous**, setting the Wave animation to occur after the slide appears.
17. In the Animation Pane, select the **drop-down arrow** to the right of the animation, opening its menu. Then select **Effect Options**.
18. Select the Sound **drop-down arrow**, select **Arrow**, and then select **OK**.
19. Select the **Preview** button to preview the slide's animation.
20. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Using Animation Painter

**Animation Painter** enables you to select an object that already has the animation you want, including the delay, duration, sound effects, and so on, and then copy that animation to another object. Animation Painter is very much like Format Painter, but it works for animations rather than for formatting. When you select Animation Painter, the mouse pointer becomes a paintbrush. You can then navigate to any other slide (or stay on the same slide) and select another object to receive the animation settings. If you double-click Animation Painter rather than single-clicking it, it stays on until you turn it off (by selecting it again, or by pressing Esc), so you can paint the same animation onto multiple objects. In this exercise, you will copy animation from one object to another.

### STEP BY STEP

### Use Animation Painter

**GET READY. USE** the **Lobby Solution 2** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On slide 1, select the **Explore the World of Science** text box.
2. On the Animations tab, select **Animation Painter**.
3. Select **slide 8** and select **Where to Find Us**. The animation is copied to that text box.
4. **CLOSE** the Animation Pane.
5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## ADDING MEDIA CLIPS TO A PRESENTATION

**Audio** (sound), **video** (moving picture), and **screen recording** clips can add interest to a presentation by drawing the audience's attention more than a static show. You can include your own audio and video clips that you have recorded or acquired, record your own audio to insert, select from video clips you find online via a YouTube search, or use a video embed code. You can also apply formatting styles to audio and video content, as you do for images.

The timing options available to media clips are similar to the options available for animations and transitions. Select the Playback tab in either the Audio or Video Tools tabs. You can set the duration on the Fade In and Fade Out settings, select to loop the audio or video until it's stopped (throughout the entire presentation), set audio to play across all slides in the presentation or just one, and much more. You explore some of these options in the following sections.

### Adding an Audio File to a Slide

Audio files can provide simple sound effects, music soundtracks, real-time recorded narration, or prerecorded narration in a presentation. You can add audio from files on your own PC or record your own audio. You can specify when the sound will play, how loud it will be (in comparison to the overall sound level), and which user controls will be available onscreen.

You have a number of options for adding audio to a presentation:

- Use **Audio on My PC** if you have an audio file in a supported format that you want to insert. PowerPoint can handle ADTS, AIFF, AU, FLAC, MIDI, MKA, MP3, MP4, WAV, and WMA files.
- Use **Record Audio** if you want to record your own audio to play on the slide. You must have a microphone to record audio.

In this exercise, you will record your own audio to add to the presentation, delete it, and then add an audio clip from the data files provided for this exercise.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Add an Audio Clip to a Slide

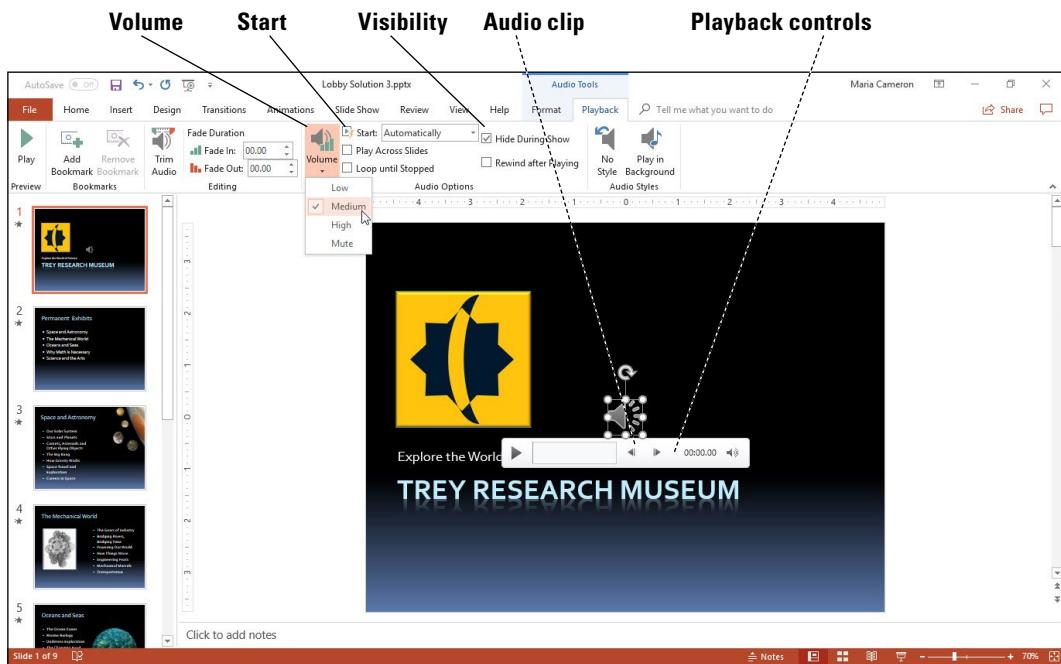
**GET READY. USE** the *Lobby Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. **SAVE** the presentation as *Lobby Solution 3* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
2. Select **slide 1**. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the Media group, select the **Audio** button. On the menu that appears, select **Record Audio**. The Record Sound dialog box opens where you can name your sound.
3. Type **Welcome slide** in the Name box and select the red **record** button. The blue square button becomes active. Say **Welcome to the Trey Research Museum**. Select **OK**. A sound icon appears in the center of the slide.
4. Press **F5** to change to Slide Show view and then select the sound icon on the slide. The sound plays.
5. Press **Esc** to return to Normal view.
6. Select the sound icon on slide 1 and press **Delete** on the keyboard to remove it.
7. With slide 1 still displayed, on the Insert tab, select the **Audio** button and then select **Audio on My PC**. The Insert Audio dialog box opens.
8. Navigate to the data files for this lesson, select **Beethoven's Ninth** (or the audio of your choice), and then select **Insert**. A sound icon appears in the center of the slide.
9. On the Audio Tools Playback tab, in the Audio Options group, select the Start **drop-down arrow** and then select **Automatically**.
10. In the Audio Options group, select the **Hide During Show** check box.

11. In the Audio Options group, select the **Volume** button, and then select **Medium**. Figure 9-8 shows the Audio Tools Playback tab and the playback controls.

**Figure 9-8**

Adjust the sound clip's volume, start setting, and visibility, and view playback controls



12. View the first two slides in Slide Show view. Notice that the sound quits after the first slide. The camera sound associated with the transitions is distracting from the music. Press **Esc** to return to Normal view.
13. Select the **Transitions** tab, select the Sound drop-down arrow, and then select **[No Sound]**. Then select **Apply To All**.
14. Select the sound icon on slide 1.
15. Select the **Audio Tools Playback** tab and then select the **Play Across Slides** check box.
16. Watch the first several slides in Slide Show view. This time notice that the sound continues as you move from one slide to another. Then press **Esc** to return to Normal view.
17. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Adding a Video to a Slide

You can insert videos from your own collection to add visual interest or information to a presentation. PowerPoint accepts Adobe Flash videos (.swf) as well as many standard formats such as Windows Media (.asf) and Video (.avi), MP4, and Movie files (.mpg or .mpeg). You can insert video content using the Video button on the Insert tab, or using the Insert Video icon in a content placeholder.

In this exercise, you will insert a video clip from a file, set it to play automatically, and set some playback options for it.

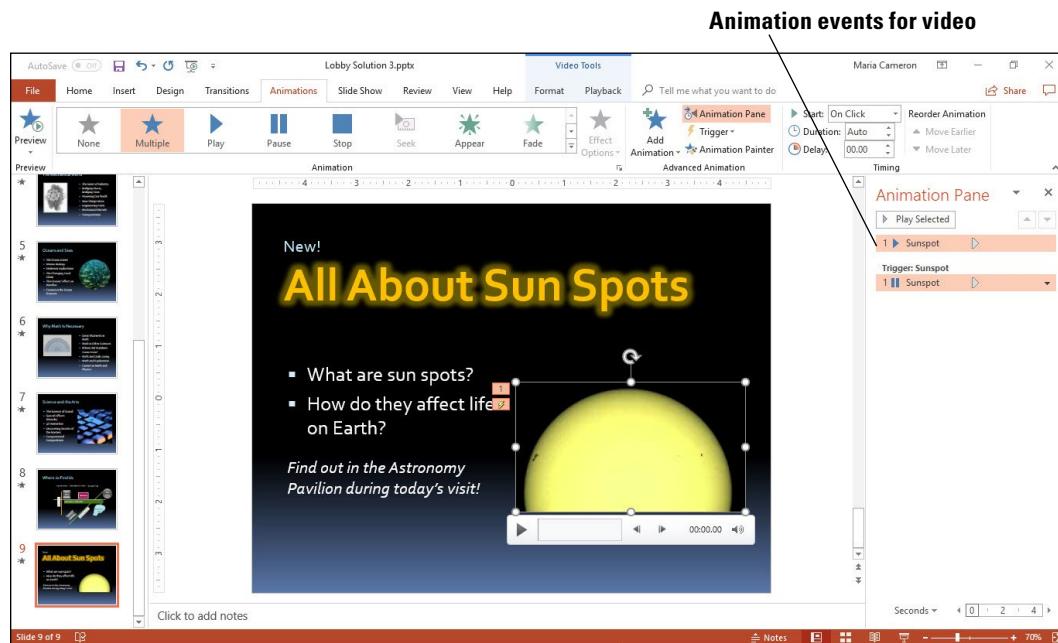
**STEP BY STEP****Add a Video to a Slide**

**GET READY.** USE the *Lobby Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 9**.
2. Select the **Insert Video** icon in the empty placeholder box. The Insert Video dialog box opens.
3. Select the **Browse** button next to From a file. The next Insert Video dialog box opens.
4. Navigate to the folder containing the data files for this lesson and select *Sunspot.mp4*. Then select **Insert**. The clip appears in the placeholder, with playback controls beneath it.
5. Select the **Animations** tab and then select **Animation Pane**. The Animation Pane opens. Notice that there are animation events for the video clip already there (Figure 9-9).

**Figure 9-9**

The video clip is part of the slide's animation sequence



6. **CLOSE** the Animation Pane.
7. Select the **Video Tools Playback** tab, select the Start **drop-down arrow**, and then select **Automatically**.
8. Select the **Loop until Stopped** check box. This action makes the clip continue to play until the slide advances.
9. Select the up increment arrow button on the **Fade In** box until the value is **00.50** (one half a second). Do the same thing for the **Fade Out** box.
10. Select the **Slide Show** tab, and then in the Start Slide Show group, select **From Current Slide** to watch this slide in Slide Show view. Press **Esc** to return to the presentation.
11. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Trimming a Video Clip

The raw video footage that you have on hand may need some cuts to be appropriate for your presentation. You can do this editing in a third-party video editing application, but if all you need is to trim some of the footage off the beginning and/or end of the clip, it may be easier to do that work in PowerPoint. In this exercise, you will trim two seconds off the beginning and end of a video.

### STEP BY STEP

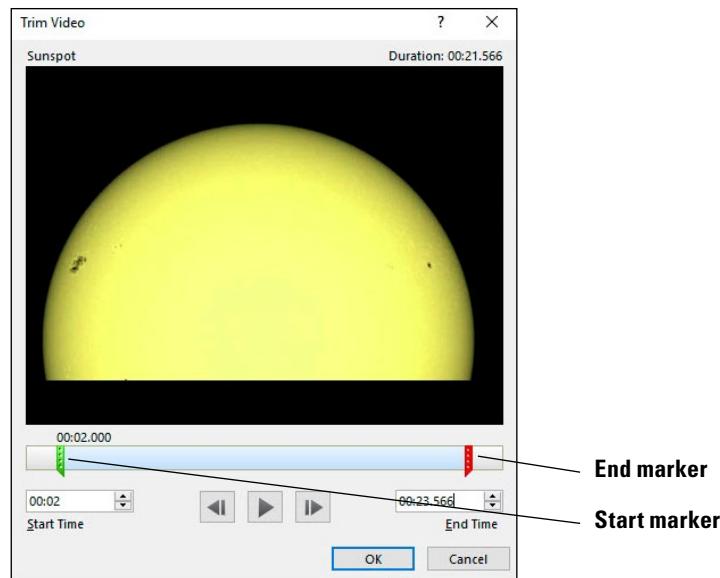
### Trim a Video Clip

**GET READY. USE** the *Lobby Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 9** and select the video clip.
2. Select the **Video Tools Playback** tab and then select **Trim Video**. The Trim Video dialog box opens.
3. Drag the green **Start** marker to approximately the **00:02** spot on the timeline, or change the value in the **Start Time** box to **00:02.000**.
4. Drag the red **End** marker to approximately the **00:23.566** spot on the timeline, or change the value in the **End Time** box to **00:23.566** (Figure 9-10).

**Figure 9-10**

Trim two seconds off the beginning and end of the clip



5. Select **OK**. The clip is now trimmed.
6. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

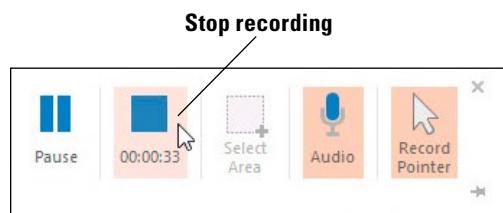
## Adding a Screen Recording to the Slide

Screen recordings are new in PowerPoint 2016. They allow you to illustrate an action on your computer with or without audio to show viewers how to do something. When you insert a screen recording, it is treated just like a video, displays the Video Tools tab, and has the same formatting and playback options. In the following example, you insert a screen recording that shows viewers how to find an interactive map to the museum.

**STEP BY STEP****Add a Screen Recording to a Slide**

**GET READY.** USE the *Lobby Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Insert a new **Title Only** slide after slide 8 and title it **Find an Interactive Map**.
2. Open a browser window, open a search engine, and then switch back to PowerPoint.
3. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the **Media** section, select **Screen Recording**.
4. Select the area you want to record, which is the browser window in this example.
5. Select the **Record** button and wait for the countdown to complete.
6. In your browser window, type **123 Ash Street, Asheville, NC 20802** in the search box and then press **Enter**.
7. Locate the displayed map, and then point to the top of the screen and select the **Stop** button in the controls (Figure 9-11). Adjust the size and position of the video clip on the slide, if necessary. Remember, this is a fictional address and location so even though you find a map, the details will not match the map on slide 8.



**Figure 9-11**

The Stop button

8. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Formatting Video or Audio Content**

Any video clip on a slide and any audio clip that has a visible icon on a slide can be formatted with the PowerPoint built-in styles. This works just like the style-based formatting for graphic objects: You select a style from a gallery. You can then customize it as desired by applying formatting. You can also choose a frame of the video clip that will appear on the slide whenever the video clip is not playing.

**Choosing a Poster Frame**

A **poster frame** is an image that displays on the slide when the video clip is not actively playing. You can use an outside image, but it is often easier to select a frame from the video clip itself. Poster frames are useful because often the first frame of the video clip is not an image that is meaningful or recognizable. Instead of choosing Current Frame from the Poster Frame menu, as you will do in this exercise, you can choose Image from File to select your own image. To remove any poster frame so that the first frame of the video clip is once again the default image for the clip, choose Reset from the menu. In this exercise, you will choose a poster frame to display for a video clip.

**STEP BY STEP****Choose a Poster Frame**

**GET READY.** USE the *Lobby Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 10** and then select the video clip.
2. Select the **Play** button (the right-pointing triangle) below the video clip to begin its playback. When the image onscreen shows the sun spot (the dark spot) in the center, select the **Pause** button to pause it.

3. Select the **Video Tools Format** tab, and then in the Adjust group, select **Poster Frame**, and then select **Current Frame**.
4. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Applying a Video Style and Formatting

Whereas the tools on the Video Tools Playback tab control the clip's motion effects, the tools on the Video Tools Format tab control its static appearance, including its borders, effects, and any color or contrast corrections. The tools here are very similar to those for graphic images, which you learned about in Lesson 8. In this exercise, you will apply a video style and some picture corrections.

### STEP BY STEP

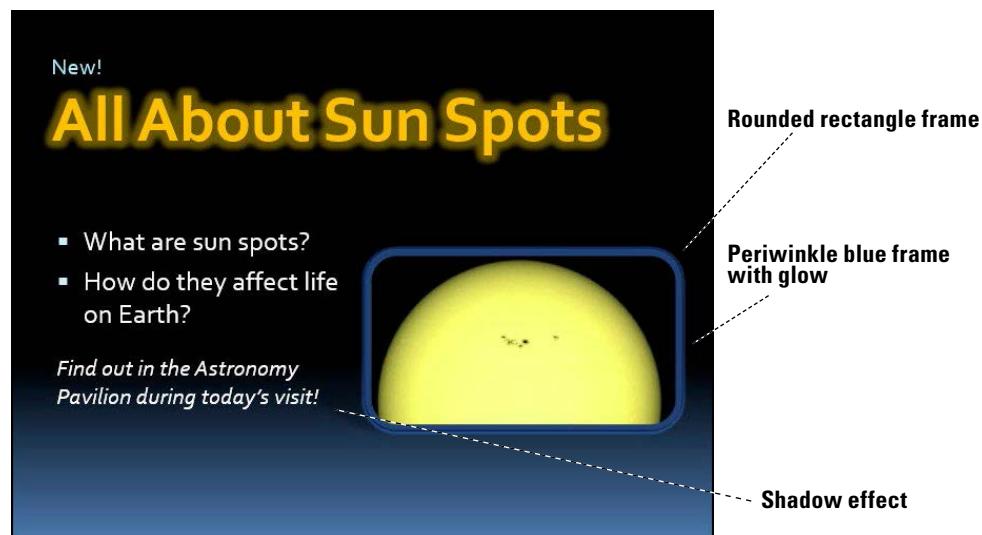
### Apply a Video Style and Formatting

**GET READY.** USE the *Lobby Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On slide 10, select the video clip.
2. On the Video Tools Format tab, in the Video Styles group, select the **More** button, opening the Video Styles gallery.
3. In the Subtle section, select the **Simple Frame, White** style. The frame of the video clip changes.
4. In the Video Styles group, select the **Video Shape** button, and on the Shapes palette that appears, select the **Rectangle: Rounded Corners** shape. The shape of the video clip's frame changes.
5. In the Video Styles group, select the **Video Border** button, and on the palette of colors that appears, select **Periwinkle, Accent 5, Darker 50%**.
6. In the Video Styles group, select the **Video Effects** button, point to **Glow**, and then select **Glow: 5 point; Periwinkle, Accent color 5**.
7. Select the **Video Effects** button again, point to **Shadow**, and in the Perspective section, select **Perspective: Upper Left**. click outside of the video clip to deselect it. Figure 9-12 shows the completed formatting.

**Figure 9-12**

The formatted video clip



8. On slide 10, select the video clip. Select the **Video Tools Format** tab, select the **Corrections** button and then select **Brightness: 0% (Normal) Contrast: +20%**.

9. Select the **Slide Show** tab and then clear the **Show Media Controls** check box. This action prevents the media controls under the video clip from appearing in Slide Show view.
10. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

#### Take Note

Part of the clip's appearance is the media control bar, or the thick gray bar that appears beneath the clip. If the presentation is self-running, you might prefer to hide that from the audience. To do so, clear the Show Media Controls check box on the Slide Show tab as you did in step 9.

### Sizing and Arranging Video or Audio Content

Video clips (and audio clips that have a visible icon) can be sized and arranged like any other content on a slide. You can drag them to move or resize them or specify exact measurements. You can also align them with other content using the Align tools, which you learned about in Lesson 8 when working with drawn shapes. In this exercise, you will change the size of a video clip and align it on the slide using guides.

#### STEP BY STEP

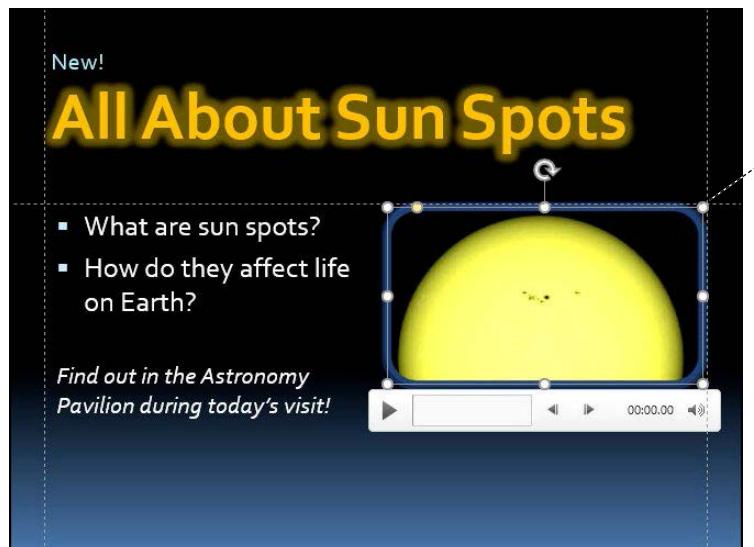
#### Size and Arrange a Video Clip

**GET READY. USE** the **Lobby Solution 3** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On slide 10, select the video clip if it is not already selected.
2. Select the **Video Tools Format** tab, type **2.4** in the Height box, and press **Enter**. The value in the Width box changes proportionally.
3. Select the video clip again.
4. Select the **View** tab and select the **Guides** check box to turn on the guides. Drag the horizontal guide down so it aligns with the 1" mark on the vertical ruler above the midpoint.
5. Move the text box containing the bullets up so its upper-left corner aligns with the intersection of the guides at the left side of the slide.
6. Move the video clip so its upper-right corner aligns with the intersection of the guides at the right side of the slide (Figure 9-13). Then turn off the guides by clearing the **Guides** check box on the View tab.

**Figure 9-13**

Use the guides to arrange the slide content



**Take Note** Because there is a glow around the clip's border, it may not appear to align precisely with the guides. The glow may hang slightly over the lines.

**7. SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Compressing Media

If you plan on sharing a presentation that contains audio and video clips, you may want to compress the media in the presentation to make the overall file size smaller. This mode of compression is similar to the Compress Pictures command for graphics, but it works with video and audio files. You can choose high, medium, or low quality, depending on how you plan to use the presentation file. Select Full HD (1080p) if you want to save space but preserve the quality, HD (720p) to save the file in a size similar to what is streamed over the Internet, and Standard (480p) if you plan to email the presentation. In the following exercise, you will compress media in a presentation.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Compress Media

**GET READY. USE** the *Lobby Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

- 1.** Select the **File** tab.
- 2.** Select **Compress Media**. A menu opens showing three choices for media quality.
- 3.** Select **HD (720p)**. The Compress Media dialog box opens, showing the progress of compressing each clip.
- 4.** When each clip shows Complete, select **Close**.
- 5. SAVE** the *Lobby Solution 3* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

## Knowledge Assessment

### Matching

Match the term in Column 1 to its description in Column 2.

| Column 1                  | Column 2   |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>1.</b> Exit effect     | a. The time that an animation event takes to execute   |
| <b>2.</b> Emphasis effect | b. An animation effect that moves an object along a predefined path that you create                                |
| <b>3.</b> Motion path     | c. An animated effect that occurs when you move from one slide to another  |
| <b>4.</b> Transition      | d. An animation effect that determines how an object exits a slide   |
| <b>5.</b> Duration        | e. An animation effect that draws attention to an object on a slide that is neither entering nor exiting the slide |

### True/False

Circle T if the statement is true or F if the statement is false.

- T F** **1.** A transition can be applied to a specific object on a slide.
- T F** **2.** You can assign your own sound clips to slide transitions.
- T F** **3.** An emphasis effect is a good way to draw audience attention to an object as it exits the slide.
- T F** **4.** An animation set to With Previous begins executing at the same time as the previous animation effect begins.
- T F** **5.** To slow down the speed of an animation effect, increase its Duration setting.

## Projects

### Project 9-1: Working with Transitions

In this project, you have been asked by Woodgrove Bank to modify a presentation that was originally designed to be used with a live speaker to a self-running presentation in which no user interaction is required. To accomplish this, you need to set all the slide transitions to occur automatically. You should also set up a more interesting transition effect than the default.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the **Jobs** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as **Jobs Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select the **Transitions** tab and then select the **After** check box.
4. Select the up increment arrow for the After box until the value is **00:08.00**.
5. In the Transition to This Slide group, select the **Push** transition. (You might need to select the More button to locate it.)
6. Select the **Effect Options** button and then select **From Left**.
7. Select the down increment arrow for the Duration to set the duration to **00.50**.
8. Select **Apply To All**.
9. Select the **Slide Show** tab, select **From Beginning**, and watch the entire slide show by clicking the mouse to advance through each slide.
10. **SAVE** the **Jobs Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

### Project 9-2: Using Animations

In this project, you have decided to add some object animations to the Woodgrove Bank presentation to make it more eye-catching.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the **Jobs Solution** presentation that you saved in the previous project.
2. Select **slide 1** and select the text placeholder.
3. Select the **Animations** tab, select **Add Animation**, and in the Entrance section, select **Swivel**.
4. Select **slide 2** and then select the photo.
5. Select **Add Animation**, and in the Emphasis section, select **Teeter**.
6. Select the Start **drop-down arrow** and select **After Previous**.
7. Select the up increment arrow on the Duration box until the duration is **02.00**.
8. Select the text box containing the bulleted list.
9. Select **Add Animation** and then select **More Entrance Effects**.
10. In the Subtle section, select **Expand** and then select **OK**.
11. Select the Start **drop-down arrow** and select **After Previous**.
12. Select **Move Earlier**.
13. Select **Preview** to preview the slide's animation.
14. **SAVE** the **Jobs Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill  | Exam Objective   | Objective Number |
|--|--|------------------|
| Working with Comments                                    | Review comments<br>Insert comments                                   | 5.1.4<br>5.1.3   |
| Incorporating Reviewer Changes                           | Insert slides from another presentation<br>Compare two presentations | 5.1.1<br>5.1.2   |
| Protecting a Presentation                                | Protect a presentation   | 5.2.1            |
| Preparing a Presentation for Distribution                | Inspect a presentation<br>Set file properties                        | 5.2.2<br>1.5.3   |
| Exporting and Saving a Presentation in Different Formats | Export presentations to other formats                                | 5.2.5            |

## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### The PowerPoint Review Tab

Tools on the Review tab make it easy for you to add comments to a slide. Figure 10-1 shows the Review tab.



Figure 10-1

The Review tab

Besides allowing you to add, delete, view, and show and hide comments, the Review tab lets you check spelling, access references such as online encyclopedias, use a thesaurus, translate a word or phrase, set the current language, compare documents, and annotate slides using ink annotations.

## WORKING WITH COMMENTS

A **comment** is a note you insert on a slide. You can insert comments on slides to suggest content changes, add reminders, or solicit feedback. Use comments on your own presentations or on presentations you are reviewing for others. You can also let other people review your presentations and add comments addressed to you. The PowerPoint Review tab makes it easy to view, insert, edit, reply to, and delete comments.

### Viewing and Replying to Comments

Use the Show Comments button on the Review tab to show or hide comments. Selecting the button itself shows or hides the Comments task pane; selecting the arrow beneath the button opens a menu. On that menu you can select Show Markup to show or hide the comment balloons in the presentation itself, regardless of whether the Comments pane is displayed or not. **Markup** refers to both comments and marked changes in the file, but in this section we deal only with comments. The Next and Previous buttons make it easy to jump from comment to comment in a presentation. In this exercise, you will view the comments in a presentation.

#### STEP BY STEP

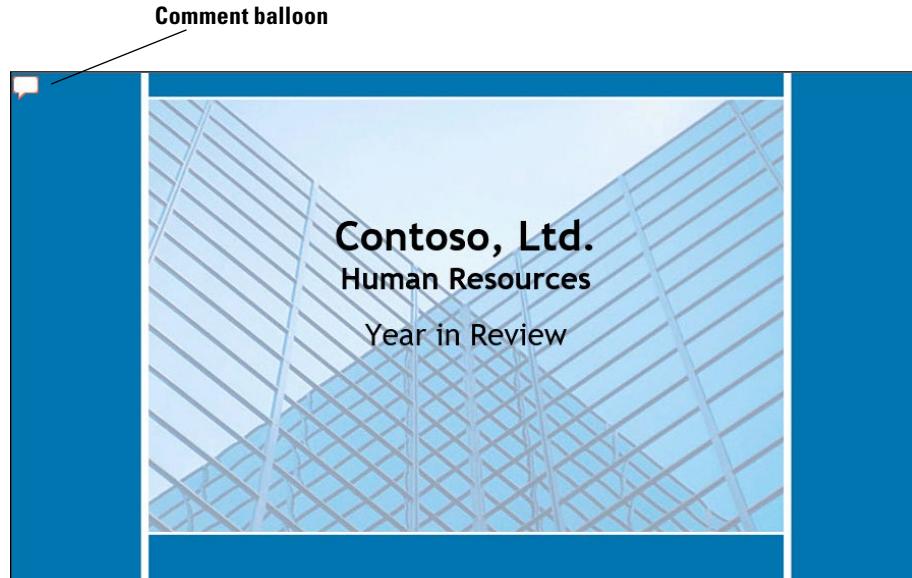
#### View and Reply to Comments

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint 2016.

1. OPEN the **HR Review** presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. SAVE the presentation as **HR Review Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Note the small balloon icon in the upper-left corner of slide 1 (Figure 10-2).

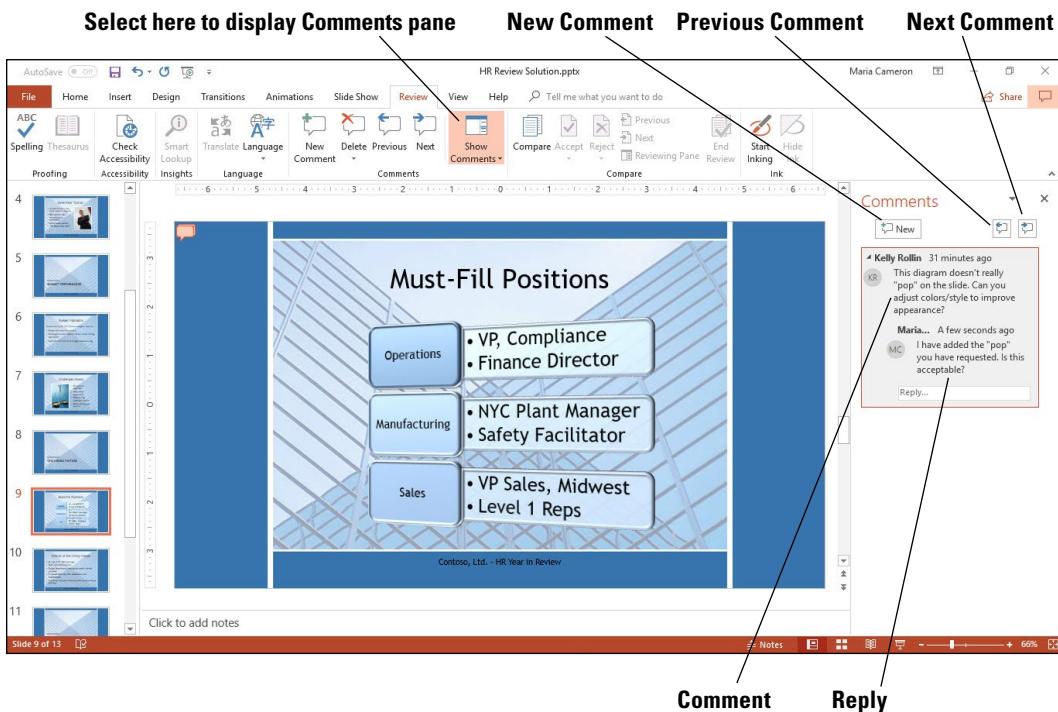
**Figure 10-2**

A comment balloon indicates a comment on the slide



4. Select the **Review** tab, select the Show Comments **drop-down arrow**, and then select **Show Markup**. The comment balloon is hidden.
5. Repeat step 4 to redisplay the comment balloon.
6. Select the **Show Comments** button (the button face, not the arrow below it). The Comments pane appears.
7. On the Review tab, in the Comments group, select **Next** to highlight the comment on slide 1. Read the comment in the Comments pane.
8. On the Review tab, in the Comments group, select **Next**. The next comment appears, which is on slide 9. In this comment, Kelly Rollin suggests adjusting the diagram.

9. Select the SmartArt graphic, select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab, select the **More** button in the SmartArt Styles group, and then select **Metallic Scene** in the 3-D section. Select **Change Colors** and then select **Gradient Loop - Accent 6**. The diagram now has the “pop” Ms. Rollin suggested.
10. In the Comments pane under Kelly Rollin’s comment, type **I have added the “pop” you have requested. Is this acceptable?** Then, press **Enter** (Figure 10-3).



**Figure 10-3**

View and reply to comments in the Comments pane

11. Select your comment in the Comments pane and then select the **Next** button at the top of the Comments pane to go to the next comment.
12. Select the **Previous** button three times to return to the first comment on slide 1.
13. **CLOSE** the Comments pane. To do so, either select the **Close** button on the Comments pane or select the **Show Comments** button on the Review tab.
14. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Inserting a Comment

To add a comment to a slide, use the New Comment button on the Review tab or the New button in the Comments pane. You are now ready to add your own comments to the presentation. In this exercise, you will insert two comments in a presentation.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Insert a Comment

**GET READY. USE** the **HR Review Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab and then select **Options**. The PowerPoint Options dialog box opens.
2. In the User name text box and Initials text box, type your name and initials (if they are not already there). Then select **OK** to accept them.
3. With slide 1 displayed, select the **New Comment** button on the Review tab. The Comments task pane appears and a new comment text box opens there.

4. Type the following text in the comment box:  
**Bobby, I have already received feedback from Kelly Rollin. Please suggest any further changes you think necessary to make this a dynamite presentation.**
5. Press **Enter**. Your comment marker displays in the upper left corner of the slide, slightly overlapping the other comment marker.
6. Select **slide 10** and select the text **six weeks** in the third bullet.

**Take Note**

If you select text or an object on a slide before creating a new comment, the comment balloon appears adjacent to the selection. If you do not select anything beforehand, the comment balloon appears in the upper-left corner of the slide.

7. Select the **New** button on the Comments task pane.
8. Type the following text in the comment box:  
**Bobby, please read Kelly's comment on this slide. I don't have access to the Design Department schedule. Can you confirm the lag time is now only 4 to 5 weeks?**
9. Press **Enter** to display the entire comment.
10. Drag the comment balloon associated with Kelly's comment to move it so it slightly overlaps your comment balloon. Moving a comment marker allows you to associate the comment with a specific area of the slide, such as a picture or a bullet item, or to place it in a general location.
11. **CLOSE** the Comments pane.
12. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

**Take Note**

You could also use the Reply feature if you wanted to reply within Kelly's comment; however, inserting a new comment is more effective here since you are addressing another individual.

## Editing a Comment

Like any other text in a presentation, comment text should be clear and concise. If you find upon review that your comments do not convey the information they should, you can reword, insert, or delete text in the comment box. Use the Edit Comment button to open a comment box so you can modify the text. In this exercise, you will edit a comment.

**STEP BY STEP**

### Edit a Comment

**GET READY. USE** the **HR Review Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select **slide 1** and then select one of the comment balloons. The Comments pane reopens.
2. In the comment you typed in the previous exercise, select the text **to make this a dynamite presentation** at the end of the second sentence, and then press **Delete**. You have removed text from the comment. Press **Enter**.
3. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## Deleting a Comment

You can easily remove comments from slides when they are no longer needed. If you point to a comment in the Comments pane, a Delete icon (X) appears in its upper-right corner. You can select that X to remove the individual comment. You can also use the Delete button on the Review tab to remove a comment. To quickly remove all comments, select the Delete drop-down arrow to open a menu from which you can quickly delete all comments on this slide or in this entire presentation. In this exercise, you will delete a comment.

**Take Note** When working with presentations that have comments, it is good practice to save a copy of your file with the comments in it before you delete them. This way if anyone asks you who requested a change, you can pull up the other version to find out.

### STEP BY STEP

### Delete a Comment

**GET READY.** USE the *HR Review Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. With slide 1 displayed, select Kelly Rollin's first comment in the Comments pane, then select the **Delete** icon in the upper-right corner of the comment. The comment is removed from the slide, leaving only your first comment.
2. Select **slide 9** and then select the comment in the task pane.
3. Select the **Delete** button on the Review tab. The comment and your reply are removed from the slide.
4. **CLOSE** the Comments pane.
5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## INCORPORATING REVIEWER CHANGES

PowerPoint does not have a Track Changes feature like the one in Word, but you can receive comments and feedback from reviewers by first saving your presentation to your computer and then posting a second copy to a shared location such as OneDrive or SharePoint, or distributing copies to reviewers via email. You can ask people to make changes and add comments to the shared copy. Once they are done, you can compare and merge the shared copy with the original one saved to your computer.

**Take Note**

Some people like to share their version of the presentation via OneDrive or SharePoint and let multiple people make changes to the same document. We don't cover document sharing in detail here but if you do work with shared documents, you will notice improved functionality in resolving conflicts in PowerPoint 2016. It now provides a side-by-side comparison of the two slides so you can more easily determine which changes to keep.

## Comparing and Combining Multiple Presentations

Comparing presentations enables you to note the differences between two similar presentation files. You can easily identify the changes that have been made to a copy of a presentation. The Compare feature merges two presentation files. You can then use the Revisions pane and the Compare group on the Review tab to display the differences between the merged versions and either accept or reject each revision. When you mark a revision for acceptance or rejection, the change is not applied immediately; changes occur only when you select End Review. In this exercise, you will compare and combine two presentations.

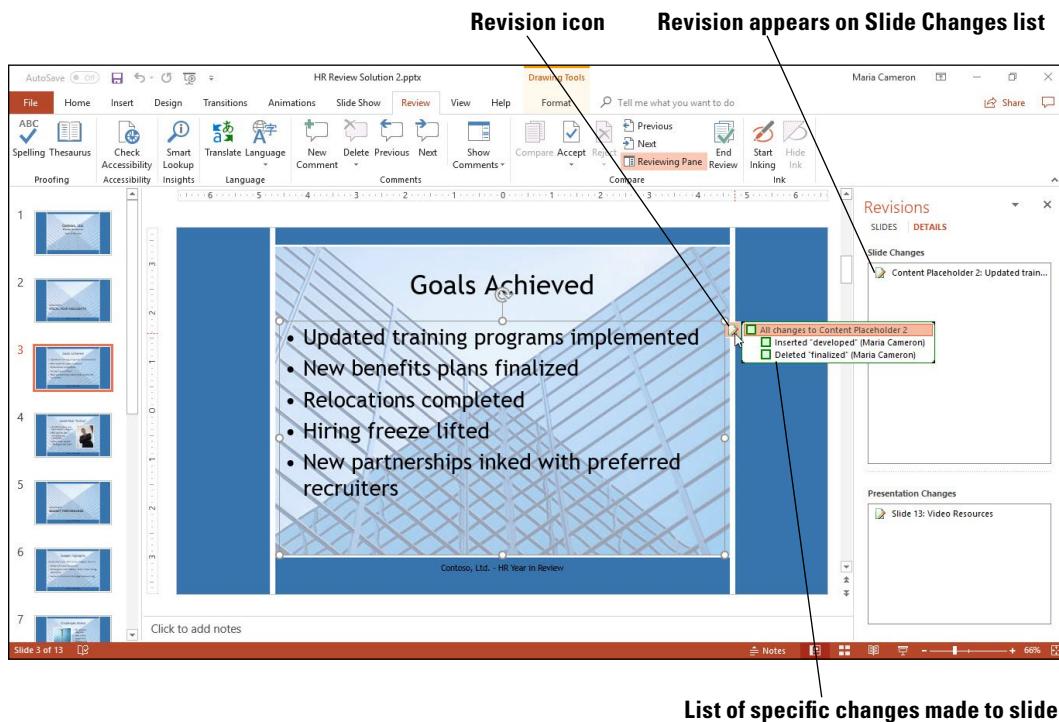
### STEP BY STEP

### Compare and Combine Presentations

**GET READY.** USE the *HR Review Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. **SAVE** the presentation as *HR Review Solution 2* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
2. On the Review tab, select **Compare**. The Choose File to Merge with Current Presentation dialog box opens.
3. Navigate to the folder containing the data files for this lesson and select *HR Summary*.

4. Select **Merge**. The presentation opens and the Revisions task pane opens. To toggle the Revisions task pane on and off, you can select the Reviewing Pane button on the Review tab of the Ribbon.
5. Select **slide 3** and then select the **Revision** icon on the slide. A balloon appears showing the changes to that slide (Figure 10-4).

**Figure 10-4**

Review the changes made to this slide

6. On the Review tab, select the **Accept** button. The changes on slide 3 are accepted. The revision icon changes to show a check mark.
7. Select **slide 9** and then select the **Revision** icon on the slide. Mark the check box next to **Diagram contents** and then select **Reject** in the Compare group to reject the change and keep the changes Kelly requested.
8. Select **Next** to go to slide 10. The revision is a deletion of a bullet point. Select **Accept** and then select **Reject** to change your mind.

#### Take Note

Do not confuse the **Next** button in the **Compare** group with the **Next** button in the **Comments** group.

9. Go through and accept all other changes to the presentation by selecting each slide, selecting the **Accept** drop-down arrow, and then selecting **Accept All Changes to This Slide**. Be sure NOT to do this on slides 9 and 10 or you will revert to the changes you rejected.
10. On the Review tab, select **End Review**. A confirmation box appears; select **Yes**.
11. Browse through the presentation to confirm that the changes were made. The revisions you accepted were finalized and the revisions you rejected were discarded. The comments are still there; they were not affected by the review.
12. On the Review tab, select the down arrow under the **Delete** button and then select **Delete All Comments and Ink in This Presentation**.
13. Select **Yes** to confirm. All remaining comments are removed.
14. **CLOSE** the Comments pane if it is displayed.
15. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## PROTECTING A PRESENTATION

Password-protecting a presentation file ensures that unauthorized users cannot view or make changes to it. You can set, change, and remove passwords in a file. You can also mark a presentation as final, which does not provide much security, but can prevent accidental changes.

### Encrypting Presentations with a Password

A **password** is a word or phrase that you, the user, must enter in order to get access to a file. Adding a password to a presentation prevents anyone from opening the presentation who does not know the password. Passwords are case-sensitive. You will assign a password to a presentation in this exercise.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Set a Password

**GET READY. USE** the *HR Review Solution 2* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. **SAVE** the presentation as *HR Review Solution 3* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
2. Select the **File** tab and then select **Protect Presentation**. A menu appears.
3. Select **Encrypt with Password**. The Encrypt Document dialog box opens.
4. In the Password box, type **ProtectMe**. Black circles appear in place of the actual characters you type.

#### Take Note

The password used for this exercise is not a strong password. It would not be that difficult to guess, because it consists only of letters. When creating your own passwords, try to include a combination of uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, and symbols.

5. Select **OK**. Another dialog box appears asking you to confirm the password; type **ProtectMe** again and then select **OK**. Backstage view remains open and the Protect Presentation area is highlighted in yellow. It states that a password is required to open the presentation.
6. Select **Close**. When prompted to save your changes, select **Save**.
7. Select the **File** tab, select **Open**, and then on the Recent Presentations list, select the *HR Review Solution 3.pptx* document. A Password dialog box opens.
8. In the Password box, type **ProtectMe** and then select **OK**.
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

Password-protecting a file is a type of **encrypting**, which prevents a file from being read by unauthorized users. Password protection might be useful on a presentation that contains sensitive data, such as human resources or medical information. If a user does not know the password, he or she cannot open the file.

For more control over who views your presentation and what they can do with it, you may choose to use the Restrict Access command. Select the File tab, select Protect Presentation, point to Restrict Access, and then select Connect to Rights Management Servers and Get Templates. To use this feature, you must have Windows Rights Management access. Contact your employer's IT department to find out if you have access to this feature.

### Changing or Removing a Password

You can change a password in much the same way as you created it. To remove a password entirely, use the same process as for changing it, but change it to a **null string** (blank, no characters, not even spaces). In this exercise, you will remove a password from a presentation.

**STEP BY STEP****Change or Remove a Password**

**GET READY.** USE the **HR Review Solution 3** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab and then select **Protect Presentation**. A menu appears.
2. Select **Encrypt with Password**. The Encrypt Document dialog box opens. The password previously assigned is already filled in.
3. Double-click the current password and then press the **Delete** key on the keyboard to clear it.

**Take Note** In step 3, you could have entered a different password instead of removing the password entirely.

4. Select **OK**. The password has been removed.
5. **CLOSE** the presentation, select **Save**, and then reopen it to confirm that no password prompt appears.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

**Marking a Presentation as Final**

When you have completed all work on a presentation, you can mark it as final to prevent any further editing. When you use the **Mark as Final** command in a presentation, you can open the presentation and read it, but you can no longer edit it or add comments. You are also restricted in other activities, such as encrypting the document. For this reason, marking a presentation as final should be one of your last tasks when finalizing a presentation. In this exercise, you will mark a presentation as final.

**STEP BY STEP****Mark a Presentation as Final**

**GET READY.** USE the **HR Review Solution 3** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab, select **Protect Presentation**, and then select **Mark as Final**. A confirmation dialog box appears, stating that the presentation will be marked as final and then saved.
2. Select **OK** to continue. Another confirmation dialog box appears, stating that the document has been marked as final.
3. Select **OK** to close the confirmation dialog box. Notice that the Ribbon is hidden; an information bar appears with a message that the file is Marked as Final (Figure 10-5).



**Figure 10-5**

The presentation has been marked as final

4. Select **Edit Anyway**. The editing commands on the Ribbon are displayed again.
5. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

Marking a presentation as final does not prevent you from ever making additional changes to a presentation. You can reverse the Mark as Final command by selecting Edit Anyway on the information bar. All features are then available to you again.

## PREPARING A PRESENTATION FOR DISTRIBUTION

As you are preparing to distribute your presentation to other people, there are some issues to consider. For example, if the person working with your presentation uses a different version of PowerPoint than you have, will he or she still have access to all the content? Will personal information from your computer be stored in the data file's properties? In the following sections, you will learn how to control these and other factors.

### Checking for Compatibility Issues and Optimizing Media Compatibility

If you need to share your presentation file with someone who uses PowerPoint 2003 or earlier, save it in PowerPoint 97-2003 Presentation format from the Save As dialog box. The file format is the same for PowerPoint versions 2007, 2010, 2013, and 2016 so if you need to share your work with people who use one of those versions, no special translation is usually required for the user to open and view the presentation.

There are some minor compatibility issues among PowerPoint 2007, 2010, 2013, and 2016, however, and these issues might not be obvious until a user tries to use your file and encounters an error or a feature that does not work as it should. For example, PowerPoint 2013 and 2016 support more video formats than PowerPoint 2007 and 2010 did, so if the presentation includes one of the formats that their version of PowerPoint cannot use, you may have a problem. To minimize the impact of such compatibility issues, you may want to check the file for compatibility problems prior to distributing it. The Compatibility Checker will recommend fixes that will help you minimize the impact of any compatibility issues.

In this exercise, you will check a presentation for compatibility issues.

#### STEP BY STEP

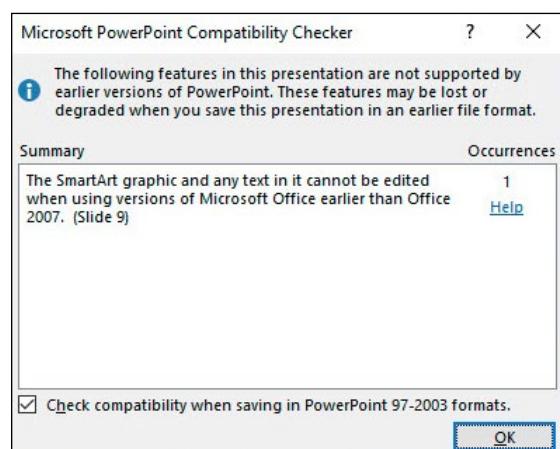
#### Check for Compatibility Issues and Optimize Media Compatibility

**GET READY.** USE the *HR Review Solution 3* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. **SAVE** the presentation as *HR Review Solution 4* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
2. Select the **File** tab and then select **Check for Issues**. A menu appears.
3. Select **Check Compatibility**. The Microsoft PowerPoint Compatibility Checker dialog box opens. It has found one potential issue (Figure 10-6).

**Figure 10-6**

The Compatibility Checker has noted that SmartArt cannot be edited in Office versions earlier than 2007



4. Select **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. **OPEN** the **Agility Media** presentation from the data files for this lesson. **SAVE** the presentation as **Agility Media Solution** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
6. Select the **File** tab. Notice that the Optimize Compatibility button appears and is available. That is because this presentation contains an actual embedded video clip, not just a link to an online clip.
7. Select **Optimize Compatibility**. The Optimize Media Compatibility dialog box opens and immediately begins processing the video clip in the presentation to improve its compatibility.
8. When the optimization is complete, select **Close**.
9. If necessary, select the **File** tab, select **Check for Issues**, and then select **Check Compatibility**. The Microsoft PowerPoint Compatibility Checker dialog box opens.
10. Note the compatibility issue that the checker found: that the media clips will be saved as pictures.
11. Select **OK** to close the dialog box.
12. **SAVE** the **Agility Media Solution** presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the **HR Review Solution 4** presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Checking for Accessibility Issues

An **accessible** presentation is one that can be viewed by a wide variety of computer users, including those who may have disabilities that require them to use adaptive technologies such as screen reading programs. PowerPoint includes a command that checks the accessibility of your work and offers suggestions for improving it. In this exercise, you will check a presentation for accessibility issues and make corrections to it.

#### STEP BY STEP

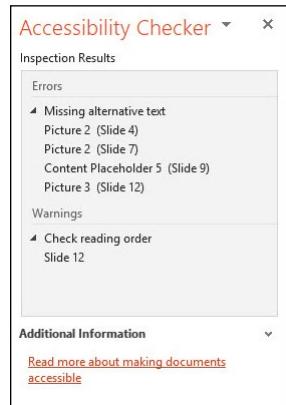
#### Check for Accessibility Issues

**GET READY. USE** the **HR Review Solution 4** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab, select **Check for Issues**, and then select **Check Accessibility**. The Accessibility Checker pane opens (Figure 10-7).

**Figure 10-7**

Accessibility issues were found

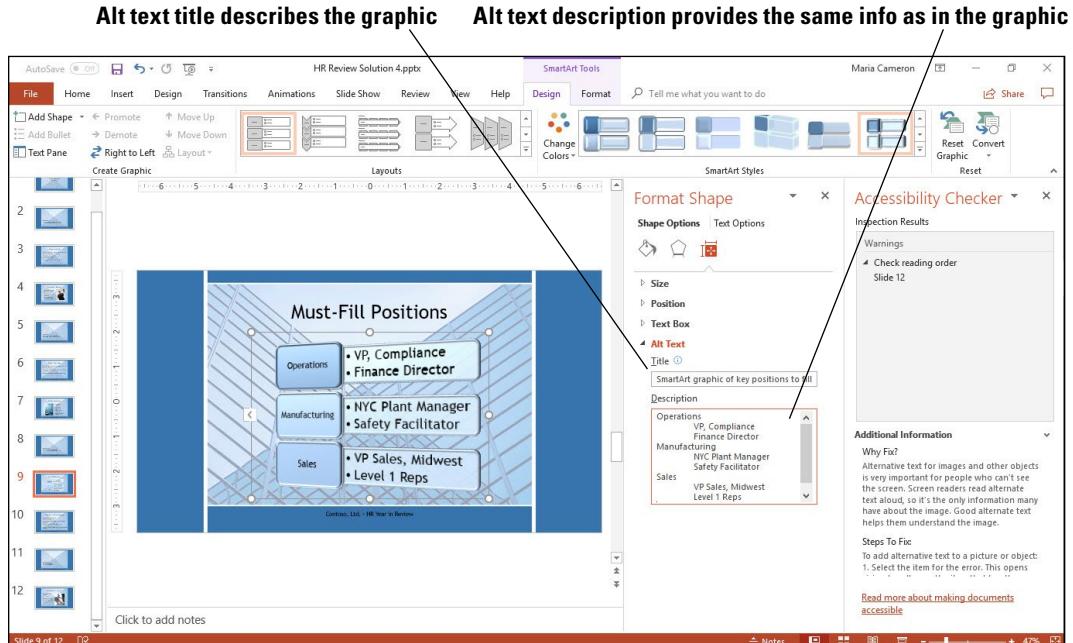


2. In the Accessibility Checker task pane, select **Picture 2 (Slide 4)**. Slide 4 appears and the picture is selected.

#### Take Note

You can scroll down in the Additional Information area of the task pane to find steps for fixing the problem.

3. Do the following to add alt text to the picture:
  - a. Right-click the picture and choose **Format Picture**.
  - b. Select the **Size & Properties** icon at the top of the Format Picture task pane.
  - c. If necessary, select **Alt Text** to expand that heading's options.
  - d. In the Title box, type **Smiling businessman**.
4. Repeat steps 2-3 for Picture 2 on slide 7. (You can skip steps 3a through 3c because the Format Shape task pane is already open.) For its alt text, type **Balance scale**.
5. Repeat steps 2-3 for Picture 3 on slide 12. (You can skip steps 3a through 3c because the Format Shape task pane is already open.) For its alt text, type **Woman writing**.
6. Do the following to add alt text to the SmartArt graphic on slide 9:
  - a. In the Accessibility Checker task pane, select **Content Placeholder 5 (Slide 9)** to jump to slide 9.
  - b. In the Format Shape task pane, in the Alt Text section's Title box, type **SmartArt graphic of key positions to fill**.
  - c. Select the **SmartArt Tools Design** tab and then select **Text Pane** to display the text pane for the SmartArt.
  - d. Select all the text in the text pane (**Ctrl+A**) and then press **Ctrl+C** to copy it.
7. **CLOSE** the SmartArt text pane.
8. Reselect the outer frame of the SmartArt graphic, and in the Format Shape task pane, select in the Description box under the Alt Text heading and press **Ctrl+V** to paste the copied text. The Format Shape task pane should resemble Figure 10-8 at this point.



**Figure 10-8**

Add alt text both as a title and as a description for the SmartArt object

9. **CLOSE** the Format Shape task pane.
10. In the Accessibility Checker task pane, select **Slide 12** under the Check Reading Order heading.
11. Read the instructions in the Additional Information section of the task pane about checking the reading order. Note that the slide's content is set to appear before its title. The next few steps will address this issue.

12. On the Home tab, in the Editing group, choose the **Select** button, and on the menu that appears, choose **Selection Pane**.
13. In the Selection pane, select **Title 8** and then click the **Bring Forward** button (the up arrow button) twice so that Title 8 appears at the top of the list of objects.
14. **CLOSE** the Selection task pane and then **CLOSE** the Accessibility Checker task pane.
15. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Modifying Properties and Removing Metadata

A file's *properties* provide information about the file, such as the date and time it was created or last modified, the file size, whether or not the file is read-only, and so on. The properties also include **metadata** (which literally means "data about data") such as the author's name (taken from the name you are logged into Office or Windows with), the subject, and any keywords you may have assigned to it. You can modify a presentation's properties to provide information to the people who will later receive the presentation file, such as your co-authors or your audience members. In some cases, you might want to remove your personal information from the file for privacy reasons; PowerPoint provides a command that enables you to do so. In this exercise, you will change the properties for a presentation file and remove your personal information from it.

**Take Note** PowerPoint 2016 has done away with the Documents Panel. Now you edit the majority of a document's properties directly in Backstage view.

### STEP BY STEP

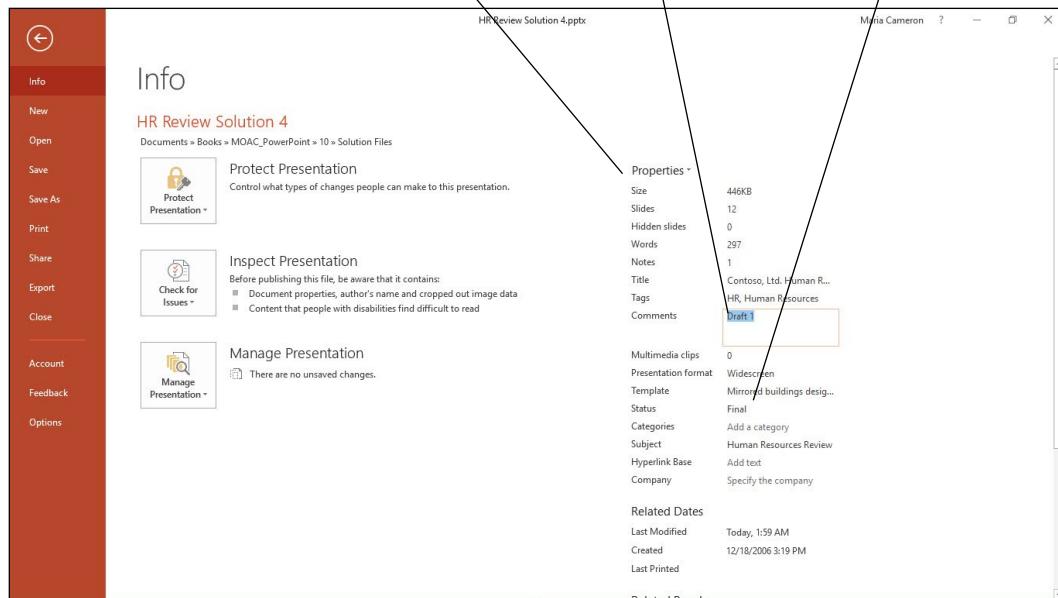
#### Modify Properties and Remove Metadata

**GET READY. USE** the **HR Review Solution 4** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab, select **Info**, and then select the **Show All Properties** link near the bottom of the right pane. All the document properties appear on the screen.
2. In the Status text box and type **Final**.
3. Delete the text from the Comments text box (Figure 10-9).

**Figure 10-9**

Display and change the file's properties



4. Select the **Properties** heading to open a menu, and then select **Advanced Properties**. The Advanced Properties dialog box opens for the file.
5. Select the **Summary** tab. Note that some of the same properties appear here as on the Info tab of Backstage view. Select the **Statistics** tab and note the information that appears on that tab and then select the **Contents** tab and note the information that appears on that tab.
6. Select the **Custom** tab.
7. In the list of properties at the top, scroll down and select **Language**. Then in the Value text box, type **English** and select **Add**.
8. Select **OK** to close the dialog box.
9. In Backstage view, select **Check for Issues** and then select **Inspect Document**. At the confirmation box, select **Yes** to save your changes. The Document Inspector dialog box opens.
10. Select **Inspect**. A report appears showing what the inspection found.
11. Select the **Remove All** button next to Document Properties and Personal Information.
12. Select **Close**.
13. Select the **File** tab, select **Info**, and then select the **Show All Properties** link near the bottom of the right pane. Examine the document's properties. Note that most of the information has been removed from its text boxes.
14. Select the **Return to Document** icon to return to the presentation.
15. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

---

## EXPORTING AND SAVING A PRESENTATION IN DIFFERENT FORMATS

There are many formats available for sharing your PowerPoint work with others who may not have PowerPoint, or who may prefer to view your presentation in another format. Each format is suited for a different usage; you choose the best one for your situation. In the following exercises, you learn to save and export your presentation as PDF, XPS, video, and XML as well as a PowerPoint show.

### Exporting a Presentation to PDF/XPS and Video

Common formats that people use to view documents are the Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF), the Microsoft XML Paper Specification (XPS) format, and video formats such as WMV and MP4.

These formats make it easier to exchange data files across various types of computers, operating systems, and applications. PDF and XPS are document formats. To save or export your presentation as a PDF, you need to have Adobe Acrobat. XPS is a Microsoft format that compresses the file size, looks similar on most computers, and complies with industry format. You have Microsoft Office, so you don't need any additional software or add-ins to save to this format.

Video formats are convenient because most users have some type of media playback capability.

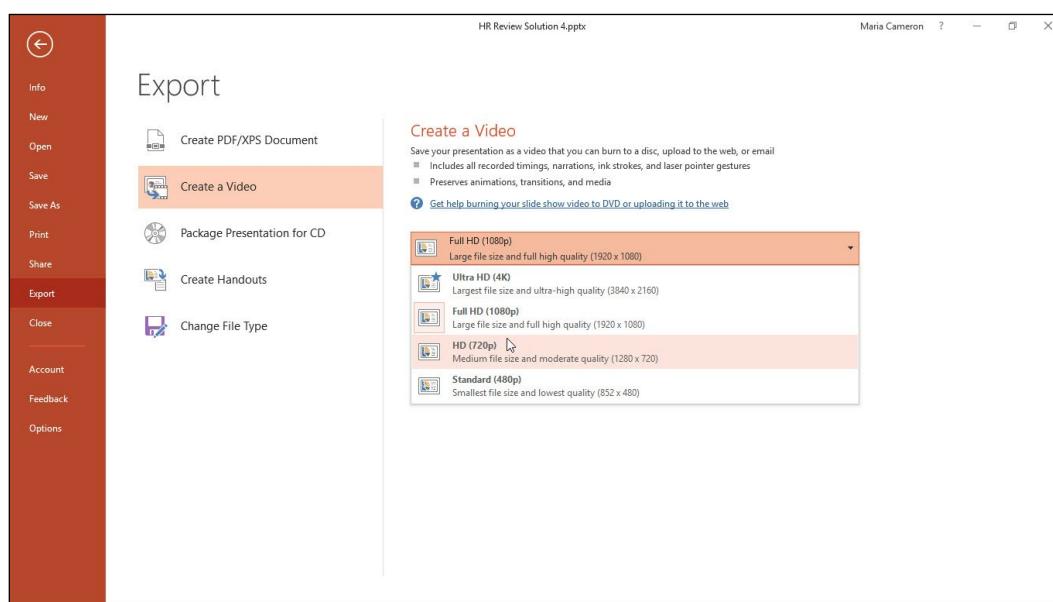
**STEP BY STEP****Export to PDF/XPS and Video**

**GET READY. USE** the **HR Review Solution 4** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab and then select **Export**.
2. Select **Create PDF/XPS Document** and then select the **Create PDF/XPS** button. Navigate to the location where you are saving files for this lesson.
3. In the File name box, type **HR Review XPS Solution**. (If you have Adobe Acrobat installed on your system, the type will default to PDF format.)
4. Select the Save as type **drop-down arrow** and select **XPS Document**, if it isn't already selected.
5. Select **Publish**. If the XPS Viewer (or another document viewer) window displays, close the window. Return to PowerPoint if necessary.
6. Select the **File** tab and then select **Export**.
7. Select **Create a Video**. Select the **Full HD (1080p)** button in the right pane, and then select **HD (720p)** (for medium file size and moderate quality) from the menu, as shown in Figure 10-10.

**Figure 10-10**

Set the options for creating a video



8. Select the **Create Video** button. Navigate to the location where you are saving files for this lesson.
9. In the File name box, type **HR Video Solution**.
10. Select **Save**.
11. Use File Explorer to navigate to the location where you saved the files and open them to view how they display.
12. **CLOSE** the files you just previewed.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the **HR Review Solution 4** presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Saving a Presentation in XML Format

Extensible Markup Language (XML) is a structured markup language that makes it easier to exchange data files across various types of computers, operating systems, and applications. When you save a file in XML format, it does not seem obviously different from a normal PowerPoint presentation file, but internally the way the data is stored is different. PowerPoint 2016 supports two different XML formats: PowerPoint XML Presentation (\*.xml) and Strict Open XML Presentation (\*.pptx). The former allows files to contain some Office-specific encoding that was used in earlier versions of Office for XML files; the latter translates the file into a fully independent file format that does not rely on anything Microsoft-specific. Depending on the program that you are exchanging files with, one of those formats may be more useful than the other; you might even want to save in both of those formats and send the recipient both files, so they can decide which works best for them. In this exercise, you will save in Strict Open XML Presentation format.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Save in XML Format

**GET READY. USE** the *HR Review Solution 4* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab and then select **Save As**.
2. Select **Browse** and navigate to the location where you are saving files for this lesson.
3. Select the Save as type **drop-down arrow** and then select **Strict Open XML Presentation**.
4. In the File name box, type *HR Review Open XML Solution* and then select **Save**. The file is saved in that format and the new file is open in PowerPoint. Scroll through the file to view how it displays.
5. **CLOSE** the *HR Review Open XML Solution* file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

## Saving a Presentation as a PowerPoint Show

A **PowerPoint Show** file is just a regular presentation file except that it opens in Slide Show view by default. You may want to distribute a presentation in this format if you expect your recipients to have PowerPoint installed on their PCs, but to be more interested in viewing the show than in editing it. In this exercise, you will save a presentation as a PowerPoint Show.

### STEP BY STEP

#### Save a Presentation as a PowerPoint Show

**GET READY. OPEN** the *HR Review Solution 4* presentation, which you created earlier in this lesson.

1. Select the **File** tab and then select **Save As**.
2. Select **Browse** and then navigate to the location where you are saving files for this lesson.
3. Select the Save as type **drop-down arrow** and then select **PowerPoint Show**.
4. In the File name box, type *HR Show Solution*.
5. Select **Save**. The file is saved in that format and the new file is open in PowerPoint. **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

When you save a presentation as a PowerPoint Show, nothing changes about the presentation except its file extension: instead of .pptx, it is .ppsx. This different file extension prompts PowerPoint to open the file in Slide Show view, rather than Normal view.

## Knowledge Assessment

### Fill in the Blank

Fill in each blank with the term or phrase that best completes the statement.

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a note you can insert directly on a slide.
2. When you \_\_\_\_\_ presentations, you consolidate all changes into a single copy.
3. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ protects a presentation file so that only authorized users can open it.
4. To make changes to a comment, select the comment balloon to open the \_\_\_\_\_ pane and then make changes there.
5. If you save a presentation in PowerPoint Show format, it opens in \_\_\_\_\_ view by default.

### Multiple Choice

Circle the correct answer.

1. Which of the following describes how to display the properties of a presentation?
  - a. Select the File tab, select Info, and then select Show All Properties in the right pane.
  - b. Select the View tab and then select Properties.
  - c. Select the View tab, select Advanced, and then select Show Advanced Properties.
  - d. Select the File tab, select Share, and then select Properties.
2. In which of the following locations can you edit all of the properties of a PowerPoint file?
  - a. Documents Panel
  - b. Backstage view
  - c. Save As dialog box
  - d. Advanced Properties dialog box
3. Which of the following describes how to change the user name that will appear on each comment?
  - a. Manually type your name into each comment.
  - b. Select File > Options and type a different User name and Initials.
  - c. Select the Change User button on the Home tab.
  - d. Select the Manage Comments button on the Review tab.
4. Which of the following describes how to remove a password from a PowerPoint file?
  - a. Change the current password to a null string.
  - b. Select Encrypt with Password, then select Decrypt.
  - c. Select Encrypt with Password, then select Remove.
  - d. Select the File tab, then select Unprotect.
5. Which of the following statements is true?
  - a. Marking a presentation as final is the same level of security as password protection.
  - b. Marking a presentation as final is not as strong security as password protection.
  - c. Marking a presentation as final is stronger security than password protection.
  - d. Marking a presentation as final is useful only when saving in Text Only format.

## Projects

### Project 10-1: Adding and Replying to Comments

In this project, you are the new Marketing Manager for Consolidated Messenger. The company owner has given you a presentation to review with his comments already inserted and has asked you to add your own comments in response to his and describe any changes you would make.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the *Sales Pitch* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Sales Pitch Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select the **Review** tab and then select the **Next** button to read the comment on slide 1.
4. Select **Next**, read the comment on slide 3, then select **Next** again to read the comment on slide 5.
5. Select the **Previous** button two times to return to the comment on slide 1.
6. Select the **Delete** button to delete the comment on slide 1.
7. Select the **New Comment** button and then type the following comment: **I think the template is fine as is.**
8. Select **slide 3** and reply by typing the following comment: **I will try to find a picture with color values more in line with the template.**
9. Select **slide 5** and delete the comment.
10. **SAVE** the *Sales Pitch Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

### Project 10-2: Protecting a Presentation

In this project, you are a travel agent working for Margie's Travel. Relecloud Airlines has asked you to start pitching their services to corporate clients and has sent you a copy of their presentation. Your contact at Relecloud has asked you to share the presentation with other agents in your office, but he does not want anyone to change the presentation. You can use PowerPoint features to safeguard the presentation.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the *Airline Overview* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Airline Overview Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select the comment balloon on slide 1 to open the Comments pane and then read the comment.
4. Delete the comment and then **CLOSE** the Comments pane.
5. Select the **File** tab, select **Protect Presentation**, and then select **Mark as Final**.
6. Select **OK** twice to save the presentation and mark it as the final version.
7. **CLOSE** the presentation file.
8. **REOPEN** the *Airline Overview* presentation from the data files for this lesson. **SAVE** the presentation as *Airline Overview Protected Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
9. Select the **File** tab, select **Protect Presentation**, and then select **Encrypt with Password**.
10. In the Password box, type **ProtectMe** and then select **OK**.
11. In the Reenter password box, type **ProtectMe** and then select **OK**.
12. **CLOSE** the file, saving your changes if prompted.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

# 11 Delivering a Presentation

## LESSON SKILL MATRIX

| Skill                                    | Exam Objective                                      | Objective Number |
|--|---|------------------|
| Adjusting Slide Orientation and Size     | Change slide size                                   | 1.5.1            |
| Customizing Audience Handouts            | Modify the handout master<br>Print handouts         | 1.3.5<br>1.6.3   |
| Choosing Slides to Display               | Hide and unhide slides<br>Create custom slide shows | 1.2.3<br>1.7.1   |
| Rehearsing a Slide Show                  | Rehearse slide show timing                          | 1.7.3            |
| Setting Up a Slide Show                  | Configure slide show options                        | 1.7.2            |
| Working with Presentation Tools          | Present a slide show by using Presenter View        | 1.7.4            |
| Packaging a Presentation for CD Delivery | Export presentations to other formats               | 5.2.5            |

### ADJUSTING SLIDE ORIENTATION AND SIZE

**Orientation** refers to the direction material appears on a page when printed. A page printed in **landscape orientation** is wider than it is tall, like a landscape picture that shows a broad panoramic view. A page printed in **portrait orientation** is taller than it is wide, like a portrait picture that focuses on a single, upright figure. **Slide size** is expressed as a ratio of width to height, also called **aspect ratio**. You can choose Standard (4:3) or Widescreen (16:9) or you can set up a custom slide size with your choice of ratios.

**Take Note** Do not confuse slide size with resolution. Resolution refers to the number of pixels that makes up a slide display on the monitor and is applicable only in Slide Show view. Resolution is configured in the Set Up Show dialog box.

#### Selecting Slide Orientation

By default, slides are displayed so they are wider than they are tall (landscape orientation). You might want to change the orientation of a presentation for a special case, such as to accommodate large graphics that have a portrait orientation or to print slides at the same orientation as other materials. You can easily change this orientation by using the Slide Size dialog box or a Ribbon command. In this exercise, you will practice changing slide orientation.

You cannot mix landscape and portrait orientations in a single presentation the way you can in a word processing document. All slides in a presentation must have the same orientation. However, if you need to display one or more slides in a different orientation, you can create a secondary presentation with the different orientation and then provide links between the main presentation and the secondary one. You can easily select the link during the slide show to jump to the secondary presentation, and then select another link to return to your main presentation.

Presentation materials such as notes pages and handouts print in portrait orientation by default because this orientation allows the most efficient placement of slide images and text on the page.

Adjusting orientation for these materials allows you to fit more information across the longest axis of the page—a plus if you have a lot of notes for each slide.

## STEP BY STEP

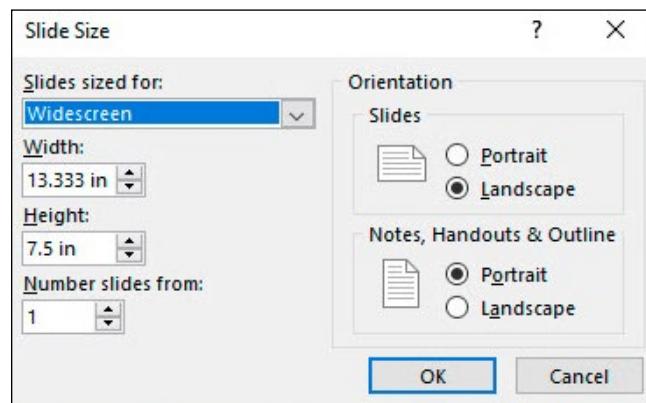
## Select Slide Size and Orientation

GET READY. LAUNCH PowerPoint 2016.

1. OPEN the *Bid* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. SAVE the presentation as ***Bid Solution*** in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select the **Design** tab and then select the **Slide Size** button. A menu opens.
4. Select **Widescreen**. The width/height ratio for all slides in the presentation changes to widescreen (16:9).
5. Select the **Slide Size** button again, and then select **Custom Slide Size**. The Slide Size dialog box opens (Figure 11-1). Note the current width and height measurements at the left side of the dialog box.

**Figure 11-1**

The Slide Size dialog box



### Take Note

The measurements for Width and Height in the Slide Size dialog box are in inches, but an inch on a monitor can look different depending on the monitor's size and display resolution. The main concern is the ratio between the width and the height here. For example, the ratio of 13.333" by 7.5" expressed as a fraction is 16/9, the standard for widescreen. Because widescreen monitors are the standard these days, that is the default size of a PowerPoint presentation.

6. Select the Slides sized for **drop-down arrow** and examine the available options for slide sizes. Select **35mm Slides**, and note the width and height settings.
7. Select **Portrait** in the Slides area.
8. Select **OK**. A dialog box opens asking whether you want to maximize the size of your content or scale it down.
9. Select **Ensure Fit**. The slide's orientation and aspect ratio has changed.
10. Select the **Slide Size** button again and then select **Standard (4:3)**.
11. When prompted whether you want to maximize or ensure fit of the content, select **Maximize**. The slides return to their original 4:3 dimensions. The content has been somewhat distorted in size due to your choices of Ensure Fit and Maximize in steps 9 and 11 respectively.
12. **CLOSE** the ***Bid Solution*** presentation without saving.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

If you do not find a suitable size for a specific need, you can create a custom slide size. Adjust the width and height as desired in the Slide Size dialog box to create the custom slide size.

Besides allowing you to set slide size and orientation, the Slide Size dialog box lets you choose the starting number for slides in a presentation. This option is useful if you are combining several separate presentations into one comprehensive slide show.

## CUSTOMIZING AUDIENCE HANDOUTS

You can help your audience follow a presentation by giving them handouts, which show small versions of the slides arranged in various ways on a page. Handout layouts are controlled by a **Handout Master**, as slide appearance is controlled by the Slide Master. You can customize the Handout Master to create your own handout layout. You can also export handouts to Microsoft Word, where you can customize them further. That feature isn't covered in this section, but you can experiment with it yourself by selecting File, Export, and then selecting Create Handouts.

### Customizing the Handout Master

You can customize the layout of the Handout Master, which controls how handouts are formatted in PowerPoint. You can add text boxes to it, enable or disable certain placeholders, and format those placeholders. In this exercise, you customize the Handout Master in several ways.

PowerPoint handouts can show one, two, three, four, six, or nine slides on a page. You cannot adjust the position or size of the slide placeholders in the Handout Master. You can, however, adjust both size and position of the Header, Date, Footer, and Page Number placeholders. You can also choose to hide some or all of these placeholders by deselecting their check boxes in the Placeholders group on the Handout Master tab.

The Handout Master tab allows you to change both slide orientation and handout orientation, using buttons in the Page Setup group. To further modify the appearance of handouts, you can change theme colors and fonts (but not the current theme) and apply a different background style. You can format the Header, Date, Footer, and Page Number placeholders like any text box or placeholder using Quick Styles, fills, or outlines.

### STEP BY STEP

### Customize the Handout Master

**GET READY. RE-OPEN** the *Bid Solution* presentation that you saved previously in this lesson.

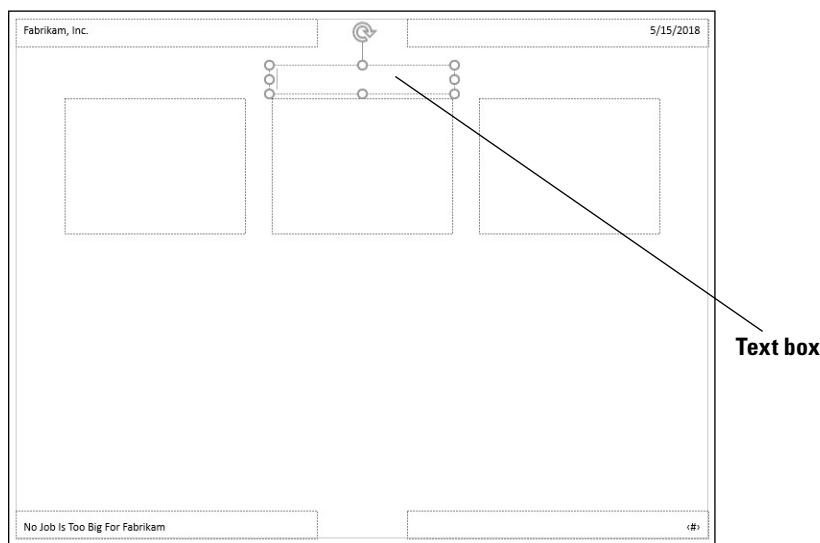
1. Select the **Insert** tab, and then in the Text group, select **Header & Footer**. The Header and Footer dialog box opens. Select the **Notes and Handouts** tab.
2. Set up headers and footers as follows:
  - a. Select the **Date and time** check box, and make sure the **Update automatically** option is selected.
  - b. Select the **Header** check box and then type the header **Fabrikam, Inc.**
  - c. Select the **Footer** check box and then type the footer **No Job Is Too Big for Fabrikam.**
  - d. Select **Apply to All**.
3. Select the **Design** tab, select **Slide Size**, and then select **Custom Slide Size**.
4. Under the Notes, Handouts & Outline heading, select **Landscape** and then select **OK**.
5. Select the **View** tab, and then in the Master Views group, select the **Handout Master** button. The Handout Master view opens with the header and footer you supplied in step 2.

**Take Note** If the file is stored on a server, a message might display about edits made in this view being lost when saved to the server. Select Check Out to continue.

6. In the Page Setup group, select the **Slides Per Page** button and then select **3 Slides**. The Handout Master displays the layout used to show three slides across the width of the page.
7. Select the **Insert** tab, select **Text Box**, and then draw a text box above the center slide placeholder that is the same width as the placeholder (Figure 11-2).

**Figure 11-2**

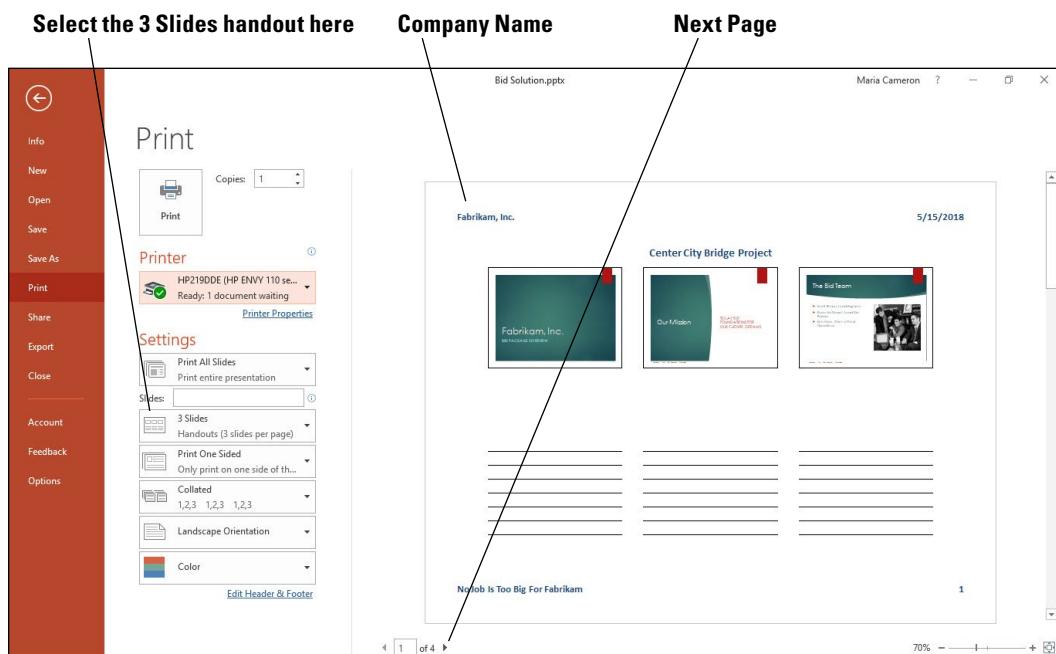
Add a text box to the Handout Master



8. Type **Center City Bridge Project** in the text box.
9. Change the font size of the text box text to **16 pt**, apply **Bold** formatting, change the color to **Dark Blue, Text 2**, and then **Center** the text. Adjust the size of the text box as necessary to display the text on one line.
10. Click the outside border of the header placeholder in the upper-left corner of the master, hold down **Shift**, and then select the date, footer, and page number placeholders.
11. Change the font size to **14 pt**, apply **Bold** formatting, and then change the color to **Dark Blue, Text 2**.
12. Select the **Handout Master** tab and then select the **Close Master View** button to exit Handout Master view.
13. Select the **File** tab and then select **Print**. Select the **Full Page Slides** button and then select **3 Slides**. Your customized handout master should resemble the one previewed in Figure 11-3.

**Figure 11-3**

Preview of the customized handout



- Select the **Next Page** button. Notice that the text box you added displays on each page of the handouts.

- Select the **Print** button to print the handouts.

#### Take Note

In some classrooms, printing is limited or unavailable. Check with your instructor as needed to make sure it is okay to print a multiple-page document in your classroom.

- SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## CHOOSING SLIDES TO DISPLAY

You might want to present only a portion of the slides you have prepared on a specific subject. You can select the slides to display by hiding slides or by creating a custom slide show.

### Hiding Selected Slides

You can omit slides from a presentation by hiding them. Use the Hide Slide button or command to hide a slide so it will not appear during the presentation. In this exercise, you hide a slide.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Hide a Slide

**GET READY.** USE the **Bid Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

- Select **slide 2** and then select the **Slide Show** tab.
- In the Set Up group, select the **Hide Slide** button. The slide is shaded in the Slides pane at the left and the slide number displays with a diagonal bar across it.
- Press **F5** to start the presentation from **slide 1**.
- Click the mouse button and notice that slide 2, *Our Mission*, does not display. You go directly to slide 3, *The Bid Team*.
- Press **Esc** to stop the slide show.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Creating a Custom Show

In this section, you learn how to create **custom shows** to customize presentations for different groups using slides from a single presentation. A comprehensive year-end corporate review presentation, for example, might include information on the company as a whole as well as on the operations of each department. You could show all of the slides to the board of directors and use custom shows to present to each department the general company statistics and the information specific to that department. Custom shows allow you to focus attention on the material most relevant to a specific audience. In this exercise, you will create a custom show that contains a subset of the slides in the main presentation.

You select the slides for a custom show in the Define Custom Show dialog box. Add slide titles from the main presentation to the custom presentation. You can adjust the order in which the slides display in the custom show: Use the up and down buttons to the right of the Slides in custom show list box to move a selected title up or down in the list.

### STEP BY STEP

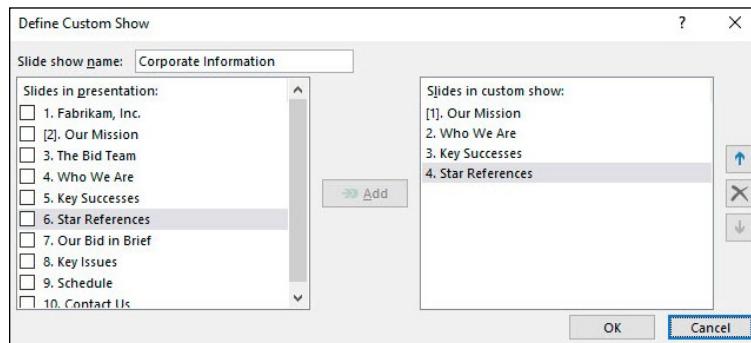
### Create a Custom Show

**GET READY. USE** the *Bid Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the Slide Show tab, in the Start Slide Show group, select the **Custom Slide Show** button.
2. Select **Custom Shows**. The Custom Shows dialog box opens.
3. Select the **New** button. The Define Custom Show dialog box opens.
4. In the Slide show name box, type **Corporate Information**.
5. In the Slides in presentation list box, select the **slide 2** check box and then select the **Add** button to place this slide in the Slides in custom show list box.
6. Add slides 4, 5, and 6 to the Slides in custom show list box. Your dialog box should resemble Figure 11-4.

**Figure 11-4**

Four slides have been added to the custom show



#### Take Note

The brackets around slide 2's number in the Slides in presentation list box indicate that it is a hidden slide.

7. Select **OK** and then select **Show**. The custom show starts with the second slide you added (the first slide, slide 2, is still hidden). If you were to unhide slide 2, it would also be unhidden in this custom show.
8. Click the mouse button to proceed through the slides of the custom show until the show ends.
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## REHEARSING A SLIDE SHOW

To make sure that your audience will have enough time to read and absorb the content on your slides, you can rehearse your delivery. When you rehearse a presentation, you read it just as if you were a member of the audience viewing the slides for the first time. Look at pictures, charts, and diagrams to read any information they supply. After you rehearse, you have the option of saving your timings to use during your presentation.

### Rehearsing Timings

Rehearsing a presentation can help you set the **timings** for it. Slide timings are particularly important if you intend to show the slides as a self-running presentation that viewers cannot control. You should allow plenty of time for viewers to read and understand the content on each slide. (You will learn more about self-running presentations in the next section.) When you rehearse, you read the text on the slide out loud (or silently to yourself) to determine how long each slide should appear onscreen. You can then choose to keep those timings after the rehearsal or discard them. In this exercise, you will rehearse timings for a presentation and record the timings for later use.

The Rehearsal toolbar that displays when you rehearse slides shows you how much time you have spent reading the current slide as well as the elapsed time for the entire presentation. You can pause the rehearsal if necessary and then resume it when you are ready to continue. You can also choose to start the time again for a particular slide.

Note that saving your rehearsed times applies timings to the slide that allow PowerPoint to control the slides for you. The presentation can run automatically without your having to click buttons to advance slides. If you have applied animations to slide objects, rehearsing will set the proper timing for those objects to display.

You do not have to save the slide timings after rehearsal if you do not want PowerPoint to control the slides for you. You can tell PowerPoint not to save the timings, or you can deselect Use Timings in the Set Up group on the Slide Show tab to remove slide timings.

### STEP BY STEP

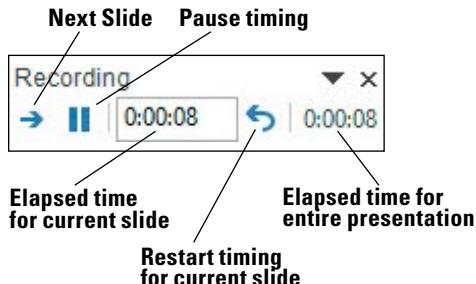
### Rehearse and Record Timings

**GET READY. USE** the *Bid Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the Slide Show tab, in the Set Up group, select the **Rehearse Timings** button. The slide show starts from slide 1 and the Rehearsal toolbar appears in the upper-left corner of the screen (Figure 11-5).

**Figure 11-5**

The Rehearsal toolbar appears in Slide Show view



2. Read all the content on each slide, clicking the mouse button to display bullet items and advance slides. As you read, the timer is recording the time you spend on each slide. If you get interrupted, you can select the Pause button on the toolbar to pause.
3. When asked if you want to save the slide timings, select **Yes**.
4. Select the **View** tab and then select the **Slide Sorter** button. The presentation appears with the timing for each slide displayed below it.

5. Select the **Slide Show** tab and select the **Use Timings** check box if it is not already selected.
6. Press **F5** to start the slide show again from slide 1. This time, let PowerPoint control the slides according to the rehearsal times you set.
7. After three or four slides have displayed, press **Esc** to end the slide show. Switch to **Normal** view and select **slide 1**.
8. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Clearing Slide Timings

If you decide not to use automatic timings, you can easily clear all the timings from all slides at once. The following exercise shows how to clear the timings for all slides.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Clear Slide Timings

**GET READY. USE** the **Bid Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **Slide Show** tab.
2. Select the Record Slide Show **drop-down arrow** to open a menu, point to **Clear**, and then select **Clear Timings on All Slides**.
3. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

#### Take Note

You can also record narration (recorded audio commentary), annotations, and other features. If you cannot reach an audience in real time with your presentation, recording the presentation for later playback is an attractive option. Use the Record Slide Show button on the Slide Show tab to begin a recording. As with timings, you can record the presentation from start to finish or re-record individual slides.

### SETTING UP A SLIDE SHOW

The Set Up Show dialog box allows you to make a number of decisions about how slides display during a presentation. When setting up a slide show, you have the option of choosing a Show Type:

- **Presented by a speaker (full screen)** is the option to choose if the slides will be presented by a moderator (you or some other person) to a live audience. The slides will display at full screen size.
- **Browsed by an individual (window)** is the option to choose if you are preparing the presentation for a viewer to review on his or her own computer. The slides display within a window that contains a title bar with size/close controls. You can also choose to display a scrollbar to make it easy for the individual to scroll through the slides.
- **Browsed at a kiosk (full screen)** is the option to choose if you intend to have the presentation run unattended, with no moderator. This option is a standard choice for trade shows or other venues where the slides can loop indefinitely for viewers to watch as long as they desire.

You can also configure the slide resolution for a specific monitor. (The default monitor setting is Automatic, which adjusts the resolution based on the monitor in use.) To set a specific resolution, select a monitor from the Slide show monitor drop-down list and then choose a resolution from the Resolution drop-down list.

## Setting Up a Slide Show

The following exercise walks you through the settings in the Set Up Show dialog box. Not all of these settings are applicable to the presentation being used for the example, but all are useful to know about because of the variety of presentations you might create in the future. In this exercise, you configure various settings that govern how a slide show runs in Slide Show view.

### STEP BY STEP

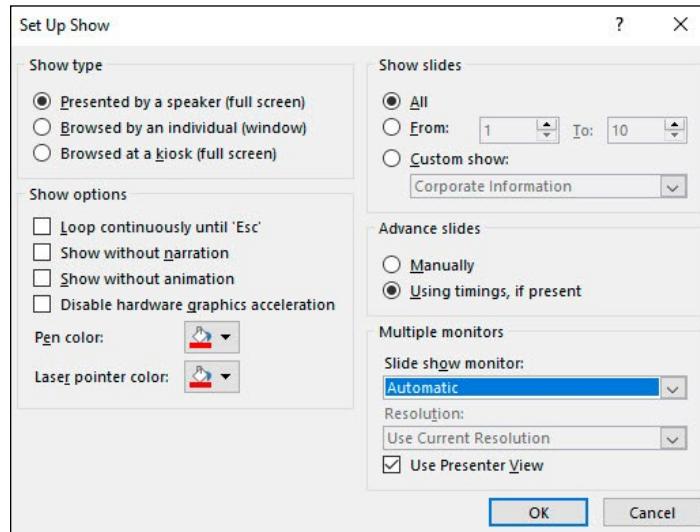
### Set Up a Slide Show

**GET READY.** USE the *Bid Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. **SAVE** the presentation as *Bid Kiosk Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
2. On the Slide Show tab, in the Set Up group, select **Set Up Slide Show**. The Set Up Show dialog box opens (Figure 11-6). Examine the settings in the Show type section, but do not make a change yet.

**Figure 11-6**

The Set Up Show dialog box with default settings



3. In the Show options section, select the **Loop continuously until 'Esc'** check box.

**Take Note** This setting is turned on automatically if you choose Browsed at a kiosk (full screen) as the show type.

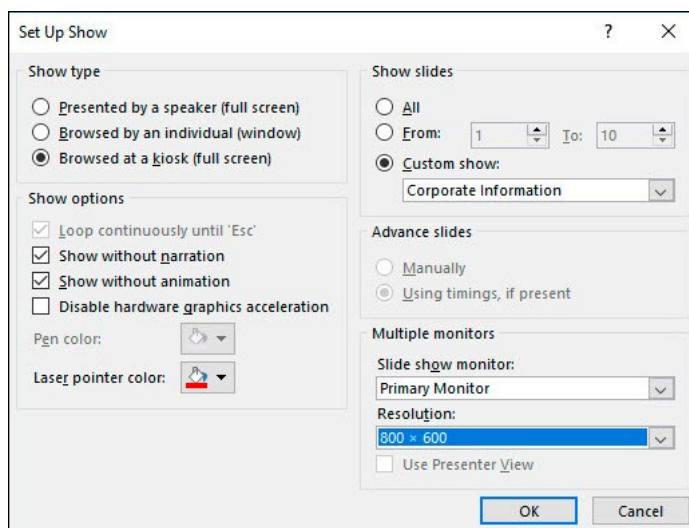
4. Select the **Show without narration** check box.
5. Select the **Show without animation** check box.
6. Select the **Pen color** button and then select the **Orange** standard color. (The pen color is not important for this presentation because it will be self-running, but it is useful for future reference to know how to change it.)
7. In the Advance slides section, select the **Use timings, if present** option button if it is not already selected.
8. In the Show type section, select **Browsed at a kiosk (full screen)**. Several settings become unavailable when you choose this option, including Loop continuously until 'Esc' (which becomes enabled by default) and Pen color.
9. In the Show slides section, select the **Custom show** option button.

**Take Note** The Corporate Information custom show is automatically selected because it is the only custom show in the presentation.

10. In the Multiple monitors section, select the Slide show monitor **drop-down arrow** and then select **Primary Monitor**. The Resolution drop-down list becomes available.
11. Select the Resolution **drop-down arrow** and then select **800 x 600**. The dialog box should resemble Figure 11-7 at this point.

**Figure 11-7**

The Set Up Show dialog box with custom settings applied



12. Select **OK** to close the dialog box.
13. Examine the check boxes in the Set Up group on the Slide Show tab. Notice that the Play Narrations check box is cleared because of the check box you marked in step 4. Notice that the Use Timings check box is marked because of the option button you chose in step 7.
14. Clear the **Show Media Controls** check box. This setting is not directly applicable to this presentation. However, knowing how to turn on/off the onscreen controls for such clips is useful for future reference.
15. **SAVE** the *Bid Kiosk Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next exercise.

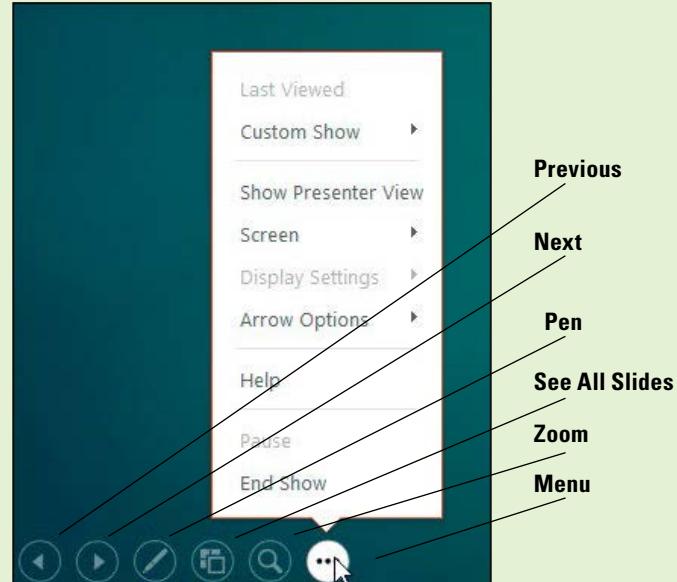
## SOFTWARE ORIENTATION

### Presentation Tools in Slide Show View

When in Slide Show view, presentation tools appear in the lower-left corner of the screen. They are faint until you point to them; then they become bright icons that you can select to open menus. In Figure 11-8, the Menu button is active and its menu is open.

**Figure 11-8**

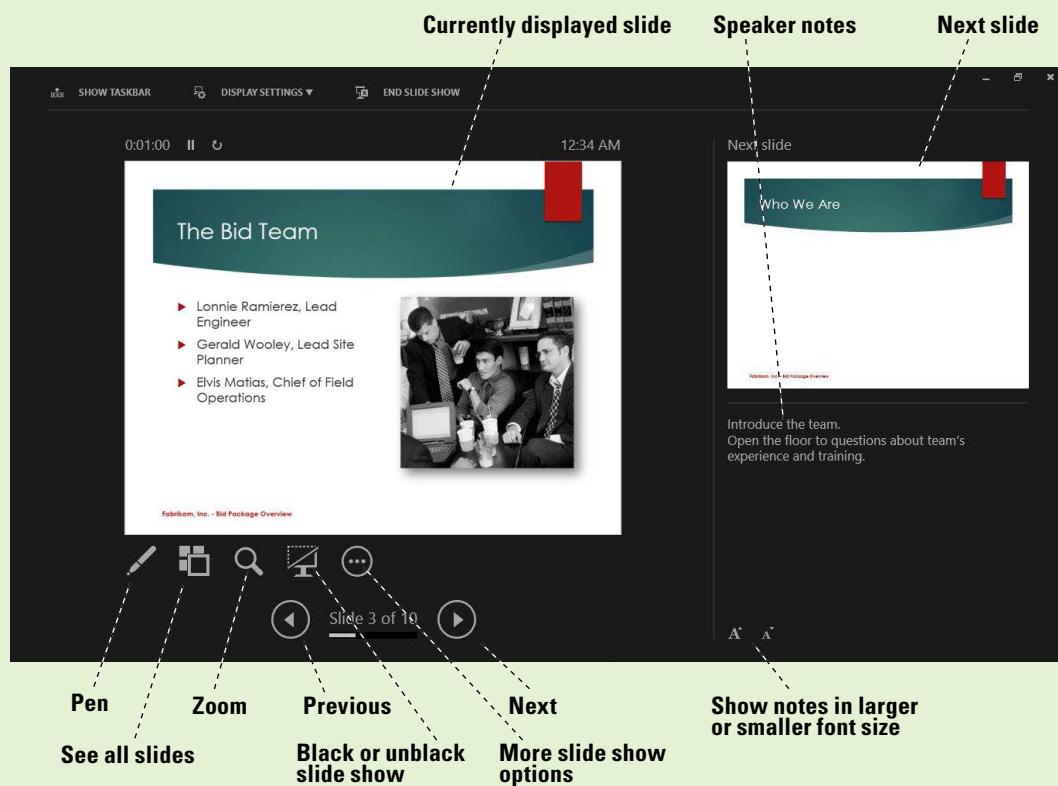
The presentation tools



You can also display a navigation menu by right-clicking anywhere on the slide. The right-click menu contains an additional command, Pointer Options, which opens the same menu as the Pen button in the presentation tools.

If you have a second monitor available, you can optionally choose to display Presenter View on the monitor that the audience does not view. Presenter View contains many tools for controlling the presentation behind the scenes and provides you with an opportunity to review any speaker notes you might have included in the presentation file (Figure 11-9).

**Figure 11-9**  
Presenter View



## WORKING WITH PRESENTATION TOOLS

PowerPoint offers a number of **presentation tools** you can use during a presentation to control the display of slides and mark directly on the slides if desired. You can use keyboard commands, mouse clicks, presentation tools, or menu commands to control the presentation. You can select from several marking options and colors to annotate your slides during the presentation.

### Moving Through a Presentation

There are many ways to move through a presentation's slides. You can simply click to move from start to finish, ignoring any hidden slides. If you want to jump around to other slides that are not in the default sequence, you can use the navigation menu, keyboard shortcuts, or other techniques. In this exercise, you will practice moving through a presentation.

PowerPoint provides many methods so that you can use the tools that are most comfortable for you to go forward, backward, or to a specific slide. Table 11-1 summarizes the most popular navigation options in Slide Show view.

**Table 11-1**

Navigation Options  
in Slide Show View

If you have chosen the *Browsed by an individual (window)* show type in the Set Up Show dialog box, the presentation tools at the lower-left corner of the screen do not display and you cannot use the mouse button to go to the next slide. You can use the keyboard options to go to the next or previous slide, or you can right-click the slide and select Next or Previous.

| Action                                 | Keyboard  | Mouse  | Right-click menu   | Presentation tools  |
|--|---|--|--|---|
| Show the next slide or animation       | N<br>Enter<br>Spacebar<br>Page Down<br>Right arrow  | Left mouse button.   | Right-click, then select Next.   | Next button.  |
| Show the previous slide or animation   | P<br>Page Up<br>Backspace<br>Left arrow   | n/a  | Right-click, then select Previous.   | Previous button.  |
| Go to the next slide if hidden         | H   | n/a  | n/a  | n/a   |
| Go to the last slide viewed            | n/a   | n/a  | Right-click, then select Last Viewed.  | Menu button, then select Last Viewed.   |
| Go to a specific slide                 | Press G and use the arrow keys to move the highlight to the desired slide and then press Enter.<br>OR<br>Press Ctrl+S for the All Slides dialog box, select the desired slide, and then select Go To.<br>OR<br>Type the slide number and press Enter. | n/a  | Right-click, then select See All Slides, then select the desired thumbnail.                                | See All Slides button, then select the desired thumbnail.                             |
| End show                               | Esc   | n/a  | Right-click, then select End Show.   | Menu button, then select End Show.  |
| Zoom in on a part of the current slide | + to zoom in (press again to zoom in more) - to zoom out (press again to zoom out more)   | Right-click to return to regular viewing after zooming in. | Right-click, then select Zoom In. Select an area of the slide to zoom in on. Drag to move the zoomed area. | Zoom button. Select an area of the slide to zoom in on. Drag to move the zoomed area. |
| Get Help (command summary)             | n/a   | n/a  | Right-click, then select Help.   | Menu button, then select Help.  |

**STEP BY STEP****Move through a Presentation**

**GET READY. RE-OPEN** the *Bid Solution* presentation that you saved previously in this lesson.

**Take Note** An easy way to re-open Bid Solution is to select the File tab, select Open, and then select the *Bid Solution* file in the list of recent files.

1. Make the following changes to the presentation's setup so that it is configured to be used by a live speaker:
  - a. You should have done this earlier but if it's not done, select the **Slide Show** tab, select the Record Slide Show **drop-down arrow**, point to **Clear**, and then select **Clear Timings on All Slides**.

- b. Select the **Set Up Slide Show** button, and in the Show slides section, make sure **All** is selected (not Custom show).
  - c. In the Show type section, select **Presented by a speaker (full screen)**.
  - d. Select the Slide show monitor **drop-down arrow** and then select **Automatic**.
  - e. Select **OK**.
2. In the Start Slide Show group, select the **From Beginning** button to start the presentation from slide 1.
3. Move the pointer on the slide until the presentation tools display in the lower-left corner of the screen (refer to Figure 11-8).
4. Select the **Next** button (the right-pointing arrow). The next slide displays.
5. Select the **Previous** button (the left-pointing arrow at the far left of the tools). Slide 1 redisplays.
6. Right-click anywhere on the slide to display the presentation shortcut menu, and then select **See All Slides**. Thumbnail images of the slides appear. Notice that slide 2 is darker than the others because it is hidden.
7. Select the **Back** arrow in the upper-left corner to return to the slide shown and then press **Page Down** to display the next slide.
8. Move the mouse pointer to display the presentation tools and then select the **Zoom** button (which resembles a magnifying glass). A large rectangular area appears, attached to the mouse pointer.
9. Move the mouse pointer so the shaded area is over the photo and then select to zoom in on the photo. After viewing the photo, right-click to zoom out again.
10. Select the **Menu** button in the presentation tools (the rightmost button) to display a menu (refer to Figure 11-8) and then select **Last Viewed**. The slide you previously viewed (slide 1) displays.
11. Right-click the screen again and then select **End Show** on the presentation shortcut menu to end the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## Using Presenter View

Presenter View, as you saw in Figure 11-9, provides an interface for controlling a live show. You can use it on another monitor as your slides display in Slide Show view on the monitor or projector that the audience views. You can display Presenter View even if you do not have two monitors. This gives you a chance to practice working with Presenter View in advance of your presentation, regardless of the hardware you have to practice with. In this exercise, you will enter Presenter View and learn about some of its tools and features.

### STEP BY STEP

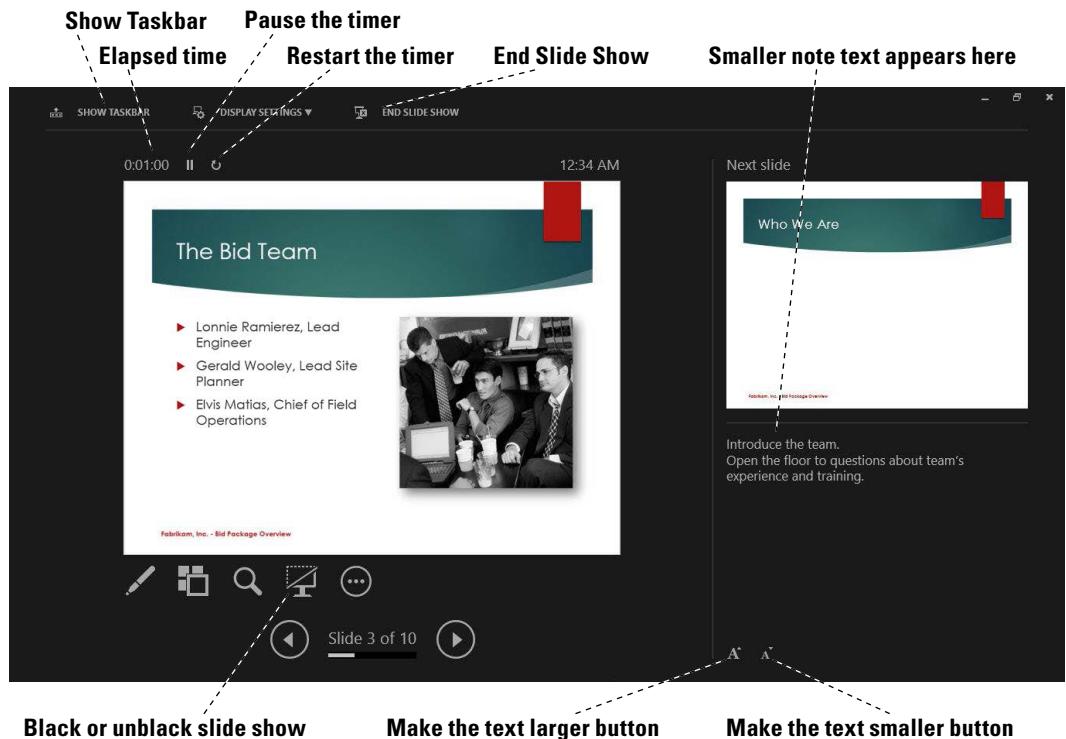
### Use Presenter View

**GET READY. USE** the **Bid Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the Slide Show tab, select **From Beginning** to start the presentation from slide 1.
2. Right-click anywhere on the slide and then select **Show Presenter View** on the menu. Presenter View displays. The current slide appears in the large pane on the left. Beneath it are icons that represent some of the same presenter tools as in Slide Show view. These icons were pointed out in Figure 11-9. The next slide appears in the smaller pane on the right. If this slide contained any speaker notes, they would appear in the lower-right corner.
3. Select the **Next** button (right-pointing arrow) at the bottom of the screen. The presentation advances to the next slide.
4. Below the notes pane, click the **Make the text smaller** button two times. The note text appears smaller (Figure 11-10).

**Figure 11-10**

Use the buttons below the notes pane to make note text larger or smaller



5. Above the current slide, note the timer, which has been recording how much time the presentation has been running. Select the **Pause the timer** button next to it. The timer stops and the button turns to a Resume the timer button (right pointing arrow).
6. Select the **Restart the timer** button (the button to the right of the Resume the timer button). The timer resets and the timer resumes counting.
7. In the top-left corner of the screen, select **Show Taskbar**. The taskbar appears at the bottom of the screen. Select **Show Taskbar** again to hide the taskbar. Showing the taskbar during a presentation can be useful because it enables you to jump out to some other application temporarily.
8. Select the **Black or unblack slide show** button below the current slide. The image of the current slide appears black and appears that way on the audience's screen too.
9. Select the **Black or unblack slide show** button again to restore the current slide's image to the audience's screen.
10. Select **End Slide Show** to end the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

### Annotating Slides with the Pen or Highlighter

As you proceed through a presentation, you might want to pause to emphasize certain points. You can **annotate** (write) directly on a slide with the annotation tools in PowerPoint. You can control these tools, including setting the color and width of the onscreen pen, via the Pen menu in the presentation tools. Various pen types, thicknesses, and colors are available. In the following exercise, you create ink annotations during a slide show.

PowerPoint offers three different annotation pen options: Laser Pointer, Pen, and Highlighter. The Laser Pointer does not leave marks on the slide at all. The Pen leaves marks where you drag it, about the same thickness as an ink pen. The Highlighter leaves a colored swath where you drag it that is semi-transparent, so it does not obscure content. You can change the ink color for any of these pen types.

The Black Screen and White Screen options allow you to replace the current slide with a black or white screen that you can use for annotations or to cover the current material if you want to keep it under wraps while you are discussing some other issue.

## STEP BY STEP

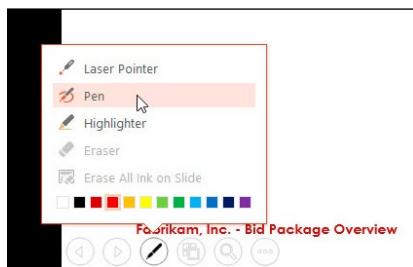
### Annotate Slides

**GET READY. USE** the *Bid Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. On the Slide Show tab, deselect the **Use Presenter View** check box, if necessary.
2. Press **F5** to start the presentation from slide 1. Type **7** and then press **Enter**. Slide 7 appears.
3. Move the mouse to display the presenter tools, select the **Pen** icon (Figure 11-11), and then select **Pen** from the menu. The pointer changes to a small, round pen pointer.

**Figure 11-11**

Choose the Pen pointer



4. Right-click the slide, point to **Pointer Options**, point to **Ink Color**, and then select **Dark Red** in the palette.
5. Press the spacebar until the *Site Preparation* bullet point appears and then use the pen pointer to circle the value for site preparation, **\$1,125,500**.
6. Press the **B** key on the keyboard. The screen is blacked out so you can annotate without the distraction of the slide material.
7. Use the pen pointer to draw a large United States currency symbol (\$) in the middle of the slide.

#### Take Note

While a pen pointer is active, you cannot use the mouse button to advance slides.

8. Press the **B** key again. The slide background is restored and the annotation disappears.
9. Press **Esc** on the keyboard. The arrow pointer is restored.
10. Type **8** and then press **Enter** to go to slide 8.
11. Press the **spacebar** until the *Weather* and *Overhead power lines* bullet points appear, select the **Pen** button in the presentation tools, and then select **Highlighter**. Drag the highlighter pointer across the **Weather** bullet item to highlight it.
12. Select the **Pen** button and then select **Erase All Ink on Slide**. The highlight you added is removed.
13. End the slide show. When asked if you want to keep your annotations, select **\**.
14. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

When you reach the end of the presentation (or end it early), if you have created any annotations, you are prompted to either save or discard them. If you save them, they are saved on the slide as **ink**, which is similar to a drawing you might create with the Shapes tool.

### Editing Ink Annotations

You can move and delete individual annotations on slides as you would any other graphics and you can also manage ink with the Ink Tools Pens tab. In the following exercise, you edit an ink annotation in Normal view and add a new annotation there.

**STEP BY STEP****Edit Ink Annotations**

**GET READY.** USE the *Bid Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. In Normal view, select **slide 7** and then select the dark red circle you drew as an annotation.
2. Select the **Ink Tools Pens** tab to examine the options available (Figure 11-12).

**Figure 11-12**

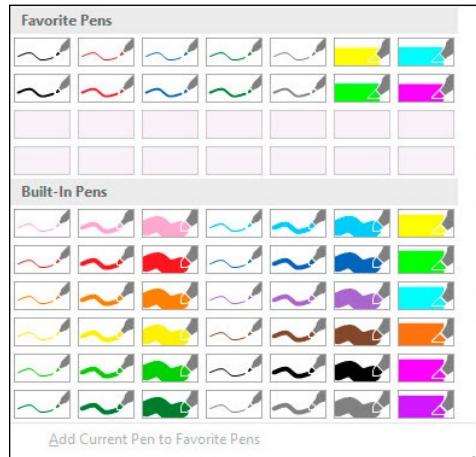
Ink Tools Pens tab on the Ribbon



3. Select the **Color** button to open its palette, and then under Standard Colors, select **Green**. The selected annotation changes color.
4. Select the **Thickness** button to open its menu, and then select **3 pt**. The selected annotation increases in thickness.
5. In the Pens group, select the **More** button to open a gallery of pen styles (Figure 11-13).

**Figure 11-13**

Gallery of pen styles



6. In the Built-In Pens section, select **Red Pen (1.0 mm)**. Notice that the selected annotation does not change. These pen styles are for creating new annotations, not editing existing ones.
7. Drag on the slide to underline **Site Preparation**.
8. On the Ink Tools Pens tab, in the Write group, choose the **Select Objects** button to return to using the arrow pointer again. Select **slide 1** and then select the **Home** tab.
9. **SAVE** the presentation.

**PAUSE.** **LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

## PACKAGING A PRESENTATION FOR CD DELIVERY

You might need to transport your presentation materials to another computer to run your slide show. The Package for CD feature streamlines the process of packing all the materials you need to show the presentation even if PowerPoint is not installed on the other computer. Even though this option has CD in the title, you can save the presentation on a flash drive (USB drive) or on a folder on your computer to transfer to storage media later or to back up your presentation.

## Packaging a Presentation for CD

The Package for CD feature makes short work of packing all the files you need to show your slides, no matter what kind of system you have to use to run the show. In this exercise, you create a version of your presentation on a CD that you can distribute to others.

**Take Note** Some earlier versions of PowerPoint packaged presentations to CD along with a PowerPoint Viewer utility. PowerPoint 2013 and 2016, however, take a different approach; they package presentations with a Web page on the CD. On this Web page is a link for downloading the PowerPoint Viewer if it is needed. If you plan on showing the presentation somewhere that does not have Internet access, make sure you download the PowerPoint Viewer ahead of time on the computer you will be working with if it does not have a full version of PowerPoint on it.

### STEP BY STEP

### Package a Presentation for CD

**Take Note** You must have a writeable CD drive inserted in your system to complete this exercise. If you do not, or if you do not have a blank writeable CD disc available, skip this exercise.

**GET READY. USE** the *Bid Solution* presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

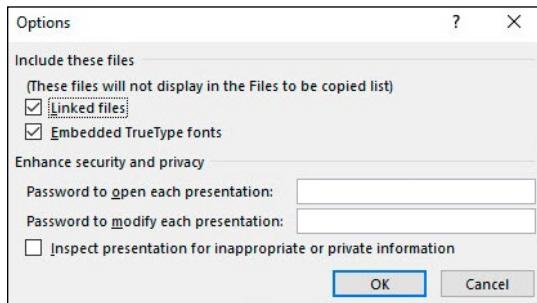
1. Insert a blank writeable CD disc in your writeable CD drive. If an AutoPlay box pops up, close it.
2. Select the **File** tab, select **Export**, select **Package Presentation for CD**, and then select **Package for CD**. The Package for CD dialog box opens.
3. In the Name the CD box, type **Bid**, replacing the default name.

**Take Note** You can optionally add other presentations or other documents onto the same storage device to avoid using a separate device for each presentation. To add other presentations, you would select Add and select the presentations to include. You could then reorder them with the up and down arrow buttons in the Package for CD dialog box. This exercise packages one presentation on CD, so it does not include these actions.

4. Select the **Options** button. The Options dialog box opens. Note that linked files are marked to be included and TrueType fonts will be embedded. Note that you can also optionally specify passwords to control access to the presentation(s), as shown in Figure 11-14.

**Figure 11-14**

The Options dialog box for packaging a presentation



5. Select **OK** to accept the default settings and close the Options dialog box.
6. In the Package for CD dialog box, select **Copy to CD**.
7. A dialog box asks if you want to include linked files in your package. Select **Yes**.
8. A message appears that the presentation contains comments or annotations, stating that these will not be included. Select **Continue**.
9. Wait for the presentation to be written to the CD. It might take several minutes. The CD ejects when finished.

10. In PowerPoint, a message appears stating that the files were successfully copied to CD and offering to copy the same files to another CD. Select **No**.
11. Select **Close** to close the Package for CD dialog box.
12. To test your new CD, reinsert the CD into your computer. If an AutoPlay box opens, select **Run PresentationPackage.html**. If no AutoPlay box opens, open **File Explorer**, select **This PC**, and then double-click the **CD/DVD drive**. Open the **PresentationPackage** folder and then double-click the **PresentationPackage.html** file.
13. A Web page displays, showing a page that lists the presentations on the CD. (There is only one in this case.) A link also appears for downloading the PowerPoint Viewer. You do not need it on your PC since you have the full version of PowerPoint. Select the **Bid Solution** presentation name.
14. Respond to any security warnings that might display in your Web browser and if prompted, choose to open the file. The presentation opens in PowerPoint, in Read-Only mode.
15. Select the **File** tab and then select **Close** to close the copy of the presentation that originated from the CD. (The original **Bid Solution** presentation is still open.) Switch to the browser window and **CLOSE** it.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** the presentation open to use in the next exercise.

#### Take Note

Package for CD works only with CDs, not DVDs. If you want to store a presentation on a DVD, you can save materials in a folder as described in the following section and then use your system's DVD burning tools to copy the files to the DVD.

### Packaging a Presentation to a Folder

With current computers being smaller and more compact, many students might not have a CD drive on their computer. You can use this same Package for CD option to save the files to a folder that you can then put on a flash drive. In addition, you can use this feature to archive presentations onto a CD, flash drive, or into folders for storage. The packaging process pulls together all the files you need for a presentation, so your stored presentation provides an excellent long-term backup for your work. In this exercise, you package a presentation to a folder.

#### STEP BY STEP

#### Package a Presentation to a Folder

**GET READY. USE** the **Bid Solution** presentation that is open from the previous exercise.

1. Select the **File** tab, select **Export**, select **Package Presentation for CD**, and then select **Package for CD**. The Package for CD dialog box opens.
2. Select **Copy to Folder**. The Copy to Folder dialog box opens.
3. In the **Folder name** box, change the default name to **Bid**.
4. In the **Location** box, change the path to the location where you are saving files for this lesson.
5. Select **OK**.
6. A message appears asking if you want to include linked files in your package. Select **Yes**.
7. A message appears that the presentation contains comments or annotations and that these will not be included. Select **Continue**.
8. Wait for the presentation to be written to the new folder. It should occur almost instantaneously (unlike when making a CD). The folder opens in Windows when it is finished.
9. In the folder window, double-click the **PresentationPackage** folder to view what is inside it. The folder contains some graphics and support files that are needed to show the Web page.
10. **Close** the folder window and return to PowerPoint. The Package for CD dialog box is still open.
11. Select **Close** to close the dialog box.

12. **SAVE** the *Bid Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

## Knowledge Assessment

### Fill in the Blank

Fill in each blank with the term or phrase that best completes the statement.

1. Use the \_\_\_\_\_ dialog box to change to a non-standard slide size.
2. You can set up a presentation to loop continuously until you press the \_\_\_\_\_ key.
3. Use the \_\_\_\_\_ toolbar to view timings as you rehearse a presentation.
4. When you \_\_\_\_\_ slides, you use the pointer to draw or write.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ option allows you to save the presentation to easily distribute to others.

### Multiple Choice

Circle the correct answer.

1. A slide that is wider than it is tall is displayed in which orientation?
  - a. Portrait
  - b. Column
  - c. Picture
  - d. Landscape
2. Which of the following is *not* one of the standard placeholders on the Handout Master?
  - a. Date
  - b. Header
  - c. Page Number
  - d. Author
3. Which of the following options prevents a slide from displaying during a presentation?
  - a. Delete Slide
  - b. Hide Slide
  - c. Show/Hide Slide
  - d. Conceal Slide
4. Which of the following is *not* a way to advance to the next slide during a presentation?
  - a. Press Home.
  - b. Press the spacebar.
  - c. Click the left mouse button.
  - d. Press Page Down.
5. Which of the following is a quick way to restore the arrow pointer after you have used it for drawing?
  - a. Press End.
  - b. Double-click the screen.
  - c. Click the arrow pointer button in the presenter tools.
  - d. Press Esc.

## Projects

### Project 11-1: Finalizing a Presentation and Creating Handouts

You are nearly ready to present the slide show for Relecloud Airlines. In this project, you will use the tools you have learned about in this lesson to finalize the presentation and create handouts.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint.

1. **OPEN** the *Airline* presentation from the data files for this lesson.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Airline Solution* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Select the **Slide Show** tab and then select the **Set Up Slide Show** button.
4. Choose the **Presented by a speaker (full screen)** option and choose to have slides advance **Manually**. Choose **Yellow** as the pen color. Select **OK** to accept the new settings.
5. Select the **Insert** tab and then select **Header & Footer**. Select the **Notes and Handouts** tab, choose to display the date (update automatically), the header **Relecloud Airlines**, and page numbers. Select **Apply to All** to apply the settings to all slides.
6. Select the **View** tab and then select **Handout Master** to open Handout Master view.
7. Center the header text and date in their placeholders and right-align the page number in its placeholder. On the Handout Master tab, select **Close Master View**.
8. Hide the last slide in the presentation.
9. Select the **File** tab, select **Print**, and then set the following print options:
  - a. Choose to print handouts with four slides per page, in vertical order.
  - b. Select the **Print All Slides** button and then deselect the **Print Hidden Slides** option if it's not already deselected.
10. Print the handouts.
11. **SAVE** the *Airline Solution* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

#### Take Note

In some classrooms, printing is limited or unavailable. Check with your instructor as needed to make sure it is okay to print a multiple-page document in your classroom.

**PAUSE. LEAVE** PowerPoint open for the next project.

### Project 11-2: Previewing a Presentation

In this project, you will run through the Airline Solution presentation before delivering it to make sure you are familiar with the content and how to display it during the slide show.

**GET READY. LAUNCH** PowerPoint if it is not already open.

1. **OPEN** the *Airline Solution* presentation you saved in the previous project.
2. **SAVE** the presentation as *Airline Solution 2* in the lesson folder on your flash drive.
3. Hide **slide 7**.
4. Press **F5** to view the presentation from slide 1.
5. Use the **Next** button in the presentation tools to move to slide 3.
6. Use the **Previous** button in the presentation tools to go backward to slide 1.
7. Right-click the slide to display the shortcut menu and use **See All Slides** to jump to **slide 4**.
8. Right-click the slide, select **Pointer Options**, and then select **Highlighter**.

9. Highlight the bullet items **Caribbean** and **Scuba**.
10. Restore the arrow pointer and press **Esc** to end the show. Choose to keep your annotations.
11. Rehearse timings for the presentation. When the presentation ends, save the slide timings.
12. Set up the slide show to use the slide timings you saved.
13. **SAVE** the *Airline Solution 2* presentation and then **CLOSE** the file.

**STOP. CLOSE** PowerPoint.

---

# Appendix A

## EXAM 77-729: POWERPOINT 2016

| Objective Number                       | Matrix Skill  | Lesson Number |
|--|---|---------------|
| <b>Create and Manage Presentations</b> |   |               |
| <b>1.1</b>                             | <b><i>Create a Presentation</i></b>                 |               |
| 1.1.1                                  | Create a new presentation                           | 2             |
| 1.1.2                                  | Create a presentation based on a template           | 2             |
| 1.1.3                                  | Import Word document outlines                       | 2             |
| <b>1.2</b>                             | <b><i>Insert and Format Slides</i></b>              |               |
| 1.2.1                                  | Insert specific slide layouts                       | 2             |
| 1.2.2                                  | Duplicate existing slides                           | 2             |
| 1.2.3                                  | Hide and unhide slides                              | 11            |
| 1.2.4                                  | Delete slides                                       | 2             |
| 1.2.5                                  | Apply a different slide layout                      | 2             |
| 1.2.6                                  | Modify individual slide backgrounds                 | 4             |
| 1.2.7                                  | Insert slide headers, footers, and page numbers     | 4             |
| <b>1.3</b>                             | <b><i>Modify Slides, Handouts, and Notes</i></b>    |               |
| 1.3.1                                  | Change the slide master theme or background         | 4             |
| 1.3.2                                  | Modify slide master content                         | 4             |
| 1.3.3                                  | Create a slide layout                               | 4             |
| 1.3.4                                  | Modify a slide layout                               | 4             |
| 1.3.5                                  | Modify the handout master                           | 4,11          |
| 1.3.6                                  | Modify the notes master                             | 4             |
| <b>1.4</b>                             | <b><i>Order and Group Slides</i></b>                |               |
| 1.4.1                                  | Create sections                                     | 4             |
| 1.4.2                                  | Modify slide order                                  | 2,4           |
| 1.4.3                                  | Rename sections                                     | 4             |
| <b>1.5</b>                             | <b><i>Change Presentation Options and Views</i></b> |               |
| 1.5.1                                  | Change slide size                                   | 11            |
| 1.5.2                                  | Change views of a presentation                      | 1             |

| Objective Number                                  | Matrix Skill  | Lesson Number |
|---|---|---------------|
| 1.5.3   | Set file properties                                   | 10            |
| <b>1.6</b>  | <b><i>Configure a Presentation for Print</i></b>      |               |
| 1.6.1   | Print all or part of a presentation                   | 2             |
| 1.6.2   | Print notes pages                                     | 2             |
| 1.6.3   | Print handouts  | 11            |
| 1.6.4   | Print in color, grayscale, or black and white         | 2             |
| <b>1.7</b>  | <b><i>Configure and Present a Slide Show</i></b>      |               |
| 1.7.1   | Create custom slide shows                             | 11            |
| 1.7.2   | Configure slide show options                          | 11            |
| 1.7.3   | Rehearse slide show timing                            | 11            |
| 1.7.4   | Present a slide show by using Presenter View          | 11            |
| <b>Insert and Format Text, Shapes, and Images</b> |   |               |
| <b>2.1</b>  | <b><i>Insert and Format Text</i></b>                  |               |
| 2.1.1   | Insert text on a slide                                | 1             |
| 2.1.2   | Apply formatting and styles to text                   | 3             |
| 2.1.3   | Apply WordArt styles to text                          | 3             |
| 2.1.4   | Format text in multiple columns                       | 3             |
| 2.1.5   | Create bulleted and numbered lists                    | 3             |
| 2.1.6   | Insert hyperlinks                                     | 4             |
| <b>2.2</b>  | <b><i>Insert and Format Shapes and Text Boxes</i></b> |               |
| 2.2.1   | Insert or replace shapes                              | 8             |
| 2.2.2   | Insert text boxes                                     | 3             |
| 2.2.3   | Resize shapes and text boxes                          | 3,8           |
| 2.2.4   | Format shapes and text boxes                          | 3,8           |
| 2.2.5   | Apply styles to shapes and text boxes                 | 3             |
| <b>2.3</b>  | <b><i>Insert and Format Images</i></b>                |               |
| 2.3.1   | Insert images   | 8             |
| 2.3.2   | Resize and crop images                                | 8             |
| 2.3.3   | Apply styles and effects                              | 8             |
| <b>2.4</b>  | <b><i>Order and Group Objects</i></b>                 |               |
| 2.4.1   | Order objects   | 8             |
| 2.4.2   | Align objects   | 8             |
| 2.4.3   | Group objects   | 8             |

| Objective Number                                  | Matrix Skill                                      | Lesson Number |
|---|---|---------------|
| 2.4.4   | Display alignment tools                           | 8             |
| <b>Insert Tables, Charts, SmartArt, and Media</b> |   |               |
| <b>3.1</b>  | <b><i>Insert and Format Tables</i></b>            |               |
| 3.1.1   | Create a table                                    | 5             |
| 3.1.2   | Insert and delete table rows and columns          | 5             |
| 3.1.3   | Apply table styles                                | 5             |
| 3.1.4   | Import a table                                    | 5             |
| <b>3.2</b>  | <b><i>Insert and Format Charts</i></b>            |               |
| 3.2.1   | Create a chart                                    | 6             |
| 3.2.2   | Import a chart                                    | 6             |
| 3.2.3   | Change the Chart Type                             | 6             |
| 3.2.4   | Add a legend to a chart                           | 6             |
| 3.2.5   | Change the chart style of a chart                 | 6             |
| <b>3.3</b>  | <b><i>Insert and Format SmartArt graphics</i></b> |               |
| 3.3.1   | Create SmartArt graphics                          | 7             |
| 3.3.2   | Convert lists to SmartArt graphics                | 7             |
| 3.3.3   | Add shapes to SmartArt graphics                   | 7             |
| 3.3.4   | Reorder shapes in SmartArt graphics               | 7             |
| 3.3.5   | Change the color of SmartArt graphics             | 7             |
| <b>3.4</b>  | <b><i>Insert and Manage Media</i></b>             |               |
| 3.4.1   | Insert audio and video clips                      | 9             |
| 3.4.2   | Configure media playback options                  | 9             |
| 3.4.3   | Adjust media window size                          | 9             |
| 3.4.4   | Set the video start and stop time                 | 9             |
| 3.4.5   | Set media timing options                          | 9             |
| <b>Apply Transitions and Animations</b>           |   |               |
| <b>4.1</b>  | <b><i>Apply Slide Transitions</i></b>             |               |
| 4.1.1   | Insert slide transitions                          | 9             |
| 4.1.2   | Set transition effect options                     | 9             |
| <b>4.2</b>  | <b>Animate Slide Content</b>                      |               |
| 4.2.1   | Apply animations to objects                       | 9             |
| 4.2.2   | Apply animations to text                          | 9             |
| 4.2.3   | Set animation effect options                      | 9             |

| Objective Number                     | Matrix Skill  | Lesson Number |
|--------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| 4.2.4                                | Set animation paths                                     | 9             |
| <b>4.3</b>                           | <b><i>Set Timing for Transitions and Animations</i></b> |               |
| 4.3.1                                | Set transition effect duration                          | 9             |
| 4.3.2                                | Configure transition start and finish options           | 9             |
| 4.3.3                                | Reorder animations on a slide                           | 9             |
| <b>Manage Multiple Presentations</b> |   |               |
| <b>5.1</b>                           | <b><i>Merge Content from Multiple Presentations</i></b> |               |
| 5.1.1                                | Insert slides from another presentation                 | 2, 10         |
| 5.1.2                                | Compare two presentations                               | 10            |
| 5.1.3                                | Insert comments   | 10            |
| 5.1.4                                | Review comments   | 10            |
| <b>5.2</b>                           | <b><i>Finalize Presentations</i></b>                    |               |
| 5.2.1                                | Protect a presentation                                  | 10            |
| 5.2.2                                | Inspect a presentation                                  | 10            |
| 5.2.3                                | Proof a presentation                                    | 3             |
| 5.2.4                                | Preserve presentation content                           | 2, 8, 9       |
| 5.2.5                                | Export presentations to other formats                   | 10, 11        |

## A

Accept button 192  
Accessibility Checker pane 196–197  
accessibility issues, sharing presentations 196–198  
Account command (Backstage view) 4  
Add Chart Element button 118  
Add Emphasis Effect dialog box 173  
Add Entrance Effect dialog box 175  
adding. *See also* inserting  
  audio files to slides 178–179  
  chart elements 120–121  
  graphical hyperlinks 78–79  
  new elements to slide masters 83–84  
  rows/columns to tables 100–102  
  screen recordings to slides 181–182  
  shapes to SmartArt graphics 131–132  
  text boxes to slides 54–56  
  text hyperlinks 77–78  
  text in Outline view 13–14  
  text to blank slides 21–22  
  text to placeholders 12–13  
  text to SmartArt graphics 126–127  
  videos to slides 179–180  
Add Motion Path dialog box 173  
Add or Remove Columns button 62  
Add Shape button 131  
adjusting Zoom 13  
Advanced Animation group 172  
Advanced Properties button 199  
Advanced Properties dialog box 199  
advancing slides, transitions 171  
After Previous start option 174  
Align Bottom button 106  
alignment of text (tables) 105–107  
alignment options 164  
Align Right button 106  
All PowerPoint Presentations button 31  
animation effects  
  Animation Painter 177  
  Animation pane 175–177  
  applying animations 172–173  
  knowledge assessment 185  
  motion paths 173  
  projects 186  
  start options and timing 174–175  
  transitions 169–171

## B

Animation Painter 177  
Animation Pane 168–169, 175–177  
annotations 217–219  
antonyms 64  
applying  
  slide layouts 72  
  styles to graphics 149  
  themes to slide masters 82  
Apply To All button 169  
Apply to Selected Slides option 74  
Arrange commands 162  
arranging multiple presentation windows 11–12  
Artistic effects 153  
Artistic Effects gallery 153  
aspect ratio 147, 204  
assistants, organization charts 126  
Audio button 178  
audio commentary 211  
audio files 178–179  
  formatting 182  
  sizing and arranging content 184–185  
AutoFit, changing text size 43–44  
automatically advancing slides 171

brightness/Contrast setting (Correctness button) 150

brightness, graphics 149–151

bulleted lists 50

Bullets and Numbering dialog box 51

Bullets button 50

## C

CD delivery, packaging presentations 219–222

cells (tables) 94, 103–105

Center button 106

Chalk Sketch (Artistic effect) 152

Change All button, Spelling feature 64

Change button, Spelling feature 64

Change Chart Type button 115

Change Chart Type dialog box 115

Change Colors button 130

Change Colors gallery 130

Change Picture command 142

Change Shape button 136

changing. *See also* editing, modifying  
  passwords 193

slide backgrounds 74–75

theme color 71

theme fonts 72

Character Spacing button 105

Character Spacing tab 45

Chart Elements button 119

Chart Layout gallery 118

charts 111

  adding/deleting elements 120–121

  editing data 116–117

  formatting 121–122

  importing from Excel 114

  inserting 112–114

  knowledge assessment 122–123

  legends 119–120

  modifying chart type 115–116

  organization 125–126

  projects 123

  Quick Layout 118

  resizing and moving 114–115

Check Accessibility command 196

Checkmark Bullets button 50

Choose a SmartArt Graphic dialog box 124

- Choose File to Merge with Current Presentation dialog box 191  
clearing slide timings 211  
Clear Table button 107  
clip art illustrations 141  
Close command (Backstage view) 4  
Close Master View button 84  
closing  
  PowerPoint 15  
  presentations 5  
Collated button 38  
color  
  fonts 46  
  formatting graphics 151–152  
  themes 71  
  viewing presentations 10–11  
Color button 38  
Color Saturation 151  
color themes, SmartArt graphics 130  
Color Tone 151  
columns, text boxes 62–63  
Columns dialog box 63  
columns (tables) 94  
  adding 100–102  
  deleting 102  
  moving 102–103  
  resizing and distributing 103  
Combine command 161  
combining presentations 191–192  
command groups (Ribbon) 3–4  
commands  
  Backstage view 4–5  
  Ribbon command groups 3–4  
comment balloons 188  
comments  
  deleting 190–191  
  editing 190  
  inserting 189–190  
  viewing and replying to 188–189  
Comments pane 189  
Compare feature, merging two presentations 191  
comparing presentations 191–192  
Compatibility Checker 195–196  
compatibility issues, sharing presentations 195–196  
compressing images 155  
compressing media 185  
Compress Media dialog box 185  
Compress Pictures button 155, 185  
Compress Pictures dialog box 155  
content placeholders 112–114  
Contents tab 199  
converting  
  SmartArt graphics to text 137–138  
  text to SmartArt 127–129  
Convert to Shapes button 138  
Convert to SmartArt button 128  
Convert to SmartArt gallery 127–128  
copying  
  character formats, Format Painter 47–48  
  slides 28–29  
Copy to Folder dialog box 221  
Corrections button 149  
Create a Video button 200  
Create New Theme Colors dialog box 71  
Create PDF/XPS button 200  
creating presentations  
  blank presentations 20–22  
  existing content  
    importing text from other sources 34–35  
    slide libraries 32–33  
    Word 31–32  
  knowledge assessment 39  
  projects 39–40  
  templates 24–26  
Creative Commons licenses 141  
Crop button 146  
cropping images 146–147  
customizing  
  backgrounds 75  
  handouts 206–208  
  slide masters 81  
    adding new elements 83–84  
    background images 84–86  
    Handout and Notes masters 88–90  
    layout 86–88  
    moving and resizing placeholders 82–83  
    themes 82  
  transition effects 169–171  
Custom Range button 38  
custom shapes 160–161  
custom shows 209  
Custom Shows dialog box 209  
Custom Slide Show button 209  
Custom tab 199  
Cycle SmartArt graphics 124
- D**
- data (charts), editing 116–117  
data series, charts. *See* charts  
dates, inserting in presentations 76–77  
Define Custom Show dialog box 209  
Delete Columns button 102  
Delete Rows button 102  
deleting. *See also* removing  
  chart elements 120–121  
  comments 190–191  
  rows/columns from tables 102  
  slides 31  
delivering presentations  
  adjusting slide orientation and size 204–206
- choosing slides to display 208–209  
customizing audience handouts 206–208  
custom shows 209  
knowledge assessment 222  
packaging for CD delivery 219–222  
presentation tools  
  annotations 217–219  
  navigation options 214–216  
  Presenter View 216–217  
projects 223–224  
rehearsing slide show 210–211  
setting up a slide show 211–213  
demoting shapes, SmartArt graphics 134–135  
design (presentations) 68–69  
  dates, footers, and slide numbers 76–77  
  hyperlinks 77–79  
  knowledge assessment 90  
  projects 91–92  
  sections 79–80  
  slide backgrounds 74–75  
  slide masters 81  
    adding new elements 83–84  
    background images 84–86  
    Handout and Notes masters 88–90  
    layout 86–88  
    moving and resizing placeholders 82–83  
    themes 82  
  themes and layout 69  
    applying a different slide layout 72  
    applying a theme and variant 70–71  
    changing theme color 71  
    changing theme fonts 72
- Design tab  
  Themes gallery 69  
  Variants gallery 68–69  
diagonal lines 155  
dialog box launchers 3, 45  
Distribute Columns button 103  
Distribute Rows button 103  
distributing  
  presentations  
    accessibility issues 196–198  
    compatibility issues 195  
    knowledge assessment 202–203  
    modifying properties and removing metadata 198–200  
    projects 203  
  rows/columns in tables 103  
Document Inspector dialog box 199  
drag-and-drop, rearranging slides in a presentation 29  
drawing  
  guides 143–145  
  tables 96–97  
  tools  
    drawing and resizing shapes 157–158  
    line tools 155–157
- Draw Table button 96  
drop-down arrows 3

- drop-down lists 3  
 Duplicate Selected Slides command 28  
 duplicating slides 28–29  
 Duration setting (transitions) 169
- E**  
 Edit Anyway command 195  
 Edit Comment button 190  
 Edit Data button 114, 117  
 edited presentations, saving 14–15  
*editing. See also changing, modifying*  
     chart data 116–117  
     comments 190  
     ink annotations 218–219  
 Effect Options button 169  
 effects  
     Artistic effects 153  
     fonts 44–46  
     Picture effects 151–152  
 embedded worksheets 97  
 embedding fonts 23–24  
 emphasis effects 172  
 Encrypt Document dialog box 193  
 encrypting presentations, passwords 193  
 End Review button 192  
 entrance effects 172  
 Excel charts, importing 114  
 Excel workbooks 97  
 Excel worksheets, importing into PowerPoint 97–100  
 existing presentations  
     color versus grayscale viewing 10–11  
     multiple presentation windows 11–12  
     opening 6–7  
     text  
         adding in Outline view 13–14  
         adding to placeholders 12–13  
         saving edited presentations 14–15  
     views 7–10  
 exit effects 172  
 exiting. *See closing*  
 Export command (Backstage view) 4  
 exporting presentations  
     PDF/XPS and Video formats 199–200  
     PowerPoint Show files 201  
     XML format 201–202  
 Export page (Backstage view) 5  
 Extensible Markup Language (XML) format 201–202
- F**  
 Fade dialog box 176  
 Feedback command (Backstage view) 4  
 file properties, sharing presentations 198–200  
 File tab (Ribbon) 4
- fills, text boxes 57–58  
 picture and gradient 59–60  
 texture and pattern 61–62  
 Flip Horizontal command 145  
 flipping images 145–146  
 folders, packaging presentations 221–222  
 Font Color button 46  
 Font dialog box 45  
 Font group commands 41  
 fonts  
     color 46  
     embedding 23–24  
     selection and size 42–43  
     styles and effects 44–46  
     themes 43, 72  
 footers 76–77  
 Foreground button 75  
 Format Background button 75  
 Format Legend task pane 119  
 Format Painter 47–48  
 formats, saving presentations 199–200  
 Format Shape task pane 197  
 formatting  
     audio/video files 182  
     charts 121–122  
     graphics 140–155  
         Artistic effects 153  
         brightness and sharpness 149–151  
         color adjustments 151–152  
         compressing images 155  
         cropping images 146–147  
         Picture effects 151–152  
         removing image backgrounds 153–155  
         rotating and flipping images 145–146  
         rulers, gridlines, and guides 143–145  
         styles 149  
 presentations, themes and layout 69–73  
 tables  
     applying styles 107  
     text alignment and orientation 105–107  
     turning off style options 108  
 text 41  
     AutoFit 43–44  
     bulleted lists 50  
     font color 46  
     font selection and size 42–43  
     font style and effects 44–46  
     Format Painter 47–48  
     knowledge assessment 65–66  
     numbered lists 49–50  
     projects 66–67  
     SmartArt graphics 136–137  
     text boxes 54–63  
     WordArt feature 51–54  
     video files 183–184  
 Fragment command 161  
 free-form lines 155  
 From Beginning button 216
- Full Page Slides button 207  
 Funnel charts 112
- G**  
 Glow (Picture effect) 152  
 Gradient fill, text boxes 59  
 graphical hyperlinks 78–79  
 graphics  
     adding shapes to slides  
     adding text 158  
     custom shapes 160–161  
     drawing and resizing shapes 157–158  
     line tools 155–157  
     inserting and formatting 140  
     Artistic effects 153  
     brightness and sharpness 149–151  
     changing picture 142  
     color adjustments 151–152  
     compressing images 155  
     cropping images 146–147  
     Picture effects 151–152  
     pictures from files 142  
     removing image backgrounds 153–155  
     rotating and flipping images 145–146  
     rulers, gridlines, and guides 143–145  
     styles 149  
     Web images 141–142  
 knowledge assessment 166  
 ordering and grouping shapes  
     aligning objects with each other 164–165  
     grouping objects 165–166  
     setting object order 162–164  
 projects 166–167  
 SmartArt 124  
     adding text 126–127  
     converting text to 127–129  
     inserting 125  
     knowledge assessment 138  
     modifying 129–138  
     projects 138–139  
 WordArt 51  
 grayscale, viewing presentations 10–11  
 Grayscale button 38  
 gridlines 111, 143–145  
 Group command 166  
 grouping shapes  
     aligning objects with each other 164–165  
     setting object order 162–164  
 Guides feature 143–145
- H**  
 Handout Master button 88  
 Handout masters 88–90, 206  
 handouts, 206–208  
 Header and Footer dialog box 76  
 Header & Footer button 76  
 headers 77  
 height (table rows) 103

- Hide Slide button 208  
 hiding selected slides 208  
 Hierarchy SmartArt graphics 124  
 Highlighter, annotating slides 217–219  
 histogram charts 112  
 Home tab (Ribbon) 3  
 Honeycomb effect 170  
 horizontal alignment options (table text) 105  
 horizontal axis labels (charts) 111  
 horizontal lines 155  
 hyperlinks  
   graphical 78–79  
   text 77–78
- I**
- Ignore All button, Spelling feature 64  
 images. See graphics, pictures  
 importing  
   Excel charts 114  
   tables 97–100  
   text 34–35  
 incorporating reviewer changes 191–192  
 Info command (Backstage view) 4  
 information bar 194  
 ink annotations, editing 218–219  
 Ink Tools Pens tab 218  
 Insert Above button 100  
 Insert a SmartArt Graphic button 125  
 Insert Audio dialog box 178  
 Insert Chart dialog box 112  
 Insert Hyperlink dialog box 77–78  
 inserting. *See also* adding  
   charts, content placeholders 112–114  
   comments 189–190  
   dates, footers, and slide numbers 76–77  
   graphics 140  
    Artistic effects 153  
    brightness and sharpness 149–151  
    changing picture 142  
    color adjustments 151–152  
    compressing images 155  
    cropping images 146–147  
    Picture effects 151–152  
    pictures from files 142  
    removing image backgrounds 153–155  
    rotating and flipping images 145–146  
    rulers, gridlines, and guides 143–145  
    styles 149  
    Web images 141–142  
 SmartArt graphics 125  
 tables 94–96  
 WordArt graphics 51–53  
 Insert Layout button 86  
 Insert Left button 102  
 Insert Picture dialog box 142  
 Insert Right button 101  
 Insert Table button 94  
 Insert Table dialog box 94  
 Insert Video button 180  
 Insert Video dialog box 180  
 Inspect Document command 199  
 Intersect command 161  
 Italic button 45
- K**
- keywords, Bing image searches 141  
 knowledge assessments  
   animation effects/multimedia 185  
   charts 122–123  
   creating presentations 39  
   delivering presentations 222  
   formatting text 65–66  
   graphics 166  
   PowerPoint essentials 16  
   presentation design 90  
   protecting presentations 202–203  
   sharing presentations 202–203  
   SmartArt graphics 138  
   tables 108
- L**
- landscape orientation 204  
 Larger button 136  
 Laser Pointer annotation pen 217  
 layout  
   slide masters 86–88  
   slides 69, 72  
   SmartArt graphics 124, 130–131  
   tables  
    adding rows/columns 100–102  
    deleting rows/columns 102  
    merging and splitting cells 103–105  
    moving rows/columns 102–103  
    resizing and distributing rows/columns 103  
 Layouts gallery 130  
 legends (charts) 111, 119–120  
 libraries, creating presentations from existing content 32–33  
 Line Drawing (Artistic effect) 152  
 Line tool 155  
 line tools 155–157  
 Link button 77  
 linking to Web pages, hyperlinks 77–79  
 lists  
   bulleted lists 50  
   numbered lists 49–50  
 List SmartArt graphics 124  
 Live Preview feature 51
- M**
- manually advancing slides 171  
 Mark as Final command 194  
 marking a presentation as final 194–195  
 markup 188  
 Matrix SmartArt graphics 124  
 media compression 185  
 Menu button 213, 215  
 Merge Cells command 103  
 Merge Shapes button 161  
 merging cells (tables) 103–105  
 merging shapes 161  
 metadata, removing 198–200  
 Microsoft PowerPoint Compatibility Checker dialog box 195–196  
 Mini Toolbar, fonts  
   color 46  
   size 42  
   styles and effects 45  
 modifying. *See also* changing, editing  
   chart styles 121–122  
   chart types 115–116  
   Handout and Notes masters 88–90  
   SmartArt graphics 129–138  
    adding shapes 131–132  
    changing shape appearance 135–136  
    color theme 130  
    converting SmartArt to text 137–138  
    layouts 130–131  
    promoting/demoting shapes 134–135  
    removing shapes 133  
    reordering shapes 134  
    reversing the direction of shapes 133–134  
    styles 129–130  
    text formatting 136–137  
    type selection 135  
    transition effects 169–171  
 Morph transition 171  
 motion paths 172–173  
 Move Down button 134  
 Move Up button 134  
 moving  
   charts 114–115  
   placeholders, slide masters 82–83  
   rows/columns in tables 102–103  
 multimedia  
   audio files 178–179  
   compressing media 185  
   formatting video/audio content 182  
   knowledge assessment 185  
   poster frames 182–183  
   projects 186  
   screen recordings 181–182  
   sizing and arranging content 184–185  
   video files 179–180  
    trimming video clips 181  
    video style and formatting 183–184  
 multiple presentation windows 11–12
- N**
- navigation tools, delivering a presentation 214–216  
 New command (Backstage view) 4

New Comment button 189  
 New Slide button 27  
 New tab (Backstage view) 19–20  
 Next button 215  
 Normal view 1, 7  
 Notes and Handouts tab 77, 206  
 Notes masters 88–90  
 Notes Page Orientation button 89  
 Notes Page view 8  
 null string 193  
 numbered lists 49–50  
 Numbering button 49  
 numbers (slides), inserting in presentations 76–77

**O**

object order, setting 162–164  
 On Click start option 174  
 OneDrive, distributing presentations 191  
 Online Pictures command 141  
 Online Pictures dialog box 141  
 Open command (Backstage view) 4  
 Open dialog box 6  
 opening  
     existing presentations 6–7  
     PowerPoint 2  
 opening screen 2, 21  
 Open page (Backstage view) 6  
 Optimize Compatibility button 196  
 Optimize Media Compatibility dialog box 196  
 Options command (Backstage view) 4  
 Options dialog box 20  
 ordering shapes  
     aligning objects with each other 164–165  
     grouping objects 165–166  
     setting object order 162–164  
 organization charts 125  
     assistants 126  
     subordinates 126  
     top-level shapes 126  
 orientation  
     slides 204–206  
     text (tables) 105–107  
 Outline view 7–8, 13–14

**P**

Package for CD feature 220–221  
 packaging presentations 219–222  
 Paint Strokes effect 153  
 Paragraph group commands 41  
 password-protecting presentations 193  
 pattern fills, text boxes 61–62  
 Pause the timer button 217  
 PDF (Portable Document Format) files 199–200

Pen, annotating slides 217–219  
 Pen button 214  
 Picture effects 151–152  
 Picture Effects button 152  
 pictures. See also graphics  
     changing pictures 142  
     inserting pictures from files 142  
 Pictures button 142  
 Picture SmartArt graphics 124  
 Picture Styles gallery 149  
 Picture Tools Format tab 140  
 placeholders  
     adding text 12–13  
     content placeholders 112–114  
     moving and resizing, slide masters 82–83  
 playback controls 179  
 Pointer Options command 214  
 Portable Document Format (PDF) files 199–200  
 portrait orientation 204  
 Position control, resizing an image 147  
 poster frames 182–183  
 PowerPoint 97–2003 Presentation format 195  
 PowerPoint Show files, exporting and saving presentations 201  
 PowerPoint window  
     Backstage view 4–5  
     closing presentations 5  
     exiting 15  
     knowledge assessment 16  
     Normal view 1  
     projects 16–18  
     Ribbons  
         command groups 3–4  
         File tab 4  
     starting PowerPoint 2  
 PowerPoint XML Presentation 201  
 presentations  
     animation effects  
         Animation Painter 177  
         Animation pane 175–177  
         applying animations 172–173  
         knowledge assessment 185  
         motion paths 173  
         projects 186  
         start options and timing 174–175  
         transitions 169–171  
     closing 5  
     comments  
         deleting 190–191  
         editing 190  
         inserting 189–190  
         viewing and replying to 188–189  
     comparing and combining multiple presentations 191–192  
     creating  
         blank presentations 20–21  
         existing content 31–36  
 knowledge assessment 39  
 projects 39–40  
 templates 24–26  
 deleting slides 31  
 delivery  
     adjusting slide orientation and size 204–206  
     choosing slides to display 208–209  
     customizing audience handouts 206–208  
     custom shows 209  
     knowledge assessment 222  
     packaging for CD delivery 219–222  
     presentation tools 214–219  
     projects 223–224  
     rehearsing slide show 210–211  
     setting up a slide show 211–213  
 design 68  
 dates, footers, and slide numbers 76–77  
 hyperlinks 77–79  
 knowledge assessment 90  
 projects 91–92  
 sections 79–80  
 slide backgrounds 74–75  
 slide masters 81–90  
 themes and layout 69  
 duplicating slides 28–29  
 existing  
     color versus grayscale viewing 10–11  
     multiple presentation windows 11–12  
     opening 6–7  
     views 7–10  
     working with text 12–15  
 exporting and saving  
     PDF/XPS and Video formats 199–200  
     PowerPoint Show files 201  
     XML format 201–202  
 graphics  
     adding shapes to slides 155–161  
     inserting and formatting images 140–155  
     knowledge assessment 166  
     ordering and grouping shapes 162–166  
     projects 166–167  
 multimedia  
     audio files 178–179  
     compressing media 185  
     formatting video/audio content 182  
     knowledge assessment 185  
     poster frames 182–183  
     projects 186  
     screen recordings 181–182  
     sizing and arranging content 184–185  
     trimming video clips 181  
     video files 179–180  
     video style and formatting 183–184  
 printing 36–38  
 rearranging slides 29–30  
 saving 22  
     embedding fonts 23–24  
     first time 23  
 security

- changing/removing passwords 193  
 knowledge assessment 202–203  
 marking as final 194–195  
 password-protection 193  
 projects 203  
**sharing**  
 accessibility issues 196–198  
 compatibility issues 195  
 knowledge assessment 202–203  
 modifying properties and removing  
     metadata 198–200  
 projects 203  
**tables**  
 cells 94  
 columns 94  
 drawing 96–97  
 formatting 105–108  
 importing 97–100  
 inserting 94–96  
 knowledge assessment 108  
 layout 100–105  
 projects 109–110  
 rows 94  
**text**  
 adding to blank slides 21–22  
 adding to shapes 158  
 converting SmartArt graphics to  
     137–138  
 converting to SmartArt 127–129  
 formatting tools 41–67, 136–137  
 hyperlinks 77–78  
 importing 34–35  
 proofing tools, 63–65  
 SmartArt graphics 126–127  
 tables 105–107  
**presentation tools** 213  
 annotations 217–219  
 navigation options 214–216  
 Presenter View 216–217  
 Presenter View 214, 216–217  
 preset animations 172  
 Previous button 215  
 Print command (Backstage view) 4  
 printing presentations 36–38  
 Print options 37–38  
 Process SmartArt graphics 124  
**projects**  
 animation effects/multimedia 186  
 charts 123  
 creating presentations 39–40  
 delivering presentations 223–224  
 formatting text 66–67  
 graphics 166–167  
 PowerPoint essentials 16–18  
 presentation design 91–92  
 protecting presentations 203  
 sharing presentations 203  
 SmartArt graphics 138–139  
 tables 109–110
- promoting shapes, SmartArt graphics 134–135  
**proofing tools**  
 Spelling feature 63–64  
 thesaurus 64–65  
**properties**, sharing presentations 198–200  
**protecting presentations**  
 changing/removing passwords 193  
 knowledge assessment 202–203  
 marking as final 194–195  
 password-protection 193  
 projects 203  
 Protect Presentation button 193  
 Pyramid SmartArt graphics 124
- Q**
- Quick Access Toolbar 1  
 Quick Layout, charts 118  
 Quick Styles, text boxes 56–57
- R**
- Reading view 8  
 rearranging slides 29–30  
 Recolor option (Color button) 151  
 Record Audio button 178  
 recording narration 211  
 Record Slide Show button 211  
 Record Sound dialog box 178  
 Rectangle tool 157  
 Rehearsal toolbar 210  
 Rehearse Timings button 210  
 rehearsing slide show 210–211  
 Relationship SmartArt graphics 124  
 removing. *See also* deleting  
     image backgrounds 153–155  
     metadata 198–200  
     passwords 193  
     shapes from SmartArt graphics 133  
 Rename Section dialog box 79  
 reordering shapes, SmartArt graphics 134  
 Repeat button 45  
 Reply feature, comments 190  
 replying to comments 188–189  
 Reset Background button 75  
 resizing  
     charts 114–115  
     placeholders, slide masters 82–83  
     rows/columns in tables 103  
     shapes 157–158  
 resolution 204  
 Restart the timer button 217  
 Restrict Access command 193  
 Reuse Slides task pane 33  
 Reviewing Pane button 192  
 review of presentations 191–192
- Review tab 187  
**Ribbon** 1  
 command groups 3–4  
 File tab 4  
 Table Tools tabs 93  
 text formatting tools 41  
 Rotate command 145  
 rotating images 145–146  
**rows (tables)** 94  
 adding 100–102  
 deleting 102  
 moving 102–103  
 resizing and distributing 103  
 rulers 143–145
- S**
- Save As command (Backstage view) 4  
 Save As dialog box 14–15, 23  
 Save command (Backstage view) 4  
**saving**  
 edited presentations 14–15  
 presentations 22–24, 199–201  
 PDF/XPS and Video formats 199–200  
 PowerPoint Show files 201  
 XML format 201–202  
**screen recordings** 181–182  
**ScreenTips** 4  
**sections** 79–80  
**security (presentations)**  
 changing/removing passwords 193  
 knowledge assessment 202–203  
 marking as final 194–195  
 password-protection 193  
 projects 203  
 See All Slides button 215  
 Select Data button 117  
 Select Data Source dialog box 117  
 Send Backward button 85  
 setting object order 162–164  
 setting up slide shows 211–213  
 Set Up Show dialog box 204, 211  
 Shadow (Picture effect) 152  
 Shape Fill button 57, 159  
 Shape Outline button 58, 159  
**shapes**  
 adding to slides  
     adding text 158  
     custom shapes 160–161  
     drawing and resizing shapes 157–158  
     line tools 155–157  
 merging 161  
 ordering and grouping  
     aligning objects with each other 164–165  
     grouping objects 165–166  
     setting object order 162–164  
**SmartArt graphics**

- adding shapes to 131–132  
 changing shape appearance 135–136  
 promoting/demoting 134–135  
 removing shapes from 133  
 reordering shapes 134  
 reversing the direction 133–134
- Shapes** gallery 156
- Shape Styles** 159
- Share** command (Backstage view) 4
- SharePoint, distributing presentations 191
- sharing presentations  
 accessibility issues 196–198  
 compatibility issues 195  
 knowledge assessment 202–203  
 modifying properties and removing metadata 198–200  
 projects 203
- Sharpen/Soften** setting (Correctness button) 150
- sharpness, graphics 149–151
- Show Comments button 188
- Show Markup button 188
- Show Taskbar command 217
- shutting down PowerPoint 15
- size  
 fonts 42–43  
 slides 204–206
- Size control, resizing an image 147
- Slice theme 70
- slide layout gallery 72
- slide libraries 32–33
- Slide Masters** 43, 81  
 adding new elements 83–84  
 background images 84–86  
 Handout and Notes masters 88–90  
 layout 86–88  
 moving and resizing placeholders 82–83  
 themes 82
- Slide Master** tab 82
- Slide Master view, customizing slide masters 81  
 adding new elements to a master 83–84  
 background images 84–86  
 creating a new layout 86–88  
 modifying Handout and Notes masters 88–90  
 moving and resizing placeholders 82–83  
 themes 82
- slide numbers, inserting in presentations 76–77
- Slide pane (main work area) 1
- slides  
 adding shapes to  
 adding text 158  
 custom shapes 160–161  
 drawing and resizing shapes 157–158  
 line tools 155–157  
 advancing automatically 171  
 advancing manually 171
- animation effects  
 Animation Painter 177  
 Animation pane 175–177  
 applying animations 172–173  
 motion paths 173  
 start options and timing 174–175  
 transitions 169–171
- annotations 217–219
- backgrounds 74–75
- copying 28–29
- deleting 31
- hiding selected slides 208
- hyperlinks 77–79
- inserting SmartArt graphics 125
- layout 69, 72
- multimedia 178  
 audio files 178–179  
 compressing media 185  
 formatting video/audio content 182  
 poster frames 182–183  
 screen recordings 181–182  
 sizing and arranging content 184–185  
 trimming video clips 181  
 video files 179–180  
 video style and formatting 183–184
- orientation and size 204–206
- rearranging 29–30
- selecting for delivery of presentation 208–209
- tables. *See* tables
- text boxes 54–56
- timings 210–211
- slide shows, setting up 211–213
- Slide Show** view 8  
 navigation options 214–216  
 presentation tools 213
- Slide Size** button 205
- Slide Size** dialog box 204–205
- Slide Sorter** button 170, 210
- Slide Sorter** view 8–9
- Slides** Pane 1
- Slides Per Page** button 88, 207
- Smaller** button 136
- SmartArt Cycle graphic 127
- SmartArt diagrams. *See* SmartArt graphics
- SmartArt graphics 124  
 adding text 126–127  
 converting text to 127–129  
 inserting 125  
 knowledge assessment 138  
 modifying 129–138  
 adding shapes 131–132  
 changing shape appearance 135–136  
 color theme 130  
 converting SmartArt to text 137–138  
 layouts 130–131  
 promoting/demoting shapes 134–135  
 removing shapes 133  
 reordering shapes 134  
 reversing the direction of shapes 133–134
- styles 129–130
- text formatting 136–137
- type selection 135
- organization charts 125  
 projects 138–139
- SmartArt Styles gallery 129
- SmartArt Text Pane 197
- SmartArt Tools Design tab 197
- Smart Guides 143–145
- Soft Edge Oval style 149
- Sound menu 169
- special fills, text boxes 59–60
- Spelling feature (proofing text) 63–64
- Split Cells command 103
- Split Cells dialog box 104
- splitting cells (tables) 103–105
- Standard (4:3) slide size 204
- starting PowerPoint 2
- Start menu 2
- start options, animation effects 174–175
- Statistics tab 199
- Status bar 1
- Stop button 182
- Strict Open XML Presentation 201
- styles  
 charts 121–122  
 fonts 44–46  
 graphics 149  
 SmartArt graphics 129–130  
 tables 107–108  
 video files 183–184  
 WordArt 53–54
- subordinates, organization charts 126
- Subtitle placeholder 1
- Subtract command 161
- Summary tab 199
- Sunburst charts 112
- Switch Row/Column button 116
- Swoosh effect 173
- synonyms 64
- T**
- tables 93  
 cells 94  
 columns 94  
 drawing 96–97  
 formatting  
 applying styles 107  
 text alignment and orientation 105–107  
 turning off style options 108
- importing 97–100
- inserting 94–96
- knowledge assessment 108
- layout  
 adding rows/columns 100–102  
 deleting rows/columns 102  
 merging and splitting cells 103–105

moving rows/columns 102–103  
 resizing and distributing rows/columns 103  
 projects 109–110  
 rows 94  
 Table Tools Design tab 93  
 Table Tools Layout tab 93  
 templates, creating presentations 24–26  
 text  
   adding in Outline view 13–14  
   adding to blank slides 21–22  
   adding to placeholders 12–13  
   adding to shapes 158  
   converting SmartArt graphics to 137–138  
 converting to SmartArt 127–129  
 formatting 41  
   AutoFit 43–44  
   bulleted lists 50  
   font color 46  
   font selection and size 42–43  
   font style and effects 44–46  
   Format Painter 47–48  
   knowledge assessment 65–66  
   numbered lists 49–50  
   projects 66–67  
   SmartArt graphics 136–137  
   text boxes 54–63  
   WordArt feature 51–54  
 hyperlinks 77–78  
 importing 34–35  
 proofing tools  
   Spelling feature 63–64  
   thesaurus 64–65  
 saving edited presentations 14–15  
 SmartArt graphics 126–127  
 tables, alignment and orientation 105–107  
 Text Box button 55  
 text boxes  
   adding to slides 54–56  
   formatting 54  
     columns 62–63  
     Quick Styles 56–57  
     special fills 59–60  
     texture and pattern fills 61–62  
 Text Direction button 105  
 Text Direction menu 105  
 Text Effects (WordArt style) 53  
 Text Fill (WordArt style) 53  
 Text Outline (WordArt style) 53  
 Text Pane button 126  
 Text Shadow button 47  
 texture fills, text boxes 61–62  
 themes  
   backgrounds 74  
   fonts 43, 72  
   formatting presentations 69  
     applying a theme 70–71  
     applying a theme and variant 70–71  
   changing theme color 71  
   slide masters 82  
   templates 25  
 Themes button 82  
 Themes gallery 69–70  
 thesaurus 64–65  
 timing  
   animation effects 174–175  
   delivering a presentation 210–211  
 title placeholder 1, 22  
 tools, formatting text 41  
   AutoFit 43–44  
   bulleted lists 50  
   font color 46  
   font selection and size 42–43  
   font style and effects 44–46  
   Format Painter 47–48  
   knowledge assessment 65–66  
   numbered lists 49–50  
   projects 66–67  
   text boxes 54–63  
   WordArt feature 51–54  
 top-level shapes, organization charts 126  
 transitions 169–171  
 Treemap charts 112  
 trimming video clips 181  
 Trim Video button 181  
 Trim Video dialog box 181  
 type (charts) 115–116  
 typefaces. *See* fonts

**U**

Undo button 102  
 Union command 161  
 Use Audio on My PC option 178  
 Use Record Audio option 178

**V**

variants, applying to a presentation 70–71  
 Variants gallery 68–69  
 vertical alignment options (table text) 105  
 vertical axis labels (charts) 111  
 vertical lines 155  
 Video Border button 183  
 Video Effects button 183  
 video files 179–180  
   exporting and saving presentations 199–200  
   formatting 182  
   sizing and arranging content 184–185  
   trimming video clips 181  
   video style and formatting 183–184  
 Video Shape button 183  
 Video Styles gallery 183  
 viewing comments 188–189  
 views (presentations) 7–10  
   Normal 7

Notes Page 8–9  
 Outline 7–8  
 Reading 8  
 Slide Show 8  
 Slide Sorter 8–9  
 Volume button 179

**W**

Waterfall charts 112  
 Web images, inserting 141–142  
 White Screen option 218  
 Widescreen (16:9) slide size 204  
 width (table columns) 103  
 Wipe transition 170  
 Wisp theme 82  
 With Previous start option 174  
 Word, creating presentations from existing content 31–32  
 WordArt  
   converting to SmartArt 127–129  
   formatting text  
     inserting WordArt graphics 51  
     styles 53–54  
 WordArt button 52  
 WordArt Styles gallery 53  
 workbooks (Excel) 97  
 worksheets (Excel), importing into PowerPoint 97–100  
 wrapping text (text boxes) 56

**X**

XML (Extensible Markup Language) format 201–202  
 XML Paper Specification (XPS) format 199–200  
 XPS (XML Paper Specification) format 199–200

**Z**

Zoom button 215  
 Zoom dialog box 13  
 Zoom level, adjusting 13